

Kotlin

IN ACTION

Dmitry Jemerov
Svetlana Isakova

MEAP



MANNING





MEAP Edition
Manning Early Access Program
Kotlin in Action
Version 11

Copyright 2016 Manning Publications

For more information on this and other Manning titles go to
www.manning.com

Welcome

Thanks for purchasing the MEAP for *Kotlin in Action*! We're looking forward to introducing you to Kotlin, which is a new programming language that is a pragmatic, safe, concise, and interoperable alternative to Java. With Kotlin, you can implement your projects with less code, a higher level of abstraction, and fewer annoyances.

We assume that you're already familiar with Java, either as a server-side developer or as an Android application developer. Switching from Java to Kotlin is a smooth process that does not involve a steep learning curve, and there are many tools that can help. We expect that it won't take you long to become productive with the language.

One of the strong points of Kotlin is its strong interoperability with Java. If you want to try Kotlin for yourself, you can do this in a new project, but you also have an option of introducing it into your existing Java codebase. You can also easily try features of the language in an interactive console or an online playground.

The book consists of three parts. The first part will teach you the basic syntax of the language. The second part will focus on features that allow you to build reusable abstractions, higher-level functions, libraries, and even entire domain specific languages. Finally, the third part will focus on details of applying Kotlin in real-world projects, such as build system integration, Android support and concurrent programming.

Both of us have been part of the team working on Kotlin for the past five years, so you can be confident that you're receiving authoritative information straight from the source. Even though version 1.0 is out, Kotlin is continuing to evolve, so we'll ensure that the information in the MEAP book always corresponds to the current state of the language.

We're looking forward to your feedback on the text that we have so far. If anything is confusing, unclear or seems to be missing entirely, please don't hesitate to leave your comments in the [Author Online forum](#).

— Dmitry Jemerov and Svetlana Isakova

brief contents

PART 1: INTRODUCTION

- 1 Kotlin : What and Why*
- 2 Kotlin basics*
- 3 Defining and Calling Functions*
- 4 Classes, Objects, and Interfaces*
- 5 Programming with lambdas*
- 6 The Kotlin Type System*

PART 2: EMBRACING KOTLIN

- 7 Operator Overloading and Other Conventions*
- 8 Higher-Order Functions : Lambdas as Parameters and Return Values*
- 9 Generics*
- 10 Annotations and Reflection*
- 11 DSL Construction*

APPENDIXES:

A Building Kotlin

projects B

Documenting

Kotlin code C

The Kotlin

ecosystem

Kotlin: *what and why*

This chapter covers

- A basic demonstration of Kotlin
- The main traits of the Kotlin language
- Possibilities for Android and server-side development
- What distinguishes Kotlin from other languages
- Writing and running code in Kotlin

1.1 A taste of Kotlin

First, what is Kotlin all about? It's a new programming language targeting the Java platform. Kotlin is concise, safe, pragmatic, and focused on interoperability with Java code. It can be used almost everywhere Java is used today - for server-side development, Android apps, and much more. Kotlin works great with all existing Java libraries and frameworks and runs with the same level of performance as Java.

Let's start with a small example to demonstrate what Kotlin looks like. This example defines a `Person` class, creates a collection of people, finds the oldest one, and prints the result. Even in this small piece of code, you can see many interesting features of Kotlin; we've highlighted some of them so you can easily find them later in the book. The code is explained briefly, but please don't worry if something isn't clear right away. We'll discuss everything in detail later.

If you'd like to try running this example, the easiest option is to use the online playground at <https://try.kotl.in/>. Type in the example and click the Run button, and the code will be executed. Here's the code:

```
data class Person(val name: String,  
                  val age: Int? = null)
```

1

2

```

fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val persons = listOf(Person("Alice"),
                            Person("Bob", age = 29))

    val oldest = persons.maxBy { it.age ?: 0 }
    println("The oldest is: $oldest")
}

// The oldest is: Person(name=Bob, age=29)

```

- ❶ 'data' class
- ❷ nullable type (Int?); default value for argument
- ❸ top-level function
- ❹ named argument
- ❺ lambda expression; "elvis" operator
- ❻ string template
- ❼ autogenerated 'toString'

You declare a simple data class with two properties: `name` and `age`. The `age` property is `null` by default (if it isn't specified). When creating the list of people, you omit Alice's age, so the default value `null` is used. Then you use the function `maxBy` to find the oldest person in the list. The lambda expression passed to the function takes one parameter, and you use `it` as the default name of that parameter. The *Elvis operator* `?:` returns zero if `age` is `null`. Because Alice's age isn't specified, the Elvis operator replaces it with zero, so Bob wins the prize of being the oldest person.

Do you like what you've seen? Read on to learn more and become a Kotlin expert. We hope that soon you'll see such code in your own projects, not only in this book.

1.2 Kotlin's primary traits

You probably already have an idea what kind of language Kotlin is. Let's look at its key attributes in more detail. First of all, let's see what kinds of applications you can build with Kotlin.

1.2.1 Target platforms: server-side, Android, anywhere Java runs

The primary goal of Kotlin is to provide a more concise, more productive, safer alternative to Java that's suitable in all contexts where Java is used today. Java is an extremely popular language, and it's used in a broad variety of environments, from smart cards (Java Card technology) to the largest data centers run by Google, Twitter, LinkedIn, and other internet-scale companies. In most of these places, using Kotlin can help developers achieve their goals with less code and fewer annoyances along the way.

The most common areas to use Kotlin are these:

- Building server-side code (typically, backends of web applications)
- Building mobile applications that run on Android devices

But Kotlin works in other contexts as well. For example, you can use the Intel Multi-OS Engine ¹ to run Kotlin code on iOS devices. To build desktop applications, you can use Kotlin together with JavaFX ².

Footnote 1 <https://software.intel.com/en-us/multi-os-engine>

Footnote 2 "JavaFX: Getting Started with JavaFX," Oracle, <http://mng.bz/500y>.

In addition to Java, Kotlin can also be compiled to JavaScript, allowing you to run Kotlin code in the browser. But as of this writing, JavaScript support is still being explored and prototyped at JetBrains, so it's out of scope for this book. Other platforms are also under consideration for future versions of the language.

As you can see, Kotlin's target is quite broad. Kotlin doesn't focus on a single problem domain or address a single type of challenge faced by software developers today. Instead, it provides across-the-board productivity improvements for all tasks that come up during the development process. It gives you an excellent level of integration with libraries that support specific domains or programming paradigms. Let's look next at the key qualities of Kotlin as a programming language.

1.2.2 *Statically typed*

Just like Java, Kotlin is a *statically typed* programming language. This means the type of every expression in a program is known at compile time, and the compiler can validate that the methods and fields you're trying to access exist on the objects you're using.

This is in contrast to *dynamically typed* programming languages, which are represented on the JVM by, among others, Groovy and JRuby. Those languages let you define variables and functions that can store or return data of any type and resolve the method and field references at runtime. This allows for shorter code and greater flexibility in creating data structures. But the downside is that problems like misspelled names can't be detected during compilation and lead to runtime errors.

On the other hand, in contrast to Java, Kotlin doesn't require you to specify the type of every variable explicitly in your source code. In many cases, the type of a variable can automatically be determined from the context, allowing you to omit the type declaration. Here's the simplest possible example of this:

```
val x = 1
```

You're declaring a variable, and because it's initialized with an integer value, Kotlin

automatically determines that its type is `Int`. The ability of the compiler to determine types from context is called *type inference*.

Following are some of the benefits of static typing:

- *Performance* - Calling methods is faster because there's no need to figure out at runtime which method needs to be called.
- *Reliability* - The compiler verifies the correctness of the program, so there are fewer chances for crashes at runtime.
- *Maintainability* - Working with unfamiliar code is easier because you can see what kind of objects the code is working with.
- *Tool support* - Static typing enables reliable refactorings, precise code completion, and other IDE features.

Thanks to Kotlin's support for type inference, most of the extra verbosity associated with static typing disappears, because you don't need to declare types explicitly.

If you look at the specifics of Kotlin's type system, you'll find many familiar concepts. Classes, interfaces, and generics work in a way very similar to Java, so most of your Java knowledge should easily transfer to Kotlin. Some things are new, though.

The most important of those is Kotlin's support for *nullable types*, which lets you write more reliable programs by detecting possible null pointer exceptions at compile time. We'll come back to nullable types later in this chapter and discuss them in detail in chapter 6.

Another new thing in Kotlin's type system is its support for *functional types*. To see what this is about, let's look at the main ideas of functional programming and see how it's supported in Kotlin.

1.2.3 Functional and object-oriented

As a Java developer, you're no doubt familiar with the core concepts of object-oriented programming, but functional programming may be new to you. The key concepts of functional programming are as follows:

- *First-class functions* - You work with functions (pieces of behavior) as values. You can store them in variables, pass them as parameters, or return them from other functions.
- *Immutability* - You work with immutable objects, which guarantees that their state can't change after their creation.
- *No side effects* - You use pure functions that return the same result given the same inputs and don't modify the state of other objects or interact with the outside world.

What benefits can you gain from writing the code in the functional style? First, *conciseness*. Functional code can be more elegant and succinct compared to its imperative counterpart, because working with functions as values gives you much more power of abstraction, which lets you avoid duplication in your code. Imagine that you have two similar code fragments that implement a similar task (for example, looking for

a matching element in a collection) but differ in the details (how the matching element is detected). You can easily extract the common part of the logic into a function and pass the differing parts as parameters. Those parameters are themselves functions, but you can express them using a concise syntax for anonymous functions called *lambda expressions*:

```
fun findAlice() = findPerson { it.name == "Alice" }  
fun findBob() = findPerson { it.name == "Bob" }
```

1
2

- 1 findPerson() contains the general logic of finding a person.
- 2 The block in curly braces identifies the specific person you need to find.

The second benefit of functional code is *safe multithreading*. One of the biggest sources of errors in multithreaded programs is modification of the same data from multiple threads without proper synchronization. If you use immutable data structures and pure functions, you can be sure that such unsafe modifications won't happen, and you don't need to come up with complicated synchronization schemes.

Finally, functional programming means *easier testing*. Code without side effects is usually easier to test. Functions can be tested in isolation without requiring a lot of setup code to construct the entire environment that they depend on.

Generally speaking, the functional style can be used with any programming language, including Java, and many parts of it are advocated as good programming style. But not all languages provide the syntactic and library support required to use it effortlessly; for example, this support was mostly missing from versions of Java before Java 8. Kotlin has a rich set of features to support functional programming from the get-go. These include the following:

- *Functional types*, allowing functions to receive other functions as parameters or return other functions
- *Lambda expressions*, letting you pass around blocks of code with minimum boilerplate
- *Data classes*, providing a concise syntax for creating immutable value objects
- A rich set of APIs in the standard library for working with objects and collections in the functional style

Kotlin lets you program in the functional style but doesn't enforce it. When you need it, you can work with mutable data and write functions that have side effects without jumping through any extra hoops. And, of course, working with frameworks that are based on interfaces and class hierarchies is just as easy as with Java. When writing code in Kotlin, you can combine both the object-oriented and functional approaches and use the tools that are most appropriate for the problem you're solving.

1.2.4 Free and open source

The Kotlin language, including the compiler, libraries, and all related tooling, is entirely open source and free to use for any purpose. It's available under the Apache 2 license, development happens in the open on GitHub ³, and community contributions are welcome. You also have a choice of three open source IDEs for developing your Kotlin applications: IntelliJ IDEA Community Edition, Android Studio, and Eclipse are fully supported. (Of course, IntelliJ IDEA Ultimate works as well.)

Footnote 3 <http://github.com/jetbrains/kotlin>

Now that you understand what kind of language Kotlin is, let's see how the benefits of Kotlin work in specific practical applications.

1.3 Kotlin applications

As we mentioned earlier, the two main areas where Kotlin can be used are server-side and Android development. Let's look at those areas in turn and see why Kotlin is a good fit for them.

1.3.1 Kotlin on the server side

Server-side programming is a fairly broad concept. It encompasses all of the following types of applications and much more:

- Web applications that return HTML pages to a browser
- Backends of mobile applications that expose a JSON API over HTTP
- Microservices that communicate with other microservices over an RPC protocol

Developers have been building these kinds of applications in Java for many years and have accumulated a huge stack of frameworks and technologies to help build them. Such applications usually aren't developed in isolation or started from scratch. There's almost always an existing system that is being extended, improved, or replaced, and new code has to integrate with existing parts of the system, which may have been written many years ago.

The big advantage of Kotlin in this environment is its seamless interoperability with existing Java code. Regardless of whether you're writing a new component or migrating the code of an existing service into Kotlin, Kotlin will fit right in. You won't run into problems when you need to extend Java classes in Kotlin or annotate the methods and fields of a class in a certain way. And the benefit is that the system's code will be more compact, more reliable, and easier to maintain.

At the same time, Kotlin enables a number of new techniques for developing such systems. For example, its support for the builder pattern lets you create any object graph with concise syntax, while keeping the full set of abstraction and code-reuse tools in the language.

One of the simplest use cases for that feature is an HTML generation library, which can replace an external template language with a concise and fully type-safe solution. Here's an example:

```
fun renderPersonList(people: Collection<Person>) =  
    createHTML().table {  
        for (person in people)  
            { tr {  
                td { +person.name }  
                td { +person.age }  
            }  
        }  
    }
```

- ❶ Functions that map to HTML tags
- ❷ A regular Kotlin loop

As you can see, you can easily combine functions that map to HTML tags and regular Kotlin language constructs. You no longer need to use a separate template language, with a separate syntax to learn, just to use a loop when generating a page of HTML.

Another case where you can use Kotlin's clean, concise DSLs is persistence frameworks. For example, the Exposed framework ⁴ provides an easy way to read DSL for describing the structure of an SQL database and performing queries entirely from Kotlin code, with full type checking. Here's a small example to show you what's possible:

Footnote 4 <https://github.com/JetBrains/Exposed>

```
object CountryTable : IdTable() {  
    val name = varchar("name", 250).uniqueIndex()  
    val iso = varchar("iso", 2).uniqueIndex()  
}  
  
class Country(id: EntityID) : Entity(id) {  
    { var name: String by  
        CountryTable.name var iso: String by  
        CountryTable.iso  
    }  
}  
  
val russia = Country.find  
    { CountryTable.iso.eq("ru"  
    )  
}.first()
```

- ❶ Describes a table in the database
- ❷ Creates a class corresponding to a database entity

- 3 You can query this database using pure Kotlin code.

We'll look at these techniques in more detail later in the book, in section [XREF ID_delegated_properties](#) and in chapter 11.

1.3.2 Kotlin on Android

A typical mobile application is much different from a typical enterprise application. It's much smaller, it's less dependent on integration with existing codebases, and it usually needs to be delivered quickly while ensuring reliable operation on a large variety of devices. Kotlin works just as well for projects of that kind.

Kotlin's language features, combined with a special compiler plug-in supporting the Android framework, turn Android development into a much more productive and pleasurable experience. Common development tasks, such as adding listeners to controls or binding layout elements to fields, can be accomplished with much less code, or sometimes with no code at all (the compiler will generate it for you). The Anko library (<https://github.com/kotlin/anko>), also built by the Kotlin team, improves your experience even further by adding Kotlin-friendly adapters around many standard Android APIs.

Here's a simple example of Anko, just to give you a taste of what Android development with Kotlin feels like. You can put this code in an `Activity`, and a simple Android application is ready!

```
verticalLayout {  
    val name = editText() 1  
    button("Say Hello") { 2  
        onClick { toast("Hello, ${name.text}!") } 3  
    }  
}
```

- 1 Creates a simple text field
- 2 When clicked, this button displays the value of the text field.
- 3 Concise APIs for attaching a listener and showing a toast

Another big advantage of using Kotlin is better application reliability. If you have any experience developing Android applications, you're no doubt familiar with the Unfortunately, Process Has Stopped dialog. This dialog is shown when your application throws an unhandled exception—often, a `NullPointerException`. Kotlin's type system, with its precise tracking of null values, makes the problem of null pointer exceptions much less pressing. Most of the code that would lead to a `NullPointerException` in Java fails to compile in Kotlin, ensuring that you fix the error before the application gets to your users.

At the same time, because Kotlin is fully compatible with Java 6, its use doesn't introduce any new compatibility concerns. You'll benefit from all the cool new language features of Kotlin, and your users will still be able to run your application on their devices, even if they don't run the latest version of Android.

In terms of performance, using Kotlin doesn't bring any disadvantages, either. The code generated by the Kotlin compiler is executed as efficiently as regular Java code. The runtime used by Kotlin is fairly small, so you won't experience a large increase in the size of the compiled application package. And when you use lambdas, many of the Kotlin standard library functions will inline them. Inlining lambdas ensures that no new objects will be created and the application won't suffer from extra GC pauses.

Having looked at the advantages of Kotlin compared to Java, let's now look at Kotlin's philosophy—the main characteristics that distinguish Kotlin from other modern languages targeting the JVM.

1.4 The philosophy of Kotlin

When we talk about Kotlin, we like to say that it's a pragmatic, concise, safe language with a focus on interoperability. What exactly do we mean by each of those words? Let's look at them in turn.

1.4.1 Pragmatic

Being *pragmatic* means a simple thing to us: Kotlin is a practical language designed to solve real-world problems. Its design is based on many years of industry experience creating large-scale systems, and its features are chosen to address use cases encountered by many software developers. Moreover, developers both inside JetBrains and in the community have been using early versions of Kotlin for several years, and their feedback has shaped the released version of the language. This makes us confident in saying that Kotlin can successfully help solve problems in real projects.

Kotlin also is not a research language. We aren't trying to advance the state of the art in programming language design and explore innovative ideas in computer science. Instead, whenever possible, we're relying on features and solutions that have already appeared in other programming languages and have proven to be successful. This reduces the complexity of the language and makes it easier to learn by letting you rely on familiar concepts.

Also, Kotlin doesn't enforce using any particular programming style or paradigm. As you begin to study the language, you can use the style and techniques that are familiar to you from your Java experience. Later, you'll gradually discover the more powerful features of Kotlin and learn to apply them in your own code, to make it more concise and idiomatic.

Another aspect of Kotlin's pragmatism is its focus on tooling. A smart development environment is just as essential for a developer's productivity as a good language; and

because of that, treating IDE support as an afterthought isn't an option. In the case of Kotlin, the IntelliJ IDEA plug-in was developed in lockstep with the compiler, and language features were always designed with tooling in mind.

The IDE support also plays a major role in helping you discover the features of Kotlin. In many cases, the tools will automatically detect common code patterns that can be replaced by more concise constructs, and offer to fix the code for you. By studying the language features used by the automated fixes, you can learn to apply those features in your own code as well.

1.4.2 Concise

It's common knowledge that developers spend more time reading existing code than writing new code. Imagine you're a part of a team developing a big project, and you need to add a new feature or fix a bug. What are your first steps? You look for the exact section of code that you need to change, and only then do you implement a fix. You read a lot of code to find out what you have to do. This code might have been written recently by your colleagues, or by someone who no longer works on the project, or by you, but long ago. Only after understanding the surrounding code can you make the necessary modifications.

The simpler and more concise the code is, the faster you'll understand what's going on. Of course, good design and expressive names play a significant role here. But the choice of the language and its conciseness are also important. The language is *concise* if its syntax clearly expresses the intent of the code you read and doesn't obscure it with boilerplate required to specify how the intent is accomplished.

In Kotlin, we've tried hard to ensure that all the code you write carries meaning, and isn't just there to satisfy conventions. A lot of the standard Java boilerplate, such as getters, setters, and the logic for assigning constructor parameters to fields, is implicit in Kotlin and doesn't clutter your source code.

Another reason code can be unnecessarily long is having to write explicit code to perform common tasks, such as locating an element in a collection. Just like many other modern languages, Kotlin has a rich standard library that lets you replace these long, repetitive sections of code with library method calls. Kotlin's support for lambdas makes it easy to pass small blocks of code to library functions. This lets you encapsulate all the common parts in the library and keep only the unique, task-specific portion in the user code.

At the same time, Kotlin doesn't try to collapse the source code to the smallest number of characters possible. For example, even though Kotlin supports operator overloading, users can't define their own operators. Therefore, library developers can't

replace the method names with cryptic punctuation sequences. Words are typically easier to read than punctuation and easier to find documentation on, even if they're somewhat longer.

More concise code takes less time to write and, more important, less time to read. This improves your productivity and lets you get things done faster.

1.4.3 Safe

In general, when we speak of a programming language as *safe*, we mean its design prevents certain kinds of errors in a program. Of course, this isn't an absolute quality; no language prevents all possible errors. In addition, preventing errors usually comes at a cost. You need to give the compiler more information about the intended operation of the program, so the compiler can then verify that the information matches what the program does. Because of that, there's always a trade-off between the level of safety you get and the loss of productivity required to put in more detailed annotations.

With Kotlin, we've attempted to achieve a higher level of safety than in Java, with a smaller overall cost. Running on the JVM already provides a lot of safety guarantees: for example, memory safety, preventing buffer overflows, and other problems caused by incorrect use of dynamically allocated memory. As a statically typed language on the JVM, Kotlin also ensures the type safety of your applications. This comes at a smaller cost than with Java: you don't have to specify all the type declarations, because in many cases the compiler infers the types automatically.

Kotlin also goes beyond that, meaning more errors can be prevented by checks at compile time instead of failing at runtime. Most important, Kotlin strives to remove the `NullPointerException` from your program. Kotlin's type system tracks values that can and can't be null and forbids operations that can lead to a `NullPointerException` at runtime. The additional cost required for this is minimal: marking a type as nullable takes only a single character, a question mark at the end:

```
val s: String? = null  
val s2: String = ""
```

①
②

- ① May be null
- ② May not be null

In addition, Kotlin provides many convenient ways to handle nullable data. This helps greatly in eliminating application crashes.

Another type of exception that Kotlin helps avoid is the `ClassCastException`. It happens when you cast an object to a type without first checking that it has the right type. In Java, developers often leave out the check, because the type name must be repeated in

the check and in the following cast. In Kotlin, on the other hand, the check and the cast are combined into a single operation: once you've checked the type, you can refer to members of that type without any additional casts. Thus, there's no reason to skip the check, and no chance to make an error. Here's how this works:

```
if (value is String)
    println(value.toUpperCase())
```

①
②

- ① Checks the type
- ② Uses the method of the type

1.4.4 Interoperable

Regarding interoperability, your first concern probably is, "Can I use my existing libraries?" With Kotlin, the answer is, "Yes, absolutely." Regardless of the kind of APIs the library requires you to use, you can work with them from Kotlin. You can call Java methods, extend Java classes and implement interfaces, apply Java annotations to your Kotlin classes, and so on.

Unlike some other JVM languages, Kotlin goes even further with interoperability, making it effortless to call Kotlin code from Java as well. No tricks are required: Kotlin classes and methods can be called exactly like regular Java classes and methods. This gives you the ultimate flexibility in mixing Java and Kotlin code anywhere in your project. When you start adopting Kotlin in your Java project, you can run the Java-to-Kotlin converter on any single class in your codebase, and the rest of the code will continue to compile and work without any modifications. This works regardless of the role of the class you've converted.

Another area where Kotlin focuses on interoperability is its use of existing Java libraries to the largest degree possible. For example, Kotlin doesn't have its own collections library. It relies fully on Java standard library classes, extending them with additional functions for more convenient use in Kotlin. (We'll look at the mechanism for this in more detail in section [XREF ID_extension_functions](#).) This means you never need to wrap or convert objects when you call Java APIs from Kotlin, or vice versa. All the API richness provided by Kotlin comes at no cost at runtime.

The Kotlin tooling also provides full support for cross-language projects. It can compile an arbitrary mix of Java and Kotlin source files, regardless of how they depend on each other. The IDE features work across languages as well, allowing you to do things like the following:

- Navigate freely between Java and Kotlin source files
- Debug mixed-language projects and step between code written in different languages

- Refactor your Java methods and have their use in Kotlin code correctly updated, and vice versa

Hopefully by now we've convinced you to give Kotlin a try. Now, how can you start using it? In the next section, we'll discuss the process of compiling and running Kotlin code, both from the command line and using different tools.

1.5 Using the Kotlin tools

Just like Java, Kotlin is a compiled language. This means before you can run Kotlin code, you need to compile it. Let's discuss how the compilation process works and then look at the different tools that take care of it for you. If you need more information about getting your environment set up, please refer to the "Tutorials" section of the Kotlin website (<https://kotlinlang.org/docs/tutorials>).

1.5.1 Compiling Kotlin code

Kotlin source code is normally stored in files with the extension `.kt`. The Kotlin compiler analyzes the source code and generates `.class` files, just like the Java compiler does. The generated `.class` files are then packaged and executed using the standard procedure for the type of application you're working on. In the simplest case, you can use the `kotlinc` command to compile your code from the command line and use the `java` command to execute your code:

```
kotlinc <source file or directory> -include-runtime -d <jar name>
java -jar <jar name>
```

A simplified description of the Kotlin build process is shown in figure 1.1.

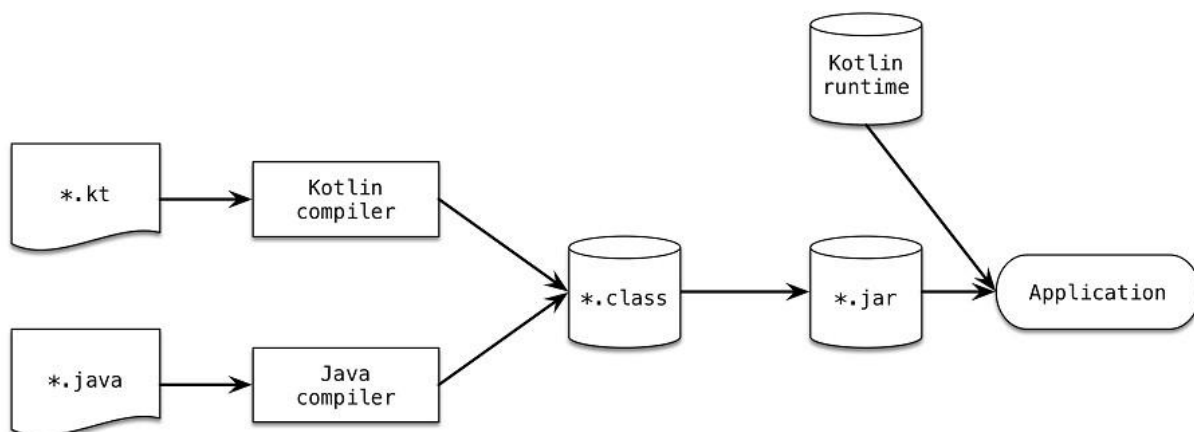


Figure 1.1 Kotlin Build Process

Code compiled with the Kotlin compiler depends on the *Kotlin runtime library*. It contains the definitions of Kotlin's own standard library classes and the extensions that Kotlin adds to the standard Java APIs. The runtime library needs to be distributed with

your application.

In most real-life cases, you'll be using a build system such as Maven, Gradle, or Ant to compile your code. Kotlin is compatible with all those build systems, and we'll discuss the details in appendix A. All of those build systems also support mixed-language projects that combine Kotlin and Java in the same codebase. Maven and Gradle also take care of including the Kotlin runtime library as a dependency of your application.

1.5.2 Plug-in for IntelliJ IDEA and Android Studio

The IntelliJ IDEA in for Kotlin has been developed in parallel with the language itself, and it's the most full-featured development environment available for Kotlin. It's mature and stable, and it provides a complete set of tools for Kotlin development.

The Kotlin plug-in is included out of the box with IntelliJ IDEA 15 and later versions, so no additional setup is necessary. You can use either the free, open source IntelliJ IDEA Community Edition or IntelliJ IDEA Ultimate. Select Kotlin in the New Project dialog, and you're good to go.

If you're using Android Studio, you can install the Kotlin plug-in from the plug-in manager. In the Settings dialog, select Plugins, then click the Install JetBrains Plugin button, and select Kotlin from the list.

1.5.3 Interactive shell

If you want to quickly try out small fragments of Kotlin code, you can do that using the interactive shell (the so-called *REPL*). In the REPL, you can type Kotlin code line by line and immediately see the results of its execution. To start the REPL, you can either run the `kotlinc` command with no arguments or use the corresponding menu item in the IntelliJ IDEA plug-in.

1.5.4 Eclipse plug-in

If you're an Eclipse user, you also have the option to use Kotlin in your IDE. The Kotlin Eclipse plug-in provides essential IDE functionality such as navigation and code completion. The plug-in is available in the Eclipse Marketplace. To install it, choose the Help > Eclipse Marketplace menu item, and search for Kotlin in the list.

1.5.5 Online playground

The easiest way to try Kotlin doesn't require any installation or configuration. At <https://try.kotl.in/>, you can find an online playground where you can write, compile, and run small Kotlin programs. The playground has code samples demonstrating the features of Kotlin, as well as a series of exercises for learning Kotlin interactively.

1.5.6 Java-to-Kotlin converter

Getting up to speed with a new language is never effortless. Fortunately, we've built a nice little shortcut that lets you speed up your learning and adoption by relying on your existing knowledge of Java. This tool is the automated Java-to-Kotlin converter.

When you start learning Kotlin, the converter can help you express something when you don't remember the exact syntax. You can write the corresponding snippet in Java and then paste it into a Kotlin file, and the converter will automatically offer to translate the code into Kotlin. The result won't always be the most idiomatic, but it will be working code, and you'll be able to make progress with your task.

The converter is also great for introducing Kotlin into an existing Java project. When you need to write a new class, you can do it in Kotlin right from the beginning. But if you need to make significant changes to an existing class, you may also want to use Kotlin in the process. That's where the converter comes into play. You convert the class into Kotlin first, and then you add the changes using all the benefits of a modern language.

Using the converter in IntelliJ IDEA is extremely easy. You can either copy a Java code fragment and paste it into a Kotlin file, or invoke the Convert Java File to Kotlin File action if you need to convert an entire file. The converter is accessible in Eclipse and online as well.

1.6 Summary

- Kotlin is statically typed and supports type inference, allowing it to maintain correctness and performance while keeping the source code concise.
- Kotlin supports both object-oriented and functional programming styles, enabling higher-level abstractions through first-class functions and simplifying testing and multithreaded development through the support of immutable values.
- It works well for server-side applications, fully supporting all existing Java frameworks and providing new tools for common tasks such as HTML generation and persistence.
- It works for Android as well, thanks to a compact runtime, special compiler support for Android APIs, and a rich library providing Kotlin-friendly functions for common Android development tasks.
- It's free and open source, with full support for the major IDEs and build systems.
- Kotlin is pragmatic, safe, concise, and interoperable, meaning it focuses on using proven solutions for common tasks, preventing common errors such as `NullPointerException`'s, supporting compact and easy-to-read code, and unrestricted integration with Java.

Kotlin basics

This chapter covers

- Declaring functions, variables, classes, enums, and properties
- Control structures in Kotlin
- Smart casts
- Throwing and handling exceptions

In this chapter, you'll learn how to declare in Kotlin the essential elements of any program: variables, functions, and classes. Along the way, you'll get acquainted with the concept of properties in Kotlin.

You'll learn how to use different control structures in Kotlin. They're mostly similar to those that are familiar to you from Java, but enhanced in important ways.

We'll introduce the concept of *smart casts*, which combine a type check and a cast into one operation. Finally, we'll talk about exception handling. By the end of this chapter, you'll be able to use the basics of the language to write working Kotlin code, even if it might not be the most idiomatic.

2.1 Basic elements: functions and variables

This section will introduce you to the basic elements that every Kotlin program consists of: functions and variables. You'll see how Kotlin lets you omit many type declarations and how it encourages you to use immutable, rather than mutable, data.

2.1.1 Hello, world!

Let's start with the classical example: a program that prints "Hello, world". In Kotlin, it's just one function:

```
fun main(args: Array<String>)  
{ println("Hello, world!")  
}
```

What features and parts of the language syntax can you observe in this simple code snippet? Check out the following list:

- The `fun` keyword is used to declare a function. Programming in Kotlin is lots of fun, indeed!
- The parameter type is written after the parameter name. This applies to variable declarations as well, as you'll see later.
- The function can be declared at the top level of a file; you don't need to put it in a class.
- Arrays are just classes. Unlike Java, Kotlin doesn't have a special syntax for declaring array types.
- You write `println` instead of `System.out.println`. The Kotlin standard library provides many wrappers around standard Java library functions, with more concise syntax, and `println` is one of them.
- You can omit the semicolon from the end of a line, just as in many other modern languages.

So far, so good! We'll discuss some of these topics in more detail later. Now, let's explore the function declaration syntax in more detail.

2.1.2 Functions

You saw how to declare a function that has nothing to return. But where should you put a return type for a function that has a meaningful result? You can guess that it should go somewhere after the parameter list:

```
fun max(a: Int, b: Int): Int
{ return if (a > b) a else
  b
}

>>> println(max(1, 2))
2
```

The function declaration starts with the `fun` keyword, followed by the function name: `max`, in this case. It's followed by the parameter list in parentheses. The return type comes after the parameter list, separated from it by a colon.

Figure 2.1 shows you the basic structure of a function. Note that in Kotlin, `if` is an expression with a result value. It's similar to a ternary operator in Java: `(a > b) ? a : b`.

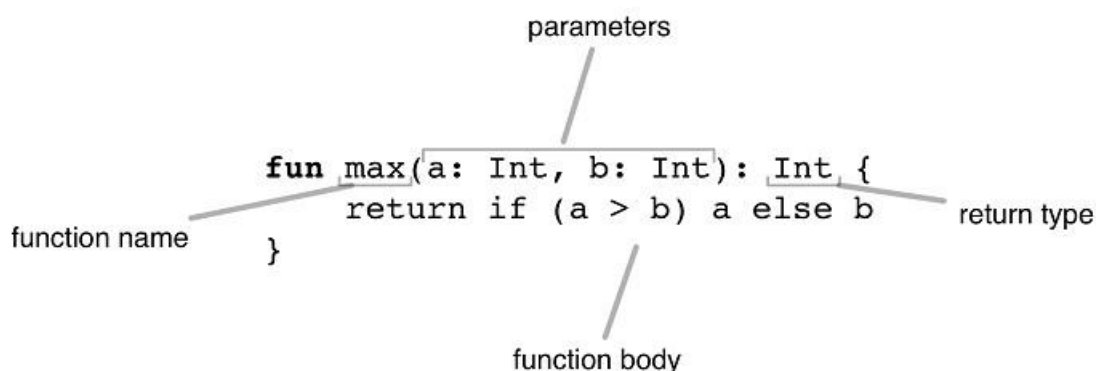


Figure 2.1 Kotlin function declaration

NOTE

Statements and expressions

In Kotlin, `if` is an expression, not a statement. The difference between a statement and an expression is that an expression has a value, which can be used as part of another expression, whereas a statement is always a top-level element in its enclosing block, and does not have its own value. In Java, all control structures are statements. In Kotlin, most control structures, except for the loops (`for`, `do`, and `do/while`) are expressions. The ability to combine control structures with other expressions lets you express many common patterns concisely, as you'll see later in the book.

On the other hand, assignments are expressions in Java and become statements in Kotlin. This helps avoid confusion between comparisons and assignments, which is a common source of mistakes.

EXPRESSION BODIES

You can simplify the previous function even further. Because its body consists of just a single expression, you can use that expression as the entire body of the function, removing the curly braces and the `return` statement:

```
fun max(a: Int, b: Int): Int = if (a > b) a else b
```

If a function is written with its body in curly braces, we say that this function has a *block body*. If it returns an expression directly, it has an *expression body*.

TIP

IntelliJ IDEA Tip

IntelliJ IDEA provides intention actions to convert between the two styles of functions: "Convert to expression body" and "Convert to block body."

Functions with an expression body can be found in Kotlin code quite often. This style is used not only for trivial one-line functions, but also for functions that evaluate a single, more complex expression, such as `if`, `when`, or `try`. You'll see such functions later in this chapter, when we talk about the `when` construct.

You can simplify the `max` function even more and omit the return type:

```
fun max(a: Int, b: Int) = if (a > b) a else b
```

Why are there functions without return-type declarations? Doesn't Kotlin, as a statically typed language, require every expression to have a type at compile time? Indeed, every variable and every expression has a type, and every function has a return type. But for expression-body functions, the compiler can analyze the expression used as the body of the function and use its type as the function return type, even when it's not spelled out explicitly. This type of analysis is usually called *type inference*.

Note that omitting the return type is allowed only for functions with an expression body. For functions with a block body that return a value, you have to specify the return type and write the `return` statements explicitly. That's a conscious choice. A real-world function often is long and can contain several return statements; having the return type and the return statements written explicitly helps you quickly grasp what can be returned. Let's look at the syntax for variable declarations next.

2.1.3 Variables

In Java, you start a variable declaration with a type. This wouldn't work for Kotlin, because it lets you omit the types from many variable declarations. Thus in Kotlin you start with a keyword, and you may (or may not) put the type after the variable name. Let's declare two variables:

```
val question =  
    "The Ultimate Question of Life, the Universe, and Everything"  
  
val answer = 42
```

This example omits the type declarations, but you can also specify the type explicitly if you want to:

```
val answer: Int = 42
```

Just as with expression-body functions, if you don't specify the type, the compiler analyzes the initializer expression and uses its type as the variable type. In this case, the initializer, 42, has `Int` type, so the variable will have the same type.

If you use a floating-point constant, the variable will have the type `Double`:

```
val yearsToCompute = 7.5e6
```

1

1 $7.5 * 10^6 = 7500000.0$

The number types are covered in more depth in section XREF ID_primitive_types. If a variable doesn't have an initializer, you need to specify its type explicitly:

```
val answer: Int
answer = 42
```

The compiler can't infer the type if you give no information about the values that can be assigned to this variable.

MUTABLE AND IMMUTABLE VARIABLES

There are two keywords to declare a variable:

- `val` (from *value*)—Immutable reference. A variable declared with `val` can't be reassigned after it's initialized. It corresponds to a `final` variable in Java.
- `var` (from *variable*)—Mutable reference. The value of such a variable can be changed. This declaration corresponds to a regular (non-final) Java variable.

By default, you should strive to declare all variables in Kotlin with the `val` keyword. Change it to `var` only if necessary. Using immutable references, immutable objects, and functions without side effects makes your code closer to the functional style. We touched briefly on its advantages in chapter 1, and we'll return to this topic in chapter 5.

A `val` variable must be initialized exactly once during the execution of the block where it's defined. But you can initialize it with different values depending on some condition, if the compiler can ensure that only one of the initialization statements will be executed:

```
val message: String
if (canPerformOperation())
{ message = "Success"
  // ... perform the operation
}
else {
  message = "Failed"
}
```

Note that, even though a `val` reference is itself immutable and cannot be changed, the object that it points to may be mutable. For example, this code is perfectly valid:

```
val languages = arrayListOf("Java")
languages.add("Kotlin")
```

1
2

- 1 Declare an immutable reference
- 2 Mutate the object pointed to by the reference

Later in the book, in chapter 6, we'll discuss mutable and immutable objects in more detail.

Even though the `var` keyword allows a variable to change its value, its type is fixed. For example, this code doesn't compile:

```
var answer = 42
answer = "no answer" ❶
```

❶ Error: type mismatch

There is an error on the string literal because its type (`String`) isn't as expected (`Int`). The compiler infers the variable type only from the initializer and doesn't take subsequent assignments into account when determining the type.

If you need to store a value of a mismatching type in a variable, you need to manually convert or coerce the value into the right type. We'll discuss primitive type conversions in section [XREF ID_number_conversions](#).

Now that you know how to define variables, it's time to see some new tricks for referring to values of those variables.

2.1.4 Easier string formatting: string templates

Let's get back to the "Hello World" example that opened this section. Here's how to do the next step of the traditional exercise and greet people by name the Kotlin way:

```
fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val name = if (args.size > 0) args[0] else "Kotlin"
    println("Hello, $name!") ❶
}
```

❶ Prints "Hello, Kotlin", or "Hello, Bob" if you pass "Bob" as an argument

This example introduces the feature called *string templates*. In the code, you declare a variable `name` and then use it in the following string literal. Like many scripting languages, Kotlin allows you to refer to local variables in string literals by putting the `$` character in front of the variable name. This is equivalent to Java's string concatenation (`"Hello, " + name + "!"`) but is more compact and just as efficient.⁵ And of course, the expressions are statically checked, and the code won't compile if you try to refer to a variable that doesn't exist.

Footnote 5 The compiled code creates a `StringBuilder` and appends the constant parts and variable values to it.

If you need to include the `$` character in a string, you escape it: `println("\$x")`

prints `$x` and doesn't interpret `x` as a variable reference.

You're not restricted to simple variable names; you can use more complex expressions as well. All it takes is putting curly braces around the expression:

```
fun main(args: Array<String>)
{ if (args.size > 0) {
    println("Hello, ${args[0]}!")
}
}
```

❶

- ❶ Uses the `${}` syntax to insert the first element of the `args` array

You can also nest double quotes within double quotes, as long as they are within an expression:

```
fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    println("Hello, ${if (args.size > 0) args[0] else "someone"}!")
}
```

Later, in section [XREF ID_working_with_strings](#), we'll return to strings and talk more about what you can do with them.

Now you know how to declare functions and variables. Let's go one step up in the hierarchy and look at classes. This time, you'll use the Java-to-Kotlin converter to help you get started using the new language features.

2.2 Classes and properties

You probably aren't new to object-oriented programming and are familiar with the abstraction of a *class*. Kotlin's concepts in this area will be familiar to you, but you'll find that many common tasks can be accomplished with much less code. This section will introduce you to the basic syntax for declaring classes. We'll go into more detail about classes in chapter 4.

To begin with, let's look at a simple JavaBean `Person` class that so far contains only one property, `name`:

```
/* Java */
public class Person {
    private final String name;

    public Person(String name)
    { this.name = name;
    }

    public String getName()
    { return name;
    }
}
```

In Java, the constructor body often contains code that's entirely repetitive: it assigns the parameters to the fields with corresponding names. In Kotlin, this logic can be expressed without so much boilerplate.

In section 1.5.6, we introduced the Java-to-Kotlin converter: a tool that automatically replaces Java code with Kotlin code that does the same thing. Let's look at the converter in action and convert the `Person` class to Kotlin:

```
class Person(val name: String)
```

Looks good, doesn't it? If you've tried another modern JVM language, you may have seen something similar. Classes of this type (containing only data but no code) are often called *value objects*, and many languages offer a concise syntax for declaring them. Such simple classes written in Kotlin style are much more enjoyable to deal with, compared to the Java version.

Note that the modifier `public` disappeared during the conversion from Java to Kotlin. In Kotlin, `public` is the default visibility, so you can omit it.

2.2.1 Properties

As you no doubt know, the idea of a class is to encapsulate data and code that works on that data into a single entity. In Java, the data is stored in fields, which are usually private. If you need to let clients of the class access that data, you provide *accessor methods*: a getter and possibly a setter. You saw an example of this in the `Person` class. The setter can also contain additional logic for validating the passed value, sending notifications about the change and so on.

In Java, the combination of the field and its accessors is often referred to as a *property*, and many frameworks make heavy use of that concept. In Kotlin, properties are a first-class language feature, which entirely replaces fields and accessor methods. You declare a property in a class the same way you declare a variable: with `val` and `var` keywords. A property declared as `val` is read-only, whereas a `var` property is mutable and can be changed:

```
class Person(  
    val name: String,  
    var isMarried: Boolean  
)
```

- ❶ Read-only property: generates a field and a trivial getter
- ❷ Writable property: a field, a getter, and a setter

Basically, when you declare a property, you declare the corresponding accessors (a

getter for a read-only property, and both a getter and a setter for a writable one). By default, the implementation of accessors is trivial: a field is created to store the value, and the getter and setter return and update its value. But if you want to, you may declare a custom accessor that uses different logic to compute or update the property value.

The concise declaration of the previous `Person` class hides the same underlying implementation as the original Java code: it's a class with a private field that is initialized in the constructor and can be accessed through the corresponding getter. That means you can use this class from Java and from Kotlin the same way, independent of where it was declared. The usage looks identical. Here's how you can use `Person` from Java code:

```
/* Java */
>>> Person person = new Person("Bob", true);
>>> System.out.println(person.getName());
Bob
>>> System.out.println(person.isMarried());
true
```

Note that this looks the same when `Person` is defined in Java and in Kotlin. Kotlin's `name` property is exposed to Java as a getter method called `getName()`. For Boolean properties, a special rule for getter naming applies: if the property name starts with `is`, no additional prefix for the getter is added. Thus, from Java, you call `isMarried()`.

If you convert the previous code to Kotlin, you get the following result:

```
>>> val person = Person("Bob", true) ①
>>> println(person.name) ②
Bob
>>> println(person.isMarried) ②
true
```

- ① You call the constructor without the `new` keyword.
- ② You access the property directly, but the getter is invoked.

Now, instead of invoking the getter, you reference the property directly. The logic stays the same, but the code is more concise. Setters of mutable properties work the same way: while in Java, you use `person.setMarried(false)` to tell about a divorce; in Kotlin, you can write `person.isMarried = false`.

TIP**Properties of Java classes**

You can also use the Kotlin property syntax for classes defined in Java. Getters in a Java class can be accessed as `val` properties from Kotlin, and getter/setter pairs can be accessed as `var` properties. For example, if a Java class defines methods called `getName()` and `setName()`, you can access it as a property called `name`. If it defines methods `isMarried()` and `setMarried()`, the name of the corresponding Kotlin property will be `isMarried`.

In most cases, the property has a corresponding backing field that stores the property value. But if the value can be computed on the fly—for example, from other properties—you can express that using a custom getter.

2.2.2 Custom accessors

This section shows you how to write a custom implementation of a property accessor. Suppose you declare a rectangle that can say whether it's a square. You don't need to store that information as a separate field, because you can check whether the height is equal to the width on the go:

```
class Rectangle(val height: Int, val width: Int)
{ val isSquare: Boolean
    get() {
        return height == width
    }
}
```

❶ Property getter declaration

The property `isSquare` doesn't need a field to store its value. It only has a custom getter with the implementation provided. The value is computed every time the property is accessed.

Note that you don't have to use the full syntax with curly braces; you could write `get() = height == width`, as well. The invocation of such a property stays the same:

```
>>> val rectangle = Rectangle(41, 43)
>>> println(rectangle.isSquare)
false
```

If you need to access this property from Java, you call the `isSquare()` method as before.

You might ask whether it's better to declare a function without arguments or a property with custom getter. Both options are very similar: there is no difference in

implementation or performance, they only differ in readability. Generally if you describe the characteristic (the property) of a class, you should declare it as a property.

In chapter 4, we'll present more examples that use classes and properties, and we'll look at the syntax to explicitly declare constructors. If you're impatient in the meantime, you can always use the Java-to-Kotlin converter. Now let's examine briefly how Kotlin code is organized on disk before we move on to discuss other language features.

2.2.3 Kotlin source code layout: directories and packages

You know that Java organizes all classes into packages. Kotlin also has the concept of packages, which works very similarly to that in Java. Every Kotlin file can have a `package` statement at the beginning, and all declarations (classes, functions, and properties) defined in the file will be placed in that package. Declarations defined in other files can be used directly if they're in the same package; they need to be imported if they're in a different package. As in Java, import statements are placed at the beginning of the file and use the `import` keyword.

Here's an example of a source file showing the syntax for the package declaration and import statement:

```
package geometry.shapes ❶

import java.util.Random ❷

class Rectangle(val height: Int, val width: Int)
{
    val isSquare: Boolean
    get() = height == width
}

fun createRandomRectangle(): Rectangle
{
    val random = Random()
    return Rectangle(random.nextInt(), random.nextInt())
}
```

- ❶ Package declaration
- ❷ Imports the standard Java library class

Kotlin doesn't make a distinction between importing classes and methods, and it allows you to import any kind of declaration using the `import` keyword. You can import the top-level function by name:

```
package geometry.example

import geometry.shapes.createRandomRectangle ❶

fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    println(createRandomRectangle().isSquare) ❷
}
```

-
- ❶ Imports a function by name
 - ❷ Prints true incredibly rarely

You can also import all declarations defined in a particular package by putting `.*` after the package name. Note that this *star import* will make visible not only classes defined in the package, but also top-level functions. In the previous example, above writing `import geometry.shapes.*` instead of the explicit import makes the code compile correctly as well.

In Java, you put your classes into a structure of files and directories that matches the package structure. For example, if you have a package named `shapes` with several classes, you need to put every class into a separate file with a matching name and store those files in a directory also called `shapes`. Figure 2.2 shows how the `geometry` package and its subpackages could be organized in Java. Assume that the `createRandomRectangle` function is located in a separate file, `RectangleUtil`.

Figure 2.2 In Java, the directory hierarchy duplicates the package hierarchy.

In Kotlin, you can put multiple classes in the same file and choose any name for that file. Kotlin also doesn't impose any restrictions on the layout of source files on disk; you can use any directory structure to organize your files. For instance, you can define all the content of the package `geometry.shapes` in the file `shapes.kt` and place this file in the `geometry` folder without creating a separate `shapes` folder (see figure 2.3).

Figure 2.3 Your package hierarchy doesn't need to follow the directory hierarchy.

In most cases, however, it's still a good practice to follow Java's directory layout and to organize source files into directories according to the package structure. Sticking to that structure is especially important in projects where Kotlin is mixed with Java, because doing so lets you migrate the code gradually without introducing any surprises. But you shouldn't hesitate to pull multiple classes into the same file, especially if the classes are small (and in Kotlin, they often are).

Now you know how programs are structured. Let's move on with learning basic concepts and look at control structures in Kotlin.

2.3 Representing and handling choices: enums and 'when'

In this section, we're going to talk about the `when` construct. It can be thought of as a replacement for the `switch` construct in Java, but in fact it's more powerful and is used much more often. Along the way, we'll give you an example of declaring enums in Kotlin and discuss the concept of *smart casts*.

2.3.1 Declaring enum classes

Let's start by adding some imaginary bright pictures to this serious book and looking at an enum of colors:

```
enum class Color {  
    RED, ORANGE, YELLOW, GREEN, BLUE, INDIGO, VIOLET  
}
```

This is a rare case when a Kotlin declaration uses more keywords than the corresponding Java one: `enum class` versus just `enum` in Java. In Kotlin, `enum` is a so-called *soft keyword*: it has a special meaning when it comes before `class`, but you can use it as a regular name in other places. On the other hand, `class` is still a keyword, and you'll continue to declare variables named `clazz` or `aClass`.

Just as in Java, enums aren't lists of values: you can declare properties and methods on enum classes. Here's how it works:

```
enum class Color(  
    val r: Int, val g: Int, val b: Int  
) {  
    RED(255, 0, 0), ORANGE(255, 165, 0),  
    YELLOW(255, 255, 0), GREEN(0, 255, 0), BLUE(0, 0, 255),  
    INDIGO(75, 0, 130), VIOLET(238, 130, 238);  
  
    fun rgb() = (r * 256 + g) * 256 + b  
}  
>>> println(Color.BLUE.rgb())  
255
```

- ❶ Declares properties of enum constants
- ❷ Specifies property values when each constant is created
- ❸ The semicolon here is required.
- ❹ Defines a method on the enum class

As you can see, enum constants use the same constructor and property declaration syntax as you saw earlier for regular classes. When you declare each enum constant, you need to provide the property values for that constant. Note that this example shows the only place in the Kotlin syntax where you're required to use semicolons: if you define any methods in the enum class, the semicolon separates the enum constant list from the method definitions. Now let's see some cool ways to deal with enum constants in your code.

2.3.2 Using 'when' to deal with enum classes

Do you remember how children use mnemonic phrases to memorize the colors of the rainbow? Here's one: "Richard Of York Gave Battle In Vain!" Imagine you need a function that gives you a mnemonic for each color (and you don't want to store this information in the enum itself). In Java, you can use a `switch` statement for this. The corresponding Kotlin construct is `when`.

Like `if`, `when` is an expression that returns a value, so you can write a function with an expression body, returning the `when` expression directly. When we talked about functions at the beginning of the chapter, we promised an example of a multiline function with an expression body. Here's such an example:

```
fun getMnemonic(color: Color) =  
    when (color) {  
        Color.RED -> "Richard"  
        Color.ORANGE -> "Of"  
        Color.YELLOW -> "York"  
        Color.GREEN -> "Gave"  
        Color.BLUE -> "Battle"  
        Color.INDIGO -> "In"  
        Color.VIOLET -> "Vain"  
    }  
  
>>> println(getMnemonic(Color.BLUE))  
Battle
```

- 1 Returns a `when` expression directly
- 2 Returns the corresponding string if the color equals the enum constant

The code finds the branch corresponding to the passed `color` value. Unlike in Java, you don't need to write `break` statements in each branch (a missing `break` is often a cause for bugs in Java code). If a match is successful, only the corresponding branch is executed.

You can also combine multiple values in the same branch if you separate them with commas:

```
fun getWarmth(color: Color) = when(color)  
    { Color.RED, Color.ORANGE, Color.YELLOW ->  
        "warm" Color.GREEN -> "neutral"  
        Color.BLUE, Color.INDIGO, Color.VIOLET -> "cold"  
    }  
  
>>> println(getWarmth(Color.ORANGE))  
warm
```

These examples use enum constants by their full name, specifying the `Color` enum class name. You can simplify the code by importing the constant values:

```
import ch02.colors.Color
import ch02.colors.Color.*
```

1

2

```
fun getWarmth(color: Color) = when(color)
    { RED, ORANGE, YELLOW -> "warm"
      GREEN -> "neutral"
      BLUE, INDIGO, VIOLET -> "cold"
    }
```

3

- 1 Imports the Color class declared in another package
- 2 Explicitly imports enum constants to use them by names
- 3 Uses imported constants by name

In future examples we'll use the short enum names but omit the explicit imports for simplicity.

2.3.3 Using 'when' with arbitrary objects

The `when` construct in Kotlin is more powerful than Java's `switch`. Unlike `switch`, which requires you to use constants (enum constants, strings, or number literals) as branch conditions, `when` allows any objects. Let's write a function that mixes two colors if they can be mixed in this small palette. You don't have lots of options, and you can easily enumerate them all:

```
fun mix(c1: Color, c2: Color) =
    when (setOf(c1, c2)) {
        setOf(RED, YELLOW) -> ORANGE
        setOf(YELLOW, BLUE) -> GREEN
        setOf(BLUE, VIOLET) -> INDIGO
        else -> throw Exception("Dirty color")
    }

>>> println(mix(BLUE, YELLOW))
GREEN
```

1

2

3

- 1 An argument of the `when` expression can be any object. It's checked for equality with the branch conditions.
- 2 Enumerates pairs of colors that can be mixed
- 3 Executed if none of the other branches were matched

If colors `c1` and `c2` are `RED` and `YELLOW` (or vice versa), the result of mixing them is `ORANGE`, and so on. To implement this, you use set comparison. The Kotlin standard library contains a function `setOf` that creates a `Set` containing the objects specified as its

arguments. A *set* is a collection for which the order of items doesn't matter; two sets are equal if they contain the same items. Thus, if the sets `setOf(c1, c2)` and `setOf(RED, YELLOW)` are equal, it means either `c1` is `RED` and `c2` is `YELLOW`, or vice versa. This is exactly what you want to check.

The `when` expression matches its argument against all branches in order until some branch condition is satisfied. Thus `setOf(c1, c2)` is checked for equality: first with `setOf(RED, YELLOW)` and then with other sets of colors, one after another. If none of the other branch conditions is satisfied, the `else` branch is evaluated.

Being able to use any expression as a `when` branch condition lets you write concise and beautiful code in many cases. In this example, the condition is an equality check; next you'll see how the condition may be any boolean expression.

2.3.4 Using 'when' without an argument

You may have noticed that the previous example is somewhat inefficient. Every time you call this function, it creates several `Set` instances that are used only to check whether two given colors match the other two colors. Normally this isn't an issue, but if the function is called often, it's worth rewriting the code in a different way to avoid creating garbage.

You can do it by using the `when` statement without an argument. The code is less readable, but that's the price you often have to pay to achieve better performance:

```
fun mixOptimized(c1: Color, c2: Color) =  
    when {  
        ①  
        (c1 == RED && c2 == YELLOW) ||  
        (c1 == YELLOW && c2 == RED) ->  
            ORANGE  
  
        (c1 == YELLOW && c2 == BLUE) ||  
        (c1 == BLUE && c2 == YELLOW) ->  
            GREEN  
  
        (c1 == BLUE && c2 == VIOLET) ||  
        (c1 == VIOLET && c2 == BLUE) ->  
            INDIGO  
  
        else -> throw Exception("Dirty color")  
    }  
>>> println(mixOptimized(BLUE, YELLOW))  
GREEN
```

① No argument for when

If no argument is supplied for the `when` expression, the branch condition is any boolean expression. The `mixOptimized` function does the same thing as `mix` did earlier. Its advantage is that it doesn't create any extra objects, but the cost is that it's harder to read.

Let's move on and look at examples of the `when` construct in which *smart casts* come

into play.

2.3.5 Smart casts: combining type checks and casts

As the example for this section, you'll write a function that evaluates simple arithmetic expressions like $(1 + 2) + 4$. The expressions will contain only one type of operation: the sum of two numbers. Other arithmetic operations (subtraction, multiplication, division) can be implemented in a similar way, and you can do that as an exercise.

First, how do you encode the expressions? You store them in a tree-like structure, where each node is either a sum (`Sum`) or a number (`Num`). `Num` is always a leaf node, whereas a `Sum` node has two children: the arguments of the `sum` operation. The following snippet shows a simple structure of classes used to encode the expressions: an interface called `Expr` and two classes, `Num` and `Sum`, that implement it. Note that the `Expr` interface doesn't declare any methods; it's used as a marker interface to provide a common type for different kinds of expressions. To mark that a class implements an interface, you use a colon (`:`) followed by the interface name:

```
interface Expr
class Num(val value: Int) : Expr
class Sum(val left: Expr, val right: Expr) : Expr
```

1
2

- ❶ Simple value object class with one property, `value`, implementing the `Expr` interface
- ❷ The argument of a `Sum` operation can be any `Expr`: either `Num` or another `Sum`

`Sum` stores the references to `left` and `right` arguments of type `Expr`; in this small example, they can be either `Num` or `Sum`. To store the expression $(1 + 2) + 4$ mentioned earlier, you create an object `Sum(Sum(Num(1), Num(2)), Num(4))`. Figure 2.4 shows its tree representation.

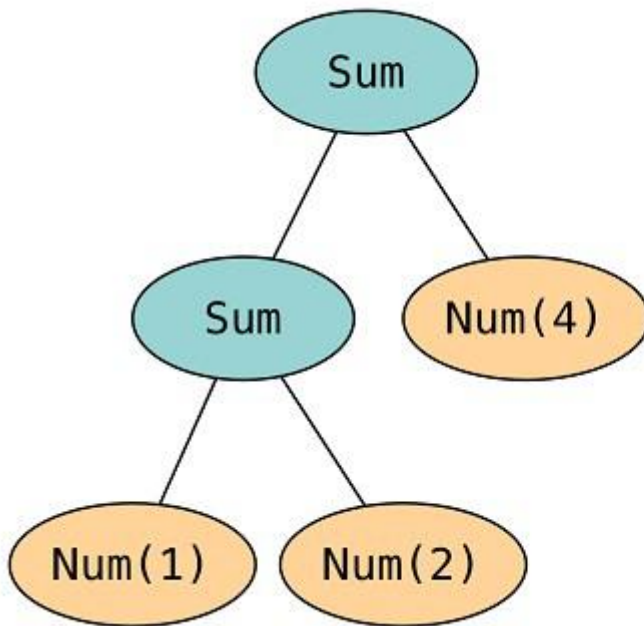


Figure 2.4 A representation of the expression `Sum(Sum(Num(1), Num(2)), Num(4))`

Now let's look at how to compute the value of an expression. Evaluating the example expression should return 7:

```
>>> eval(Sum(Sum(Num(1), Num(2)), Num(4)))  
7
```

The `Expr` interface has two implementations, so you have to try two options in order to evaluate a result value for an expression:

- If an expression is a number, you return the corresponding value.
- If it's a sum, you have to evaluate the left and right expressions and return their sum.

First we'll look at this function written in the normal Java way, and then we'll refactor it to be written in a Kotlin style. In Java, you'd probably use a sequence of `if` statements to check the options, so let's use the same approach in Kotlin:

```
fun eval(e: Expr): Int  
{ if (e is Num) {  
    val n = e as Num  
    return n.value  
}  
if (e is Sum) {  
    return eval(e.right) + eval(e.left)  
}  
throw IllegalArgumentException("Unknown expression")  
}  
  
>>> println(eval(Sum(Sum(Num(1), Num(2)), Num(4))))  
7
```

- ❶ This explicit cast to `Num` is redundant.
- ❷ The variable `e` is smart-cast.

In Kotlin, you check whether a variable is of a certain type by using an `is` check. If you've programmed in C#, this notation should be familiar. The `is` check is similar to `instanceof` in Java. But in Java, if you've checked that a variable has a certain type and need to access members of that type, you need to add an explicit cast following the `instanceof` check. When the initial variable is used more than once, you often store the cast result in a separate variable. In Kotlin, the compiler does this job for you. If you check the variable for a certain type, you don't need to cast it afterward; you can use it as having the type you checked for. In effect, the compiler performs the cast for you, and we call it a *smart cast*.

In the `eval` function, after you check whether the variable `e` has `Num` type, the compiler interprets it as a `Num` variable. You can then access the `value` property of `Num` without an explicit cast: `e.value`. The same goes for the `right` and `left` properties of `Sum`: you write only `e.right` and `e.left` in the corresponding context. In the IDE, these smart-cast values are emphasized with a background color, as shown in figure 2.5, so it's easy to grasp that this value was checked beforehand.

```
if (e is Sum) {  
    return eval(e.right) + eval(e.left)  
}
```

Figure 2.5 The IDE highlights smart casts with a background color.

The smart cast works only if a variable couldn't have changed after the `is` check. When you're using a smart cast with a property of a class, as in this example, the property has to be a `val` and it cannot have a custom accessor. Otherwise, it would not be possible to verify that every access to the property would return the same value.

An explicit cast to the specific type is expressed via the `as` keyword:

```
val n = e as Num.
```

Now let's look at how to refactor the `eval` function into a more idiomatic Kotlin style.

2.3.6 Refactoring: replacing 'if' with 'when'

How does `if` in Kotlin differ from `if` in Java? You have seen the difference already. At the beginning of the chapter, you saw the `if` expression used in the context where Java would have a ternary operator: `if (a > b) a else b` works like Java's `a > b ? a : b`. In Kotlin, there is no ternary operator, because, unlike in Java, the `if` expression returns a value. That means you can rewrite the `eval` function to use the expression-body syntax, removing the `return` statement and the curly braces and using the `if` expression as the function body instead:

```
fun eval(e: Expr): Int =
    if (e is Num) {
        e.value
    } else if (e is Sum)
        { eval(e.right) +
          eval(e.left)
        }
    } else {
        throw IllegalArgumentException("Unknown expression")
    }

>>> println(eval(Sum(Num(1), Num(2))))
3
```

The curly brackets are optional if there's only one expression in an `if` branch. If an `if` branch is a block, the last expression is returned as a result.

Let's polish this code even more and rewrite it using `when`:

```
fun eval(e: Expr): Int =
    when (e) {
        is Num -> ①
                    ②
                    e.value
        is Sum -> ①
                    ②
                    eval(e.right) + eval(e.left)
        else ->
            throw IllegalArgumentException("Unknown expression")
    }
```

- ① when branches that check the argument type
- ② Smart casts are applied here.

The `when` expression isn't restricted to checking values for equality, which is what you saw earlier. Here you use a different form of `when` branches, allowing you to check the type of the `when` argument value. Just as in the earlier `if` example, the type check applies a smart cast, so you can access members of `Num` and `Sum` without extra casts.

Compare the last two Kotlin versions of the `eval` function, and think about how you can apply `when` as a replacement for sequences of `if` statements in your own code as

well. When the branch logic is complicated, you can use a block expression as a branch body. Let's see how this works.

2.3.7 Blocks as branches of 'if' and 'when'

Both `if` and `when` can have blocks as branches. In this case, the last expression in the block is the result. If you want to add some logging to the example function, you can do so in the block and return the last value as before:

```
fun evalWithLogging(e: Expr): Int =
    when (e) {
        is Num -> {
            println("num: ${e.value}")
            e.value
        }
        is Sum -> {
            val left = evalWithLogging(e.left)
            val right = evalWithLogging(e.right)
            println("sum: $left + $right")
            left + right
        }
        else -> throw IllegalArgumentException("Unknown expression")
    }
```

- ❶ This is the last expression in a block and is returned if `e` is of type `Num`.
- ❷ This expression is returned if `e` is of type `Sum`.

Now you can look at the logs printed by the `evalWithLogging` function and follow the order of computation:

```
>>> println(evalWithLogging(Sum(Sum(Num(1), Num(2)), Num(4))))
num: 1
num: 2
sum: 1 + 2
num: 4
sum: 3 + 4
7
```

The rule "the last expression in a block is the result" holds in all cases where a block can be used and a result is expected. As you'll see at the end of this chapter, the same rule works for the `try` body and `catch` clauses, and chapter 5 discusses its application to lambda expressions. But as we already mentioned in section 2.2.1, this rule doesn't hold for regular functions. A function can have either an expression body that can't be a block, or a block body with explicit `return` statements inside.

You've become acquainted with Kotlin ways to choose the right things among many. Now it's a good time to see how you can iterate over things.

2.4 Iterating over things: 'while' and 'for' loops

Of all the features discussed in this chapter, iteration in Kotlin is probably the most similar to Java. The `while` loop is identical to the one in Java, so it deserves only a brief mention in the beginning of this section. The `for` loop exists in only one form, which is equivalent to Java's 'for-each' loop. It's written `for <item> in <elements>`, as in C#. The most common application of this loop is iterating over collections, just as in Java. We'll explore how it can cover other looping scenarios as well.

2.4.1 The while Loop

Kotlin has `while` and `do-while` loops, and their syntax doesn't differ from the corresponding loops in Java:

```
while (condition) {  
    /*...*/  
}  
  
do {  
    /*...*/  
} while (condition)
```

- ❶ The body is executed while the condition is true.
- ❷ The body is executed for the first time unconditionally. After that, it's executed while the condition is true.

Kotlin doesn't bring anything new to these simple loops, so we won't linger. Let's move on to discuss the various uses of the `for` loop.

2.4.2 Iterating over numbers: ranges and progressions

As we just mentioned, in Kotlin there's no regular Java `for` loop, where you initialize a variable, update its value on every step through the loop, and exit the loop when the value reaches a certain bound. To replace the most common use cases of such loops, Kotlin uses the concepts of *ranges*.

A range is essentially just an interval between two values, usually numbers: a start and an end. You write it using the `..` operator:

```
val oneToTen = 1..10
```

Note that ranges in Kotlin are *closed* or *inclusive*, meaning the second value is also always a part of the range.

The most basic thing you can do with integer ranges is loop over all the values. If you can iterate over all the values in a range, such a range is called a *progression*.

Let's use integer ranges to play the Fizz-Buzz game. It's a nice way to survive a long trip in a car and remember your forgotten division skills. Players take turns counting incrementally, replacing any number divisible by three with the word *fizz* and any number divisible by five with the word *buzz*. If a number is a multiple of both three and five, you say "FizzBuzz."

The following code prints the right answers for the numbers from 1 to 100. Note how you check the possible conditions with a `when` expression without an argument:

```
fun fizzBuzz(i: Int) = when
    { i % 15 == 0 -> "FizzBuzz" ❶
    " i % 3 == 0 -> "Fizz "    ❷
    i % 5 == 0 -> "Buzz "     ❸
    else -> "$i "             ❹
}
>>> for (i in 1..100) {      ❺
...     print(fizzBuzz(i))
... }
1 2 Fizz 4 Buzz Fizz 7 ...
```

- ❶ If `i` is divisible by 15, returns FizzBuzz. As in Java, `%` is the modulus operator.
- ❷ If `i` is divisible by 3, returns Fizz
- ❸ If `i` is divisible by 5, returns Buzz
- ❹ Else returns the number itself
- ❺ Iterates over the integer range `1..100`

Suppose you get tired of these rules after an hour of driving and want to complicate things a bit. Let's start counting backward from 100 and include only even numbers:

```
>>> for (i in 100 downTo 1 step 2) {
...     print(fizzBuzz(i)) ❶
... }
Buzz 98 Fizz 94 92 FizzBuzz 88 ...
```

Now you're iterating over a progression that has a *step*, which allows it to skip some numbers. The step can also be negative, in which case the progression goes backward rather than forward. In this example, `100 downTo 1` is a progression that goes backward (with step -1). Then `step 2` changes the absolute value of the step to 2 while keeping the direction (in effect, setting the step to -2).

As we mentioned earlier, the `..` syntax always creates a range that includes the end point (the value to the right of `..`). In many cases, it's more convenient to iterate over

half-closed ranges, which don't include the specified end point. To create such a range, use the `until` function. For example, the loop `for (x in 0 until size)` is equivalent to `for (x in 0..size-1)`, but it expresses the idea somewhat more clearly. Later, in section XREF ID_infix_calls, you'll learn more about the syntax for `downTo`, `step`, and `until` in these examples. You can see how working with ranges and progressions helped you cope with the advanced rules for the FizzBuzz game. Now let's look at other examples that use the `for` loop.

2.4.3 Iterating over maps

We've mentioned that the most common scenario of using a `for .. in` loop is iterating over a collection. This works exactly as it does in Java, so we won't say much about it. Let's see how you can iterate over a map, instead.

As an example, we'll look at a small program that prints binary representations for characters. You store these binary representations in a map (just for illustrative purposes). You create a map, fill it with binary representations of some letters, and then print the map's contents:

```
val binaryReps = TreeMap<Char, String>()

for (c in 'A'..'F') {
    val binary = Integer.toBinaryString(c.toInt())
    binaryReps[c] = binary
}

for ((letter, binary) in binaryReps) {
    println("$letter = $binary")
}
```

- ❶ Uses `TreeMap` so that the keys are sorted
- ❷ Iterates over the characters from A to F using a range of characters
- ❸ Converts ASCII code to binary
- ❹ Stores the value in a map by the `c` key
- ❺ Iterates over a map, assigning the map key and value to two variables

The `..` syntax to create a range works not only for numbers, but also for characters. Here you use it to iterate over all characters from 'A' up to and including 'F'.

The example shows that the `for` loop allows you to unpack an element of a collection you're iterating over (in this case, a collection of key/value pairs in the map). You store

the result of the unpacking in two separate variables: `letter` receives the key, and `binary` receives the value. Later in section [XREF ID_destructuring_declarations](#) you'll find out more about this unpacking syntax.

Another nice trick used in this example is the shorthand syntax for getting and updating the values of a map by key. Instead of calling `get()` and `put()`, you can use `map[key]` to read values and `map[key] = value` to set them. The code

```
binaryReps[c] = binary
```

is equivalent to its Java version:

```
binaryReps.put(c, binary)
```

The output is similar to the following (we've arranged it in two columns instead of one):

```
A = 1000001    D = 1000100
B = 1000010    E = 1000101
C = 1000011    F = 1000110
```

You can use the same unpacking syntax to iterate over a collection while keeping track of the index of the current item. You don't need to create a separate variable to store the index and increment it by hand:

```
val list = arrayListOf("10", "11", "1001")
for ((index, element) in list.withIndex()) {
    println("$index: $element")
}
```

1

1 Iterates over a collection with an index

The code prints what you expect:

```
0: 10
1: 11
2: 1001
```

We'll dig into the whereabouts of `withIndex` in the next chapter.

You've seen how you can use the `in` keyword to iterate over a range or a collection. You can also use `in` to check whether a value belongs to the range or collection.

2.4.4 Using an 'in' check

You use the `in` operator to check whether a value is in a range, or its opposite, `!in`, to check if a value isn't in a range. Here's how you can use `in` to check if a character belongs to a range of characters:

```
fun isLetter(c: Char) = c in 'a'..'z' || c in 'A'..'Z'
```

```
fun isNotDigit(c: Char) = c !in '0'..'9'

>>> println(isLetter('q'))
true
>>> println(isNotDigit('x'))
true
```

This technique for checking whether a character is a letter looks simple. Under the hood, nothing tricky happens: you still check that the character's code is somewhere between the code of the first letter and the code of the last one. But this logic is concisely hidden in the implementation of the range classes in the standard library:

```
c in 'a'..'z'
```

❶

❶ Transforms to a `c && c z`

The `in` and `!in` operators also work in `when` expressions:

```
fun recognize(c: Char) = when (c)
    { in '0'..'9' -> "It's a digit!"
    in 'a'..'z', in 'A'..'Z' -> "It's a letter!"
    else -> "I don't know..."
}
>>> println(recognize('8'))
It's a digit!
```

❶

❷

- ❶ Checks whether the value is in the range from 0 to 9
- ❷ You can combine multiple ranges.

Ranges aren't restricted to characters, either. If you have any class that supports comparing instances (by implementing the `java.lang.Comparable` interface), you can create ranges of objects of that type. If you have such a range, you can't enumerate all objects in the range. Think about it: can you, for example, enumerate all strings between "Java" and "Kotlin"? No, you can't. But you can still check whether another object belongs to the range, using the `in` operator:

```
>>> println("Kotlin" in "Java".."Scala")
true
```

❶

❶ The same as `"Java" < "Kotlin" && "Kotlin" < "Scala"`

Note that the strings are compared alphabetically here, because that's how the `String` class implements the `Comparable` interface.

The same `in` check works with collections as well:

```
>>> println("Kotlin" in setOf("Java", "Scala"))  
false
```

1

- 1 This set doesn't contain the string "Kotlin". Later, in section , you'll see how to use ranges and progressions with your own data types and what objects in general you can use in checks with.

There's one more group of Java statements we want to look at in this chapter: statements for dealing with exceptions.

2.5 Exceptions in Kotlin

Exception handling in Kotlin is very similar to Java and many other languages. A function can complete in a normal way or throw an exception if an error occurs. The function caller can catch this exception and process it; if it doesn't, the exception is rethrown further up the stack.

The basic form for exception-handling statements in Kotlin is very similar to Java. You throw an exception in a non-surprising manner:

```
if (percentage !in 0..100) {  
    throw IllegalArgumentException(  
        "A percentage value must be between 0 and 100: $percentage")  
}
```

As with all other classes, you don't have to use the `new` keyword to create an instance of the exception.

Unlike in Java, in Kotlin the `throw` construct is an expression and can be used as a part of other expressions:

```
val percentage =  
    if (number in 0..100)  
        number  
    else  
        throw IllegalArgumentException(  
            "A percentage value must be between 0 and 100: $number")
```

1

- 1 'throw' is an expression.

In this example, if the condition is satisfied, the program behaves correctly, and the `percentage` variable is initialized with `number`. Otherwise, an exception is thrown, and the variable isn't initialized. We'll discuss the technical details of `throw` as a part of other expressions later in section XREF ID_nothing_type.

2.5.1 'try', 'catch', and 'finally'

Just as in Java, you use the `try` construct with `catch` and `finally` clauses to handle exceptions. You can see it in the following example, which reads a line from the given file, tries to parse it as a number, and returns either the number or `null` if the line isn't a valid number:

```
fun readNumber(reader: BufferedReader): Int?
{ try {
    val line = reader.readLine()
    return Integer.parseInt(line)
}

catch (e: NumberFormatException)
{ return null
}

finally {
    reader.close()
}
}
```

>>> val reader = BufferedReader(StringReader("239"))
>>> println(readNumber(reader))
239

- ❶ You don't have to explicitly specify exceptions that can be thrown from this function.
- ❷ The exception type is on the right.
- ❸ `finally` works just as it does in Java.

The biggest difference from Java is that the `throws` clause isn't present in the code: if you wrote this function in Java, you'd explicitly write `throws IOException` after the function declaration. You need to do this because `IOException` is a *checked exception*. In Java, it's an exception that needs to be handled explicitly. You have to declare all checked exceptions that your method can throw, and if you call another method, you need to handle its checked exceptions or declare that your method can throw them, too.

Just like many other modern JVM languages, Kotlin doesn't differentiate between checked and unchecked exceptions. You don't specify the exceptions thrown by a function, and you may or may not handle any exceptions. This design decision is based on the practice of using checked exceptions in Java. Experience has shown that the Java rules often require a lot of meaningless code to rethrow or ignore exceptions, and the rules don't consistently protect you from the errors that can happen.

For example, in the code we just looked at, `NumberFormatException` isn't a checked exception. Therefore, the Java compiler doesn't force you to catch it, and you can easily see the exception happen at runtime. This is unfortunate, because invalid input data is a

common situation and should be handled gracefully. At the same time, the `BufferedReader.close()` method can throw an `IOException`, which is a checked exception and needs to be handled. Most programs can't take any meaningful action if closing a stream fails, so the code required to catch the exception from the `close()` method is boilerplate.

What about Java 7's `try-with-resources`? Kotlin doesn't have any special syntax for this; it's implemented as a library function. In section [XREF ID_lambdas_for_resource_management](#), you'll see how this is possible.

2.5.2 'try' as an expression

To see another significant difference between Java and Kotlin, let's modify the example a little. Let's remove the `finally` section (because you've already seen how this works) and add some code to print the number you read from the file:

```
fun readNumber(reader: BufferedReader)
{ val number = try {
    Integer.parseInt(reader.readLine())
} catch (e: NumberFormatException)
{ return
}

println(number)
}

>>> val reader = BufferedReader(StringReader("not a number"))
>>> readNumber(reader)
```

- ❶ Becomes the value of the try expression
- ❷ Nothing is printed.

As you can see, the `try` keyword in Kotlin, just like `if` and `when`, introduces an expression, and you can assign its value to a variable. Unlike with `if`, you always need to enclose the statement body in curly braces. Just as in other statements, if the body contains multiple expressions, the value of the `try` expression as a whole is the value of the last expression.

In this example, we put a `return` statement in the `catch` block, so the execution of the method doesn't continue after the `catch` block. If you want to continue execution, the `catch` clause also needs to have a value, which will be the value of the last expression in it. Here's how this works:

```
fun readNumber(reader: BufferedReader)
{ val number = try {
    Integer.parseInt(reader.readLine())
} catch (e: NumberFormatException) {
```

```

        null
    }

    println(number)
}

>>> val reader = BufferedReader(StringReader("not a number"))
>>> readNumber(reader)

null

```

- ❶ This value is used when no exception happens.
- ❷ The null value is used in case of an exception.
- ❸ An exception is thrown, so the function prints "null".

If the execution of a `try` code block behaves normally, the last expression in a `try` block is the result. If an exception is caught, the last expression in a corresponding `catch` block is the result. In the previous example, the result value is `null` if a `NumberFormatException` is caught.

At this point, if you're impatient, you can start writing programs in Kotlin in a way that's similar to how you code in Java. As you read this book, you'll continue to learn how to change your habitual ways of thinking and use the full power of the new language.

2.6 Summary

- The `fun` keyword is used to declare a function. The `val` and `var` keywords declare read-only and mutable variables, respectively.
- String templates help you avoid noisy string concatenation. Prefix a variable name with `$` or surround an expression with `{ }` to have its value injected into the string.
- Value-object classes are expressed in a very concise way in Kotlin.
- The familiar `if` is now an expression with a return value.
- The `when` expression is analogous to `switch` in Java but is more powerful.
- You don't have to cast a variable explicitly after checking that it has a certain type: the compiler casts it for you automatically using a smart cast.
- The `for`, `while`, and `do-while` loops are very similar to Java, but the `for` loop is now more convenient, especially when you need to iterate over a map or a collection with an index.
- The concise syntax `1..5` creates a range. Ranges and progressions allow Kotlin to use a uniform syntax and set of abstractions in `for` loops and also work with the `in` and `!in` operators that check whether a value belongs to a range.
- Exception handling in Kotlin is very similar to Java, except that Kotlin doesn't require you to declare the exceptions that can be thrown by a method.

3

Defining and calling functions

This chapter covers

- Functions for working with collections, strings, and regular expressions
- Using named arguments, default argument values, and the infix call syntax
- Adapting Java libraries to Kotlin through extension functions and properties
- Structuring your code with top-level and local functions and properties

By now, you should be fairly comfortable with using Kotlin the same way you use Java. You've seen how the concepts familiar to you from Java translate to Kotlin, and how Kotlin often makes them more concise and readable.

In this chapter, you'll see how Kotlin improves on one of the key elements of every program: declaring and calling functions. We'll also look into the possibilities for adapting Java libraries to the Kotlin style through the use of extension functions, allowing you to gain the full benefits of Kotlin in mixed-language projects.

To make our discussion more useful and less abstract, we'll focus on Kotlin collections, strings, and regular expressions as our problem domain. As an introduction, let's look at how to create collections in Kotlin.

3.1 Creating collections in Kotlin

Before you can do interesting things with collections, you need to learn how to create them. In the section `XREF ID_when_object`, you already bumped into the way to create a new set: the `setOf` function. You created a set of colors then, but for now, let's keep it simple and work with numbers:

```
val set = setOf(1, 7, 53)
```

You create a list or a map in a similar way:

```
val list = listOf(1, 7, 53)
val map = mapOf(1 to "one", 7 to "seven", 53 to "fifty-three")
```

Note that `to` is not a special construct, but a normal function. We'll return to it later in the chapter.

Can you guess the classes of objects that are created here? Run the following example to see this for yourself:

```
>>> println(set.javaClass)
class java.util.HashSet

>>> println(list.javaClass)
class java.util.ArrayList

>>> println(map.javaClass)
class java.util.HashMap
```

❶ `javaClass` is Kotlin's equivalent of Java's `getClass()`.

As you can see, Kotlin uses the standard Java collection classes. This is good news for Java developers: Kotlin doesn't have its own set of collection classes. All of your existing knowledge about Java collections still applies here.

Why are there no Kotlin collections? Because using the standard Java collections makes it much easier to interact with Java code. You don't need to convert collections one way or the other when you call Java functions from Kotlin or vice versa.

Even though Kotlin's collections are exactly the same classes as Java collections, you can do much more with them in Kotlin. For example, you can get the last element in a list or find a maximum in a collection of numbers:

```
>>> val strings = listOf("first", "second", "fourteenth")

>>> println(strings.last())
fourteenth

>>> val numbers = setOf(1, 14, 2)

>>> println(numbers.max())
14
```

In this chapter, we'll explore in detail how this works and where all the new methods on the Java classes come from.

In future chapters, when we start talking about lambdas, you'll see much more that you can do with collections, but we'll keep using the same standard Java collection

classes. And in section XREF ID_collections, you'll learn how the Java collection classes are represented in the Kotlin type system.

Before discussing how the magic functions `last` and `max` work on Java collections, let's learn some new concepts for declaring a function.

3.2 Making functions easier to call

Now that you know how to create a collection of elements, let's do something straightforward: print its contents. Don't worry if this seems overly simple; along the way, you'll meet a bunch of important concepts.

Java collections have a default `toString` implementation, but the formatting of the output is fixed and not always what you need:

```
>>> val list = listOf(1, 2, 3)
>>> println(list)
[1, 2, 3]
```

❶ Invokes `toString()`

Imagine that you need the elements to be separated by semicolons and surrounded by parentheses, instead of the brackets used by the default implementation: `(1; 2; 3)`. To solve this, Java projects use third-party libraries such as Guava and Apache Commons, or reimplement the logic inside the project. In Kotlin, this function is part of the standard library.

In this section, you'll implement this function yourself. You'll begin with a straightforward implementation that doesn't use Kotlin's facilities for simplifying function declarations, and then you'll rewrite it in a more idiomatic style.

The following `joinToString` function appends the elements of the collection to a `StringBuilder`, with a separator between them, a prefix at the beginning, and a postfix at the end:

```
fun <T> joinToString(
    collection: Collection<T>,
    separator: String,
    prefix: String,
    postfix: String
): String {

    val result = StringBuilder(prefix)

    for ((index, element) in collection.withIndex()) {
        if (index > 0) result.append(separator)
        result.append(element)
    }

    result.append(postfix)
    return result.toString()
}
```

- 1 Don't append a separator before the first element.

The function is generic: it works on collections that contain elements of any type. As you can see, the syntax for generics is similar to Java. (A more detailed discussion of generics will be the subject of chapter 9.)

Let's verify that the function works as intended:

```
>>> val list = listOf(1, 2, 3)
>>> println(joinToString(list, "; ", "(" , ")"))
(1; 2; 3)
```

The implementation is fine, and you'll mostly leave it as is. What we'll focus on is the declaration: how can you change it to make calls of this function less verbose? Maybe you could avoid having to pass four arguments every time you call the function. Let's see what you can do.

3.2.1 *Named arguments*

The first problem we'll address concerns the readability of function calls. For example, look at the following call of `joinToString()`:

```
joinToString(collection, " ", " ", ".")
```

Can you tell what parameters all these `'String'`'s correspond to? Are the elements separated by the whitespace or the dot? These questions are hard to answer without looking at the signature of the function. Maybe you remember it, or maybe your IDE can help you, but it's not obvious from the calling code.

This problem is especially common with boolean flags. To solve it, some Java coding styles recommend creating enum types instead of using booleans. Others even require you to specify the parameter names explicitly in a comment, as is the case for `String` arguments:

```
/* Java */
joinToString(collection, /* separator */ " ", /* prefix */ " ",
/* postfix */ ".");
```

With Kotlin, you can do better:

```
joinToString(collection, separator = " ", prefix = " ", postfix = ".")
```

When calling a method written in Kotlin, you can specify the names of some arguments that you're passing to the function. If you specify the name of an argument in

a call, you should also specify the names for all the arguments after that, to avoid confusion.

TIP**Tip**

Needless to say, IntelliJ IDEA can keep explicitly written argument names up to date if you rename the parameter of the function being called. Just ensure that you use the Rename or Change Signature action instead of editing the parameter names by hand.

WARNING**Warning**

Unfortunately you can't use named arguments when calling methods written in Java, including methods from the JDK and the Android framework. Storing parameter names in .class files is supported as an optional feature only starting with Java 8, and Kotlin maintains compatibility with Java 6. As a result, the compiler can't recognize the parameter names used in your call and match them against the method definition.

Named arguments work especially well with default parameter values, which we'll look at next.

3.2.2 *Default parameter values*

Another common Java problem is the overabundance of overloaded methods in some classes. Just look at `java.lang.Thread` and its eight constructors ⁷! The overloads can be provided for the sake of backward compatibility, for convenience of API users, or for other reasons, but the end result is the same: duplication. The parameter names and types are repeated over and over, and if you're being a good citizen, you also have to repeat most of the documentation in every overload. At the same time, if you call an overload that omits some parameters, it's not always clear which values are used for them.

Footnote 7 <http://mng.bz/1vKt>

In Kotlin, you can often avoid creating overloads because you can specify default values for parameters in a function declaration. Let's use that to improve the `joinToString` function. For most cases, the strings can be separated by commas without any prefix or postfix. So, let's make these values the defaults:

```
fun <T> joinToString(  
    collection: Collection<T>,  
    separator: String = ", ",  
    prefix: String = "",  
    postfix: String = ""  
) : String
```

①
②
③

1 Default parameter values

Now you can either invoke the function with all the arguments or omit some of them:

```
>>> joinToString(list, ", ", "", "")
1, 2, 3
>>> joinToString(list)
1, 2, 3
>>> joinToString(list, "; ")
1; 2; 3
```

When using the regular call syntax, you can omit only trailing arguments. If you use named arguments, you can omit some arguments from the middle of the list and specify only the ones you need:

```
>>> joinToString(list, prefix = "# ")
# 1, 2, 3
```

Note that the default values of the parameters are encoded in the function being called, not at the call site. If you change the default value and recompile the class containing the function, the callers that haven't specified a value for the parameter will start using the new default value.

NOTE

Default values and Java

Given that Java doesn't have the concept of default parameter values, you have to specify all the parameter values explicitly when you call a Kotlin function with default parameter values from Java. If you frequently need to call a function from Java and want to make it easier to use for Java callers, you can annotate it with `@JvmOverloads`. This instructs the compiler to generate Java overloaded functions, omitting each of the parameters one by one, starting from the last one.

For example, if you annotate `joinToString()` with `@JvmOverloads`, the following overloads are generated:

```
/* Java */
String joinToString(Collection<T> collection, String separator,
    String prefix, String postfix);

String joinToString(Collection<T> collection, String separator,
    String prefix);

String joinToString(Collection<T> collection, String separator);

String joinToString(Collection<T> collection);
```

Each overload uses the default values for the parameters that have been omitted from the signature.

So far, you've been writing your utility function without paying much attention to the surrounding context. Surely it must have been a method of some class, and you've omitted the surrounding class declaration, right? In fact, Kotlin makes this unnecessary.

3.2.3 *Getting rid of static utility classes: top-level functions and properties*

We all know that Java, as an object-oriented language, requires code to be written as methods of classes. Usually, this works out nicely; but in reality, almost every large project ends up with a lot of code that doesn't clearly belong to any single class. Sometimes an operation works with objects of two different classes that play an equally important role for it. Sometimes there is one primary object, but you don't want to bloat its API by adding the operation as an instance method.

As a result, you end up with classes that don't contain any state or any instance methods and that act as containers for a bunch of static methods. A perfect example is the `Collections` class in the JDK. To find other examples in your own code, look for classes that have `Util` as part of the name.

In Kotlin, you don't need to create all those meaningless classes. Instead, you can place functions directly at the top level of a source file, outside of any class. Such

functions are still members of the package declared at the top of the file, and you still need to import them if you want to call them from other packages, but the unnecessary extra level of nesting no longer exists.

Let's put the `joinToString` function into the `strings` package directly. Create a file called `join.kt` with the following contents:

```
package strings

fun joinToString(...): String { ... }
```

How does this run? You know that, when you compile the file, some classes will be produced, because the JVM can only execute code in classes. When you work only with Kotlin, that's all you need to know. But if you need to call such a function from Java, you have to understand how it will be compiled. To make this clear, let's look at the Java code that would compile to the same class:

```
/* Java */
package strings;

public class JoinKt {
    public static String joinToString(...) { ... }
}
```

❶ Corresponds to `join.kt`, the filename of the previous example

You can see that the name of the class generated by the Kotlin compiler corresponds to the name of the file containing the function. All top-level functions in the file are compiled to static methods of that class. Therefore, calling this method from Java is as easy as calling any other static method:

```
/* Java */
import strings.JoinKt;

...

JoinKt.joinToString(list, ", ", "", "");
```

SIDEBAR Changing the file class name

To change the name of the generated class that contains Kotlin top-level functions, you add a `@JvmName` annotation to the file. Place it at the beginning of the file, before the package name:

```
@file:JvmName("StringFunctions")  
  
package strings  
  
fun joinToString(...): String { ... }
```

- 1 Annotation to specify the class name
- 2 The package statement follows the file annotations.

Now the function can be called as follows:

```
/* Java */  
import strings.StringFunctions;  
StringFunctions.joinToString(list, ", ", "", "");
```

A detailed discussion of the annotation syntax comes later, in chapter 10.

TOP-LEVEL PROPERTIES

Just like functions, properties can be placed at the top level of a file. Storing individual pieces of data outside of a class is not needed as often but is still useful.

For example, you can use a `var` property to count the number of times some operation has been performed:

```
var opCount = 0  
  
fun performOperation()  
{  
    opCount++  
    // ...  
}  
  
fun reportOperationCount() {  
    println("Operation performed $opCount times")  
}
```

- 1 Package-level property declaration
- 2 Changes the value of the property
- 3 Reads the value of the property

The value of such a property will be stored in a static field.

Top-level properties also allow you to define constants in your code:

```
val UNIX_LINE_SEPARATOR = "\n"
```

By default, top-level properties, just like any other properties, are exposed to Java code as accessor methods (a getter for a `val` property and a getter/setter pair for a `var` property). If you want to expose a constant to Java code as a `public static final` field, to make its usage more natural, you can mark it with the `const` modifier (this is allowed for properties of primitive types, as well as `String`):

```
const val UNIX_LINE_SEPARATOR = "\n"
```

This gets you the equivalent of the following Java code:

```
/* Java */  
public static final String UNIX_LINE_SEPARATOR = "\n";
```

You've improved the initial `joinToString` utility function quite a lot. Now let's look at how to make it even handier.

3.3 Adding methods to other people's classes: extension functions and properties

One of the main themes of Kotlin is smooth integration with existing code. Even pure Kotlin projects are built on top of Java libraries such as the JDK, the Android framework, and other third-party frameworks. And when you integrate Kotlin into a Java project, you're also dealing with the existing code that hasn't been or won't be converted to Kotlin. Wouldn't it be nice to be able to use all the niceties of Kotlin when working with those APIs, without having to rewrite them? That's what the extension functions allow you to do.

Conceptually, an *extension function* is a simple thing: it's a function that can be called as a member of a class but is defined outside of it. To demonstrate that, let's add a method for computing the last character of a string:

```
package strings  
  
fun String.lastChar(): Char = this.get(this.length - 1)
```

As you can see, all you need to do is put the name of the class or interface that you're extending before the name of the function you're adding. This class name is called the *receiver type*, and the value on which you're calling the extension function is called the

receiver object. This is illustrated in figure 3.1.

The diagram shows the code `fun String.lastChar(): Char = this.get(this.length - 1)`. Above the code, there are two labels: "receiver type" with a line pointing to `String`, and "receiver object" with two lines pointing to the two `this` occurrences in the function body.

Figure 3.1 The receiver type is the type on which the extension is defined, and the receiver object is the instance of that type.

You can call the function using the same syntax you use for ordinary class members:

```
>>> println("Kotlin".lastChar())  
n
```

In this example, `String` is the *receiver type*, and `"Kotlin"` is the *receiver object*.

In a sense, you've added your own method to the `String` class. Even though `String` isn't part of your code, and you may not even have the source code to that class, you can still extend it with the methods you need in your project. It doesn't even matter whether `String` is written in Java, Kotlin, or some other JVM language, such as Groovy. As long as it's compiled to a Java class, you can add your own extensions to that class.

In the body of an extension function, you use `this` as you'd use it in a method. And, as in a regular method, you can omit it:

```
package strings  
  
fun String.lastChar(): Char = get(length - 1)
```

❶ "this" references are implicit.

In the extension function, you can directly access the methods and properties of the class you're extending, as in methods defined in the class itself. Note that extension functions don't allow you to break encapsulation. Unlike methods defined in the class, extension functions don't have access to private or protected members of the class.

3.3.1 Imports and extension functions

When you define an extension function, it doesn't automatically become available across your entire project. Instead, it needs to be imported, just like any other class or function. This helps avoid accidental name conflicts. Kotlin allows you to import individual functions using the same syntax you use for classes:

```
import strings.lastChar  
  
val c = "Kotlin".lastChar()
```

Of course, `*` imports work as well:

```
import strings.*  
  
val c = "Kotlin".lastChar()
```

You can change the name of the class or function you're importing using the `as` keyword:

```
import strings.lastChar as last  
  
val c = "Kotlin".last()
```

Changing a name on import is useful when you have several functions with the same name in different packages and you want to use them in the same file. For regular classes or functions, you have another choice in this situation: you can use a fully qualified name to refer to the class or function. For extension functions, the syntax requires you to use the short name, so the `as` keyword in an import statement is the only way to resolve the conflict.

3.3.2 Calling extension functions from Java

Calling an extension function doesn't involve creating adapter objects or any other runtime overhead. Under the hood, an extension function is a static method that accepts the receiver object as its first argument.

That makes using extension functions from Java pretty easy: you call the static method and pass the receiver object instance. Just as with other top-level functions, the name of the Java class containing the method is determined from the name of the file where the function is declared. Let's say it was declared in a `StringUtil.kt` file:

```
/* Java */  
char c = StringUtilKt.lastChar("Java");
```

This extension function is declared as a top-level function, so it's compiled to a static method. You can import the `lastChar` method statically from Java, simplifying the usage to just `lastChar("Java")`. This code is somewhat less readable than the Kotlin version, but it's idiomatic from the Java point of view.

3.3.3 Utility functions as extensions

Now you can write the final version of the `joinToString` function. This is almost exactly what you'll find in the Kotlin standard library:

```
fun <T> Collection<T>.joinToString(
```

```

        separator: String = ", ",
        prefix: String = "",
        postfix: String = ""
    ): String {
        val result = StringBuilder(prefix)

        for ((index, element) in this.withIndex())
        { if (index > 0)
          result.append(separator)
          result.append(element)
        }

        result.append(postfix)
        return result.toString()
    }

```

- ❶ Declares an extension function on `Collection<T>`
- ❷ Assigns default values for arguments
- ❸ "this" refers to the receiver object: a collection of T.

You make it an extension to a collection of elements, and you provide default values for all the arguments. Now you can invoke `joinToString` like a member of a class:

```

>>> val list = arrayListOf(1, 2, 3)
>>> println(list.joinToString(" "))
1 2 3

```

Because extension functions are effectively just syntactic sugar over static method calls, you can use a more specific type as a receiver type, not just a class. Let's say you want to have a `join` function that can be invoked only on collections of strings. Calling this function with a list of objects of another type shouldn't work:

```

fun
    Collection<String>.join(
        separator: String = ", ",
        prefix: String = "",
        postfix: String = ""
    ) = joinToString(separator, prefix, postfix)

>>> println(listOf("one", "two", "eight").join(" "))
one two eight

>!!> listOf(1, 2, 8).join()
Error: Type mismatch: inferred type is List<Int> but Collection<String>
was expected.

```

The static nature of extensions also means extension functions can't be overridden in subclasses. Let's look at an example.

3.3.4 No overriding for extension functions

Method overriding in Kotlin works as usual for member functions, but you can't override an extension function. Let's say you have two classes, `View` and its subclass `Button`, and the `Button` class overrides the `click` function from the superclass:

```
open class View {  
    open fun click() = println("View clicked")  
}  
  
class Button: View() {  
    override fun click() = println("Button clicked")  
}
```

❶ `Button` extends `View`

If you declare a variable of type `View`, you can store a value of type `Button` in that variable, because `Button` is a subtype of `View`. If you call a regular method on this variable, such as `click()`, and that method is overridden in the `Button` class, the overridden implementation from the `Button` class will be used:

```
>>> val view: View = Button()  
>>> view.click()  
Button clicked
```

❶ A method from a `Button` class of the actual value is called. //AU: Is this wording correct? It seems a little off. TT

But it doesn't work that way for extensions, as shown in figure 3.2.

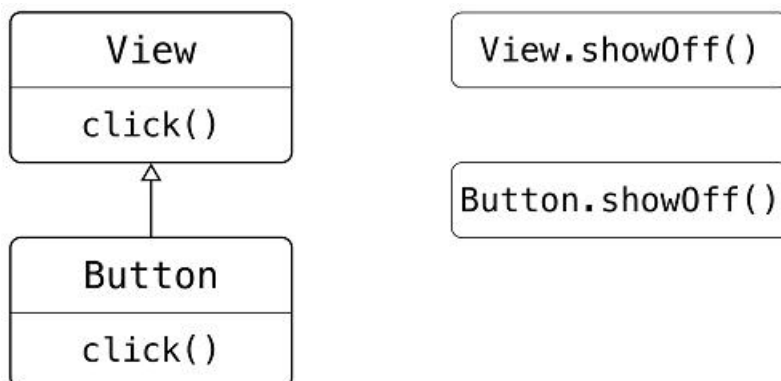


Figure 3.2 Extension functions are declared outside of the class.

Extension functions aren't a part of the class; they're declared externally to it. Even though you can define extension functions with the same name and parameter types for a

base class and its subclass, the function that's called depends on the static type of the variable being declared, not on the runtime type of the value stored in that variable.

The following example shows two `showOff` extension functions declared on the `View` and `Button` classes:

```
fun View.showOff() = println("I'm a view!")
fun Button.showOff() = println("I'm a button!")

>>> val view: View = Button()
>>> view.showOff() 1
I'm a view!
```

1 The extension function is resolved statically.

When you call `showOff` on a variable of type `View`, the corresponding extension is called, even though the actual type of the value is `Button`.

If you recall that an extension function is compiled to a static function in Java with the receiver as the first argument, this behavior should be clear to you, because Java chooses the function the same way:

```
/* Java */
>>> View view = new Button();
>>> ExtensionsKt.showOff(view); 1
I'm a view!
```

1 `showOff` functions are declared in the `extensions.kt` file.

As you can see, overriding doesn't apply to extension functions: Kotlin resolves them statically.

NOTE

Note

If the class has a member function with the same signature as an extension function, the member function always takes precedence. You should keep this in mind when extending the API of classes: if you add a member function with the same signature as an extension function that a client of your class has defined, and they then recompile their code, it will change its meaning and start referring to the new member function.

We've discussed how to provide additional methods for external classes. Now let's see how to do the same with properties.

3.3.5 Extension properties

Extension properties provide a way to extend classes with APIs that can be accessed using the property syntax, rather than the function syntax. Even though they're called *properties*, they can't have any state: it's not possible to add extra fields to existing instances of Java objects. But the shorter syntax is still sometimes handy.

In the previous section, you defined a function `lastChar`. Now let's convert it into a property:

```
val String.lastChar: Char
    get() = get(length - 1)
```

You can see that, just as with functions, an extension property looks like a regular property with a receiver type added. The getter must always be defined, because there's no backing field and therefore no default getter implementation. Initializers aren't allowed for the same reason: there's nowhere to store the value specified as the initializer.

If you define the same property on a `StringBuilder`, you can make it a `var`, because the contents of a `StringBuilder` can be modified:

```
var StringBuilder.lastChar: Char
    get() = get(length - 1)
    set(value: Char) {
        this.setCharAt(length - 1, value)
    }
```

1

2

1 Property getter

2 Property setter

You access extension properties exactly like member properties:

```
>>> println("Kotlin".lastChar)
n
>>> val sb = StringBuilder("Kotlin?")
>>> sb.lastChar = '!'
>>> println(sb)
Kotlin!
```

Note that when you need to access an extension property from Java, you should invoke its getter explicitly: `StringUtilKt.getLastChar("Java")`.

We've discussed the concept of extensions in general. Now let's return to the topic of collections and look at a few more library functions that help you handle them, as well as language features that come up in those functions.

3.4 Working with collections: *varargs*, *infix calls*, and *library support*

This section shows some of the functions from the Kotlin standard library for working with collections. Along the way, it describes a few related language features:

- The `vararg` keyword, which allows you to declare a function taking an arbitrary number of arguments
- An infix notation that lets you call some one-argument functions without ceremony
- Destructuring declarations that allow you to unpack a single composite value into multiple variables

3.4.1 Extending the Java Collections API

We started this chapter with the idea that collections in Kotlin are the same classes as in Java, but with an extended API. You saw examples of getting the last element in a list and finding the maximum in a collection of numbers:

```
>>> val strings: List<String> = listOf("first", "second", "fourteenth")
>>> strings.last()
fourteenth

>>> val numbers: Collection<Int> = setOf(1, 14, 2)
>>> numbers.max()
14
```

We were interested in how it works: why it's possible to do so many things with collections in Kotlin while using the Java library classes. Now the answer should be clear: the `last` and `max` functions are declared as extension functions!

The `last` function is no more complex than `lastChar` for `String`, discussed in the previous section: it's an extension on the `List` class. For `max`, let's look at a simplified declaration. The real library function works not only for `Int` numbers, but for any comparable elements:

```
fun <T> List<T>.last(): T { /* returns the last element */ }
fun Collection<Int>.max(): Int { /* finding a maximum in a collection */ }
```

Many extension functions are declared in the Kotlin standard library, and we won't list all of them here. You may wonder about the best way to learn everything in the Kotlin standard library. You don't have to—any time you need to do something with a collection or any other object, the code completion in the IDE will show you all the possible functions available for that type of object. The list includes both regular methods and extension functions; you can choose the function you need.

At the beginning of the chapter, you also saw the functions for creating collections. A common trait of those functions is that they can be called with an arbitrary number of arguments. In the following section, you'll see the syntax for declaring such functions.

3.4.2 Varargs: functions that accept an arbitrary number of arguments

When you call a function to create a list, you can pass any number of arguments to it:

```
val list = listOf(2, 3, 5, 7, 11)
```

If you look up how this function is declared in the library, you'll find the following:

```
fun listOf<T>(vararg values: T): List<T> { ... }
```

You're probably familiar with Java's varargs: a feature that allows you to pass an arbitrary number of values to a method by packing them in an array. Kotlin's varargs are similar to those in Java, but the syntax is slightly different: instead of three dots after the type, it uses the `vararg` modifier on the parameter.

One other difference between Kotlin and Java is the syntax of calling the function when the arguments you need to pass are already packed in an array. In Java, you pass the array as is, whereas Kotlin requires you to explicitly unpack the array. Technically, this feature is called using a *spread operator*, but in practice it's as simple as putting the `*` character before the corresponding argument:

```
fun main(args: Array<String>) {  
    val list = listOf("args: ", *args)  
    println(list)  
}
```

1

1 Spread operator unpacks the array contents

The spread operator lets you combine the values from an array and some fixed values in a single call. This isn't supported in Java.

Now let's move on and start talking about maps. We'll briefly discuss another way to improve the readability of Kotlin function invocations: the *infix call*.

3.4.3 Working with pairs: infix calls and destructuring declarations

To create maps, you use the `mapOf()` function:

```
val map = mapOf(1 to "one", 7 to "seven", 53 to "fifty-three")
```

This is a good time to provide another explanation we promised you at the beginning of the chapter. The word `to` in this line of code isn't a built-in construct, but rather a method invocation of a special kind, called an *infix call*.

In an infix call, the method name is placed immediately between the target object name and the parameter, with no extra separators. The following two calls are equivalent:

```
1.to("one")
```

❶

```
1 to "one"
```

❷

- ❶ Calls the `to` function in the regular way
- ❷ Calls the `to` function using an infix notation

Infix calls can be used with regular methods and extension functions that have one required parameter. To allow a function to be called using the infix notation, you need to mark it with the `infix` modifier. Here's a simplified version of the declaration of the `to` function:

```
infix fun Any.to(other: Any) = Pair(this, other)
```

The `to` function returns an instance of `Pair`, which is a Kotlin standard library class that, unsurprisingly, represents a pair of elements. The actual declarations of `Pair` and `to` use generics, but we're omitting them here to keep things simple.

Note that you can assign a pair of elements to two variables directly:

```
val (number, name) = 1 to "one"
```

This feature is called a *destructuring declaration*. Figure 3.3 illustrates how it works with pairs.

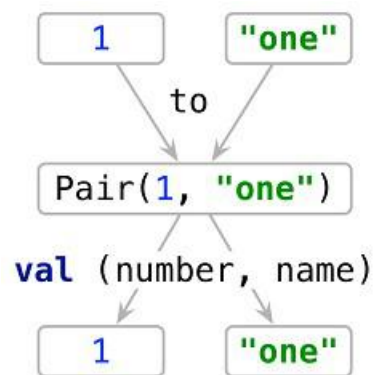


Figure 3.3 You create a pair using the `to` function and unpack it with a destructuring declaration.

The destructuring declaration feature isn't limited to pairs. For example, you can assign a map entry to two separate variables, `key` and `value`, as well.

This also works with loops, as you've seen in the implementation of `joinToString()`, which uses the `withIndex()` function:

```
for ((index, element) in collection.withIndex())
    { println("$index: $element")
    }
```

The section 7.4 will describe when it's possible to destructure an expression and assign it to several variables.

The `to` function is an extension function. You can create a pair of any elements, which means it's an extension to a generic receiver: you can write `1 to "one", "one" to 1`, `list to list.size()`, and so on.

Let's look at the declaration of the `mapOf` function:

```
fun <K, V> mapOf(vararg values: Pair<K, V>): Map<K, V>
```

Like `listOf`, `mapOf` accepts a variable number of arguments, but this time they should be pairs of keys and values.

Even though the creation of a new map may look like a special construct in Kotlin, it's a regular function with a concise syntax. Next, let's discuss how extensions simplify dealing with strings and regular expressions.

3.5 Working with strings and regular expressions

Kotlin strings are exactly the same things as Java strings. You can pass a string created in Kotlin code to any Java method, and you can also use any Kotlin standard library methods on strings that you receive from Java code. No conversion is involved, and no additional wrapper objects are created.

Kotlin makes working with standard Java strings more enjoyable by providing a bunch of useful extension functions. Also, it hides some confusing methods, adding extensions that are clearer. As our first example of the API differences, let's look at how Kotlin handles splitting strings.

3.5.1 Splitting strings

You're probably familiar with the `split` method on `String`. Everyone uses it, but sometimes people complain about it on Stack Overflow⁸: "The `split()` method in Java doesn't work on a dot." It's a common trap to write `"12.345-6.A".split(".")` and to expect an array `[12, 345-6, A]` as a result. But Java's `split` method returns an empty array! That happens because it takes a regular expression as a parameter, and it splits a string into several strings according to the expression. Here, the dot `.` is a regular expression that denotes any character.

Footnote 8 <http://stackoverflow.com>.

Kotlin hides the confusing method and provides as replacements several overloaded

extensions named `split` that have different arguments. The one that takes a regular expression requires a value of `Regex` type, not `String`. This ensures that it's always clear whether a string passed to a method is interpreted as plain text or a regular expression.

Here's how you'd split the string by either a dot or a dash:

```
>>> println("12.345-6.A".split("\\.|-".toRegex()))  
[12, 345, 6, A]
```

1

1 Creates a regular expression explicitly

Kotlin uses exactly the same regular-expression syntax as in Java. The pattern here matches a dot (we escaped it to indicate that we mean a literal character, not a wildcard) or a dash. The APIs for working with regular expressions are also similar to the standard Java library APIs, but they're more idiomatic. For instance, in Kotlin you use an extension function `toRegex` to convert a string into a regular expression.

But for such a simple case, you don't need to use regular expressions. The other overload of the `split` extension function in Kotlin takes an arbitrary number of delimiters as plain-text strings:

```
>>> println("12.345-6.A".split(".", "-"))  
[12, 345, 6, A]
```

1

1 Specifies several delimiters

Note that you can specify character arguments instead, and write `"12.345-6.A".split('.', '-')`, which will lead to the same result. This method hides the similar Java method that can take only one character as a delimiter.

3.5.2 Regular expressions and triple-quoted strings

Let's look at another example with two different implementations: the first one will use extensions, and the second will work with regular expressions. Your task will be to parse a file's full path name into its components: a directory, a filename, and an extension. The Kotlin standard library contains functions to get the substring before (or after) the first (or the last) occurrence of the given delimiter. Here's how you can use them to solve this task (also see figure 3.4):

```
fun parsePath(path: String) {  
    val directory = path.substringBeforeLast("/")  
    val fullName = path.substringAfterLast("/")  
  
    val fileName = fullName.substringBeforeLast(".")  
    val extension = fullName.substringAfterLast(".")  
}
```

```
println("Dir: $directory, name: $fileName, ext: $extension")
}

>>> parsePath("/Users/yole/kotlin-book/chapter.adoc")
Dir: /Users/yole/kotlin-book, name: chapter, ext: adoc
```

the last slash
the last dot

"/Users/yole/kotlin-book/chapter.adoc"

directory (before the last slash)
file name
extension (after the last dot)

Figure 3.4 Splitting a path into a directory, a filename, and a file extension by using the `substringBeforeLast` and `substringAfterLast` functions

The substring before the last slash symbol of the file path is the path to an enclosing directory, the substring after the last dot is a file extension, and the filename goes between them.

As you can see, Kotlin makes it easier to parse strings without resorting to regular expressions, which are powerful but also sometimes hard to understand after they've been written. If you do want to use regular expressions, the Kotlin standard library can help. Here's how the same task can be done using regular expressions:

```
fun parsePathRegex(path: String) {
    val regex = "\"\"(.+)/(.+)\. (.+)\"\"".toRegex()
    val matchResult = regex.matchEntire(path)
    if (matchResult != null) {
        val (directory, filename, extension) = matchResult.destructured
        println("Dir: $directory, name: $filename, ext: $extension")
    }
}
```

In this example, the regular expression is written in a *triple-quoted string*. In such a string, you don't need to escape any characters, including the backslash, so you can encode the dot symbol with `\.` rather than `\\.` as you'd write in an ordinary string literal (see figure 3.5).

the last slash
the last dot

\"\"\"(.+)/(.+)\. (.+)\"\"\"

directory
file name
extension

Figure 3.5 The regular expression for splitting a path into a directory, a filename, and a file extension

This regular expression divides a path into three groups separated by slashes and dots. The pattern `.` matches any character from the beginning, so the first group `(.+)` contains

the substring before the last slash. This substring includes all the previous slashes, because they match the pattern "any character". Similarly, the second group contains the substring before the last dot, and the third group contains all the rest.

Now let's discuss the implementation of the `parsePathRegex` function in the previous example. You create a regular expression and match it against an input path. If the match result is successful (isn't `null`), you assign the value of its `destructured` property to the corresponding variables. This is the same syntax used when you assigned a pair to two variables; the section 7.4 will cover the details.

3.5.3 Multiline triple-quoted strings

The purpose of triple-quoted strings is not only to avoid escaping characters. Such a string literal can contain any characters, including line breaks. That gives you an easy way to embed in your programs text containing line breaks. As an example, let's draw some ASCII art:

```
val kotlinLogo = """| //  
                    .|//  
                    .|/ \"""  
>>> println(kotlinLogo.trimMargin("."))  
| //  
|//  
|/ \
```

The multiline string contains all the characters between the triple quotes, including indents used to format the code. If you want a better representation of such a string, you can trim the indentation (in other words, the left margin). To do that, you add a prefix to the string content, marking the end of the margin, and then call `trimMargin()` to delete the text before the prefix in each line. The previous example uses the dot as such a prefix.

The triple-quoted string contains line breaks, but you can't use special characters like `\n`. On the other hand, you don't have to escape `\`, so the Windows-style path `"C:\\Users\\yole\\kotlin-book"` can be written as `"""C:\Users\yole\kotlin-book"""`.

You can also use string templates in multiline strings. Because multiline strings don't support escape sequences, you have to use an embedded expression if you need to use a literal dollar sign in the contents of your string. It looks like this: `val price = """${'$'}99.9"""`.

One of the areas where multiline strings can be useful in your programs (besides games that use ASCII art) is tests. In tests, it's fairly common to execute an operation that produces multiline text (for example, a web page fragment) and to compare the result with the expected output. Multiline strings give you a perfect solution for including the expected output as part of your test. No need for clumsy escaping or loading the text from external files—just put in some quotation marks and place the expected HTML or

other output between them. And for better formatting, use the aforementioned `trimMargin` function, which is another example of an extension function.

NOTE

Note

You can now see that extension functions are a powerful way to extend the APIs of existing libraries and to adapt them to the idioms of your new language—something called the "Pimp my Library" pattern.⁹ And indeed, a large portion of the Kotlin standard library is made up of extension functions for standard Java classes. The Anko library¹⁰, also built by JetBrains, provides extension functions that make the Android API more Kotlin-friendly. You can also find many community-developed libraries that provide Kotlin-friendly wrappers around major third-party libraries such as Spring.

Footnote 9 Martin Odersky, "Pimp My Library," *Artima Developer*, October 9, 2006, <http://http://mng.bz/86Qh>.

Footnote 10 <https://github.com/kotlin/anko>.

Now that you can see how Kotlin gives you better APIs for the libraries you use, let's turn our attention back to your code. You'll see some new uses for extension functions, and we'll also discuss a new concept: *local functions*.

3.6 Making your code tidy: local functions and extensions

Many developers believe that one of the most important qualities of good code is the lack of duplication. There's even a special name for this principle: Don't Repeat Yourself (DRY). But when you write in Java, following this principle isn't always trivial. In many cases, it's possible to use the Extract Method refactoring feature of your IDE to break longer methods into smaller chunks, and then to reuse those chunks. But this can make code more difficult to understand, because you end up with a class with many small methods and no clear relationship between them. You can go even further and group the extracted methods into an inner class, which lets you maintain the structure, but this approach requires a significant amount of boilerplate.

Kotlin gives you a cleaner solution: you can nest the functions you've extracted in the containing function. This way, you have the structure you need without any extra syntactic overhead.

Let's see how to use local functions to fix a fairly common case of code duplication. In the following example, a function saves a user to a database, and you need to make sure the user object contains valid data:

```
class User(val id: Int, val name: String, val address: String)
```

```

fun saveUser(user: User) {
    if (user.name.isEmpty()) {
        throw IllegalArgumentException(
            "Cannot save user ${user.id}: Name is empty")
    }

    if (user.address.isEmpty()) ❶
    { throw
      IllegalArgumentException(
        "Cannot save user ${user.id}: Address is empty")
    }

    // Save user to the database
}

>>> saveUser(User(1, "", ""))
java.lang.IllegalArgumentException: Cannot save user 1: Name is empty

```

❶ Field validation is duplicated.

The amount of duplicated code here is fairly small, and you probably won't want to have a full-blown method in your class that handles one special case of validating a user. But if you put the validation code into a local function, you can get rid of the duplication and still maintain a clear code structure. Here's how it works:

```

class User(val id: Int, val name: String, val address: String)

fun saveUser(user: User) {

    fun validate(user: User, ❶
                  value: String,
                  fieldName: String) {
        if (value.isEmpty()) {
            throw IllegalArgumentException(
                "Cannot save user ${user.id}: $fieldName is empty")
        }
    }

    validate(user, user.name, "Name") ❷
    validate(user, user.address, "Address")

    // Save user to the database
}

```

❶ Declares a local function to validate any field

❷ Calls the local function to validate the specific fields

This looks better. The validation logic isn't duplicated, and you can easily add more validations if you need to add other fields to `User` as the project evolves. But having to pass the `User` object to the validation function is somewhat ugly. The good news is that

it's entirely unnecessary, because local functions have access to all parameters and variables of the enclosing function. Let's take advantage of that and get rid of the extra User parameter:

```
class User(val id: Int, val name: String, val address: String)

fun saveUser(user: User) {
    fun validate(value: String, fieldName: String) ❶
    { if (value.isEmpty()) {
        throw IllegalArgumentException(
            "Can't save user ${user.id}: " + ❷
            "$fieldName is empty")
        }
    }

    validate(user.name, "Name")
    validate(user.address, "Address")

    // Save user to the database
}

>>> saveUser(User(1, "", ""))
java.lang.IllegalArgumentException: Cannot save user 1: Name is empty
```

- ❶ Now you don't duplicate the "user" parameter of the saveUser function.
- ❷ You can access parameters of the outer function directly.

To improve this example even further, you can move the validation logic into an extension function of the User class:

```
class User(val id: Int, val name: String, val address: String)

fun User.validateBeforeSave() {
    fun validate(value: String, fieldName: String)
    { if (value.isEmpty()) {
        throw IllegalArgumentException(
            "Can't save user $id: empty $fieldName" ❶
        )
    }
}

    validate(name, "Name")
    validate(address, "Address")
}

fun saveUser(user: User)
{ user.validateBeforeSave ❷
  ()

  // Save user to the database
}
```

- ❶ You can access properties of User directly.
- ❷ Calls the extension function

Extracting a piece of code into an extension function turns out to be surprisingly useful. Even though `User` is a part of your codebase and not a library class, you don't want to put this logic into a method of `User` because it's not relevant to any other places where `User` is used. Therefore, the API of the class contains only the essential methods used everywhere, so the class remains small and easy to wrap your head around. On the other hand, functions that primarily deal with a single object and don't need access to its private data can access its members without extra qualification, as in the previous example.

Extension functions can also be declared as local functions, so you could go even further and put `User.validateBeforeSave()` as a local function in `saveUser()`. But deeply nested local functions are usually fairly hard to read; so, as a general rule, we don't recommend using more than one level of nesting.

Having looked at all the cool things you can do with functions, in the next chapter we'll look at what you can do with classes.

3.7 Summary

- Kotlin doesn't define its own collection classes and instead extends the Java collection classes with a richer API.
- Defining default values for function parameters greatly reduces the need to define overloaded functions, and the named-argument syntax makes calls to functions with many parameters much more readable.
- Functions and properties can be declared directly in a file, not just as members of a class, allowing for a more flexible code structure.
- Extension functions and properties let you extend the API of any class, including classes defined in external libraries, without modifying its source code and with no runtime overhead.
- Infix calls provide a clean syntax for calling operator-like methods with a single argument.
- Kotlin provides a large number of convenient string-handling functions for both regular expressions and plain strings.
- Triple-quoted strings provide a clean way to write expressions that would require a lot of noisy escaping and string concatenation in Java.
- Local functions help you structure your code more cleanly and eliminate duplication.

4

Classes, objects, and interfaces

This chapter covers

- Classes and interfaces
- Nontrivial properties and constructors
- Data classes and class delegation
- Using the `object` keyword

This chapter gives you a deeper understanding of working with classes in Kotlin. In chapter 2, you saw the basic syntax for declaring a class. You know how to declare methods and properties, use simple primary constructors (aren't they nice?), and work with enums. But there's more to see.

Kotlin's classes and interfaces differ a bit from their Java counterparts: for example, interfaces can contain property declarations. Unlike in Java, Kotlin's declarations are `final` and `public` by default. In addition, nested classes aren't inner by default: they don't contain an implicit reference to their outer class.

For constructors, the short primary constructor syntax works great for the majority of cases, but there's also the full syntax that lets you declare constructors with nontrivial initialization logic. The same works for properties: the concise syntax is nice, but you can easily redefine trivial implementations of accessors.

The Kotlin compiler can generate useful methods to avoid verbosity. Declaring a class as a `data` class instructs the compiler to generate several standard methods for this class. You can also avoid writing delegating methods by hand, because the delegation pattern is supported natively in Kotlin.

This chapter also describes a `new object` keyword that declares a class and also creates an instance of the class. The keyword is used to express singleton objects, companion objects, and object expressions (analogous to Java anonymous classes). Let's

start by talking about classes and interfaces and the subtleties of defining class hierarchies in Kotlin.

4.1 Defining class hierarchies

This section discusses defining class hierarchies in Kotlin as compared to Java. We'll look at Kotlin's visibility and access modifiers, which are similar to Java's, but with some different defaults. You'll also learn about the new `sealed` modifier, which restricts the possible subclasses of a class.

4.1.1 Interfaces in Kotlin: methods with default implementations

We'll begin with a look at defining and implementing interfaces. Kotlin interfaces are similar to those of Java 8: they can contain definitions of abstract methods as well as implementations of non-abstract methods (similar to the Java 8 default methods), but they can't contain any state.

To declare an interface in Kotlin, use the `interface` keyword instead of `class`:

```
interface Clickable {
    fun click()
}
```

This declares an interface with a single abstract method named `click()`. All non-abstract classes implementing the interface need to provide an implementation of this method.

Here's how you implement the interface:

```
class Button : Clickable {
    override fun click() = println("I was clicked")
}
```

Kotlin uses the colon after the class name to replace both the `extends` and `implements` keywords used in Java.

The `override` modifier, similar to the `@Override` annotation in Java, is used to mark methods and properties that override those from the superclass or interface. Unlike Java, *using the `override` modifier is mandatory* in Kotlin. This saves you from accidentally overriding a method if it's added after you wrote your implementation; your code won't compile unless you explicitly mark the method as `override` or rename it.

An interface method can have a default implementation. Unlike Java 8, which requires you to mark such implementations with the `default` keyword, Kotlin has no special annotation for such methods: you just provide a method body. Let's change the `Clickable` interface by adding a method with a default implementation:

```
interface Clickable {
```

```

fun click()
fun showOff() = println("I'm clickable!")
}

```

- ❶ Regular method declaration
- ❷ Method with a default implementation

If you implement this interface, you need to provide an implementation for `click()`. You can redefine the behavior of the `showOff()` method, or you can omit it if you're fine with the default behavior.

Let's suppose now that another interface also defines a `showOff` method and has the following implementation for it:

```

interface Focusable {
    fun setFocus(b: Boolean) =
        println("I ${if (b)} "got" else "lost"} focus.")
    fun showOff() = println("I'm focusable!")
}

```

What happens if you need to implement both interfaces in your class? Each of them contains a `showOff` method with a default implementation; which implementation wins? Neither one wins. Instead, you get the following compiler error if you don't implement `showOff` explicitly:

NOTE The class `Button` must override `public open fun showOff()` because it inherits many implementations of it.

The Kotlin compiler forces you to provide your own implementation:

```

class Button : Clickable, Focusable {
    override fun click() = println("I was clicked")

    override fun showOff() {
        super<Clickable>.showOff()
        super<Focusable>.showOff()
    }
}

```

- ❶ You must provide an explicit implementation if more than one implementation for the same member is inherited.
- ❷ "super" qualified by the supertype name in angle brackets specifies the parent the method from which you want to call. //AU: Word missing? "the parent of the method"? Or should it be either "the parent" or "the method"? TT

The `Button` class now implements two interfaces. You implement `showOff()` by calling both implementations that you inherited from supertypes. To invoke an inherited implementation, you use the same keyword as in Java: `super`. But the syntax for selecting a specific implementation is different. Whereas in Java you can put the base type name before the `super` keyword, as in `Clickable.super.showOff()`, in Kotlin you put the base type name in angle brackets: `super<Clickable>.showOff()`.

If you only need to invoke one inherited implementation, you can write this:

NOTE `override fun showOff() = super<Clickable>.showOff()`

You can create an instance of this class and verify that all the inherited methods can be called:

```
fun main(args: Array<String>)  
{ val button = Button()  
  
  button.showOff()  
  
  button.setFocus(true)  
  
  button.click()  
}
```

- ❶ I'm clickable! I'm focusable!
- ❷ I got focus.
- ❸ I was clicked.

The implementation of `setFocus` is declared in the `Focusable` interface and is automatically inherited in the `Button` class.

SIDEBAR Implementing interfaces with method bodies in Java

Kotlin 1.0 has been designed to target Java 6, which doesn't support default methods in interfaces. Therefore, it compiles each interface with default methods to a combination of a regular interface and a class containing the method bodies as static methods. The interface contains only declarations, and the class contains all the implementations as static methods. Therefore, if you need to implement such an interface in a Java class, you have to define your own implementations of all methods, including those that have method bodies in Kotlin.

Future versions of Kotlin will support generating Java 8 bytecode as an option. If you choose to target Java 8, Kotlin's method bodies will be compiled to default methods, and you'll be able to implement such interfaces in Java without providing implementations for the methods.

Now that you've seen how Kotlin allows you to implement methods defined in interfaces, let's look at the second half of that story: overriding members defined in base classes.

4.1.2 Open, final, and abstract modifiers: final by default

As you know, Java allows you to create subclasses of any class, and to override any method, unless it has been explicitly marked with the `final` keyword. This is often convenient, but also problematic.

The so-called *fragile base class* problem occurs when modifications of a base class can cause incorrect behavior of subclasses because the changed code of the base class no longer matches the assumptions in its subclasses. If the class doesn't provide exact rules for how it should be subclassed (which methods are supposed to be overridden and how), the clients are at risk of overriding the methods in a way the author of the base class didn't expect. Because it's impossible to analyze all the subclasses, the base class is "fragile" in the sense that any change in it may lead to unexpected changes of behavior in subclasses.

To protect against this problem, *Effective Java* by Joshua Bloch (Addison-Wesley, 2008), one of the best-known books on good Java programming style, recommends that you "design and document for inheritance or else prohibit it." This means all classes and methods that aren't specifically intended to be overridden in subclasses need to be explicitly marked as `final`.

Kotlin follows the same philosophy. Whereas Java's classes and methods are open by default, Kotlin's are *final by default*.

If you want to allow the creation of subclasses of a class, you need to mark the class with the `open` modifier. In addition, you need to add the `open` modifier to every property or method that can be overridden: //AU: I've added blank lines between the code lines to make room for the annotations. OK? TT

```
open class RichButton : Clickable { ❶  
  
    fun disable() {} ❷  
  
    open fun animate() {} ❸  
  
    override fun click() {} ❹  
}
```

- ❶ This class is open: others can inherit from it.
- ❷ This function is "final": you can't override it in a subclass.
- ❸ This function is open: you may override it in a subclass.

- ④ This function overrides an open function and is open as well.

Note that if you override a member of a base class or interface, the overriding member will also be `open` by default. If you want to change this and forbid the subclasses of your class from overriding your implementation, you can explicitly mark the overriding member as `final`:

```
open class RichButton : Clickable
{
    final override fun click() {} ①
}
```

- ① "final" isn't redundant here because "override" without "final" implies being "open".`

SIDEBAR Open classes and smart casts

One significant benefit of classes that are `final` by default is that they enable smart casts in a larger variety of scenarios. As we mentioned in section XREF ID_when_smart_casts, a smart cast can only be used with a class property that is a `val` and that doesn't have a custom accessor. This requirement means the property has to be `final`, because otherwise a subclass could override the property and define a custom accessor, breaking the key requirement of smart casts. Because properties are `final` by default, you can use smart casts with most properties without thinking about it explicitly, which improves the expressiveness of your code.

In Kotlin, as in Java, you may declare a class `abstract`, and this class can't be instantiated. An abstract class usually contains abstract members that don't have implementations and must be overridden in subclasses. Abstract members are always open, so you don't need to use an explicit `open` modifier. Here's an example:

```
abstract class Animated { ①
    abstract fun animate() ②
    open fun stopAnimating() { ③
    }
    fun animateTwice() { ③
    }
}
```

- ① This class is abstract: you can't create an instance of it.

- 2 This function is abstract: it doesn't have an implementation and must be overridden in subclasses.
- 3 Non-abstract functions in abstract classes aren't open by default but can be marked as open.

Table 4.1 lists the access modifiers in Kotlin.

Table 4.1 The meaning of access modifiers in a class

Modifier	Corresponding member	Comments
<code>final</code>	Can't be overridden	Used by default for class members
<code>open</code>	Can be overridden	Should be specified explicitly
<code>abstract</code>	Must be overridden	Can be used only in abstract classes; abstract members can't have an implementation
<code>override</code>	Overrides a member in a superclass	Overridden member is open by default, if not marked <code>final</code>

The comments in the table are applicable to modifiers in classes; in interfaces you don't use `final`, `open`, or `abstract`. A member in an interface is always `open`; you can't declare it as `final`. It's `abstract` if it has no body, but the keyword isn't required.

TIP

Tip

As in Java, a class can implement as many interfaces as it wants, but it can extend only one class.

Having discussed the modifiers that control inheritance, let's now move on to another type of modifiers: visibility modifiers.

4.1.3 Visibility modifiers: *public by default*

Visibility modifiers help to control access to declarations in your code base. By restricting the visibility of a class's implementation details, you ensure that you can change them without the risk of breaking code that depends on the class.

Basically, visibility modifiers in Kotlin are similar to those in Java. You have the same `public`, `protected`, and `private` modifiers. But the default visibility is different: if you omit a modifier, the declaration becomes `public`.

The default visibility in Java, `package-private`, isn't present in Kotlin. Kotlin uses packages only as a way of organizing code in namespaces; it doesn't use them for visibility control.

As an alternative, Kotlin offers a new visibility modifier, `internal`, which means "visible inside a module." A *module* is a set of Kotlin files compiled together. It may be an IntelliJ IDEA module, an Eclipse project, a Maven or Gradle project, or a set of files compiled with an invocation of the Ant task.

The advantage of `internal` visibility is that it provides real encapsulation for the

implementation details of your module. With Java, the encapsulation can be easily broken, because external code can define classes in the same packages used by your code and thus get access to your package-local declarations.

One more difference from Java comes from the ability to define functions and properties outside of a class. You may mark such declarations `private`, which means "visible inside the containing file." You can also make a class `private` if it should be used only in a single file. Table 4.2 lists all the visibility modifiers.

Table 4.2 Kotlin visibility modifiers

Modifier	Class member	Top-level declaration
<code>public</code> (default)	Visible everywhere	Visible everywhere
<code>internal</code>	Visible in a module	Visible in a module
<code>protected</code>	Visible in subclasses	---
<code>private</code>	Visible in a class	Visible in a file

Let's look at an example. Every line in the `giveSpeech` function tries to violate the visibility rules and compiles with an error:

```
internal open class TalkativeButton : Focusable
{
    private fun yell() = println("Hey!")
    protected fun whisper() = println("Let's talk!")
}

fun TalkativeButton.giveSpeech() {
    yell()
    whisper()
}
```

- ❶ Error: 'public' member exposes its 'internal' receiver type `TalkativeButton`
- ❷ Error: cannot access 'yell': it is 'protected' in 'TalkativeButton'
- ❸ Error: cannot access 'whisper': it is 'private' in 'TalkativeButton'

Kotlin forbids you to reference the less-visible type `TalkativeButton` (`internal`, in this case) from the `public` function `giveSpeech`. This is a case of a general rule that requires all types used in the list of base types and type parameters of a class, or the signature of a method, to be as visible as the class or method itself. This rule ensures that you always have access to all types you might need to invoke the function or extend a class. To solve the problem, you can either make the function `internal` or make the class `public`.

Note the difference in behavior for the `protected` modifier in Java and in Kotlin. In Java, you can access a `protected` member from the same package, but Kotlin doesn't

allow that. In Kotlin, visibility rules are simple, and a `protected` member is *only* visible in the class and its subclasses. Also note that extension functions of a class don't get access to its `private` or `protected` members.

SIDEBAR Visibility modifiers from Java

`public`, `protected`, and `private` modifiers in Kotlin are preserved when compiling to Java bytecode. You use such Kotlin declarations from Java code as if they were declared with the same visibility in Java. The only exception is a `private` class: it's compiled to a `package-private` declaration under the hood (you can't make a class `private` in Java). But, you may ask, what happens with the `internal` modifier? There's no direct analogue in Java. `package-private` visibility is a totally different thing: a module usually consists of several packages, and different modules may contain declarations from the same package. Thus an `internal` modifier becomes `public` in the bytecode.

This correspondence between Kotlin declarations and their Java analogues (or their bytecode representation) explains why sometimes you can access something from Java code that you can't access from Kotlin. For instance, you can access an `internal` class or top-level declaration from Java code in another module, or a `protected` member from Java code in the same package (similar to how you do that in Java). But note that the names of `internal` members of a class are mangled.

Technically, `internal` members can be used from Java, but they look ugly in the Java code. That helps avoid unexpected clashes in overrides when you extend a class from another module, and it also prevents you from accidentally using `internal` classes.

One more difference in visibility rules between Kotlin and Java is that an outer class doesn't see `private` members of its inner (or nested) classes in Kotlin. Let's discuss inner and nested classes in Kotlin next and look at an example.

4.1.4 Inner And nested classes: nested by default

As in Java, in Kotlin you can declare a class in another class. Doing so can be useful for encapsulating a helper class or placing the code closer to where it's used. The difference is that Kotlin nested classes don't have access to the outer class instance, unless you specifically request that. Let's look at an example showing why this is important.

Imagine you want to define a `View` element, the state of which can be serialized. It may not be easy to serialize a view, but you can copy all the necessary data to another

helper class. You declare the `State` interface that implements `Serializable`. The `View` interface declares `getCurrentState` and `restoreState` methods that can be used to save the state of a view:

```
interface State: Serializable

interface View {
    fun getCurrentState(): State
    fun restoreState(state: State) {}
}
```

It's handy to define a class that saves a button state in the `Button` class. Let's see how it can be done in Java (the similar Kotlin code will be shown in a moment):

```
/* Java */
public class Button implements View {
    @Override
    public State getCurrentState()
        { return new ButtonState();
    }

    @Override
    public void restoreState(State state) { /*...*/ }

    public class ButtonState implements State { /*...*/ }
}
```

You define the `ButtonState` class that implements the `State` interface and holds specific information for `Button`. In the `getCurrentState` method, you create a new instance of this class. In a real case, you'd initialize `ButtonState` with all necessary data.

What's wrong with this code? Why do you get a `java.io.NotSerializableException: Button` exception if you try to serialize the state of the declared button? That may look strange at first sight: the variable you serialize is state of the `ButtonState` type, not the `Button` type.

Everything becomes clear when you recall that in Java, when you declare a class in another class, it becomes an inner class by default. The `ButtonState` class in the example implicitly stores a reference to its outer `Button` class. That explains why `ButtonState` can't be serialized: `Button` isn't serializable, and the reference to it breaks the serialization of `ButtonState`.

To fix this problem, you need to declare the `ButtonState` class as `static`. Declaring a nested class as `static` removes the implicit reference from that class to its enclosing class.

In Kotlin, the default behavior of inner classes is the opposite of what we've just described:

```
class Button : View {
    override fun getCurrentState(): State = ButtonState()

    override fun restoreState(state: State) { /*...*/ }

    class ButtonState : State { /*...*/ }
}
```

1

1 This class is an analogue of a static nested class in Java.

A nested class in Kotlin with no explicit modifiers is the same as a `static` nested class in Java. To turn it into an inner class, so that it contains a reference to an outer class, you use the `inner` modifier. Table 4.3 describes the differences in this behavior between Java and Kotlin; and the difference between nested and inner classes is illustrated in figure 4.1.

Table 4.3 Correspondence between nested and inner classes in Java and Kotlin

Class A declared within another class B	In Java	In Kotlin
Nested class (doesn't store a reference to an outer class)	<code>static class A</code>	<code>class A</code>
Inner class (stores a reference to an outer class)	<code>class A</code>	<code>inner class A</code>

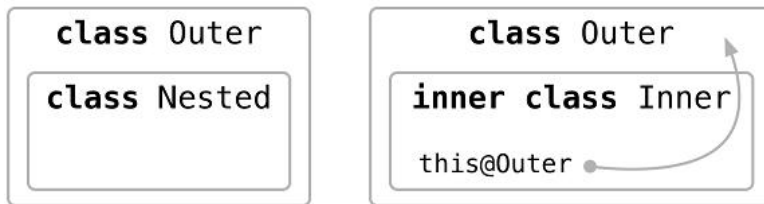


Figure 4.1 Nested classes don't reference their outer class, whereas inner classes do.

The syntax to reference an instance of an outer class in Kotlin also differs from Java. You write `this@Outer` to access the `Outer` class from the `Inner` class:

```
class Outer {
    inner class Inner {
        fun getOuterReference(): Outer = this@Outer
    }
}
```

You've learned the difference between inner and nested classes in Java and in Kotlin. Now let's discuss another use case when nested classes may be useful in Kotlin: creating a hierarchy containing a limited number of classes.

4.1.5 Sealed classes: defining restricted class hierarchies

Recall the expression hierarchy example from the section `XREF ID_when_smart_casts`. The superclass `Expr` has two subclasses: `Num`, which represents a number; and `Sum`, which represents a sum of two expressions. It's convenient to handle all the possible subclasses in a `when` expression. But you have to provide the `else` branch to specify what should happen if none of the other branches match:

```
interface Expr
class Num(val value: Int) : Expr
class Sum(val left: Expr, val right: Expr) : Expr

fun eval(e: Expr): Int =
    when (e) {
        is Num -> e.value
        is Sum -> eval(e.right) + eval(e.left)

        else -> 1 throw IllegalArgumentException("Unknown expression")
    }
```

¹ You have to check the "else" branch.

When you evaluate an expression using the `when` construct, the Kotlin compiler forces you to check for the default option. In this example, you can't return something meaningful, so you throw an exception.

Always having to add a default branch isn't convenient. What's more, if you add a new subclass, the compiler won't detect that something has changed. If you forget to add a new branch, the default one will be chosen, which can lead to subtle bugs.

Kotlin provides a solution to this problem: `sealed` classes. You mark a superclass with the `sealed` modifier, and that restricts the possibility of creating subclasses. All the direct subclasses must be nested in the superclass:

```
sealed class Expr { 1
    class Num(val value: Int) : Expr() 2
    class Sum(val left: Expr, val right: Expr) : Expr()
}

fun eval(e: Expr): Int =
    when (e) { 3
        is Expr.Num -> e.value
        is Expr.Sum -> eval(e.right) + eval(e.left)
    }
```

¹ Mark a base class as `sealed`...

² ...and list all the possible subclasses as nested classes.

³ The "when" expression covers all possible cases, so no "else" branch is needed.

If you handle all subclasses of a `sealed` class in a `when` statement, you don't need to provide the default branch. Note that the `sealed` modifier implies that the class is open; you don't need an explicit `open` modifier. The behavior of sealed classes is illustrated in figure 4.2.

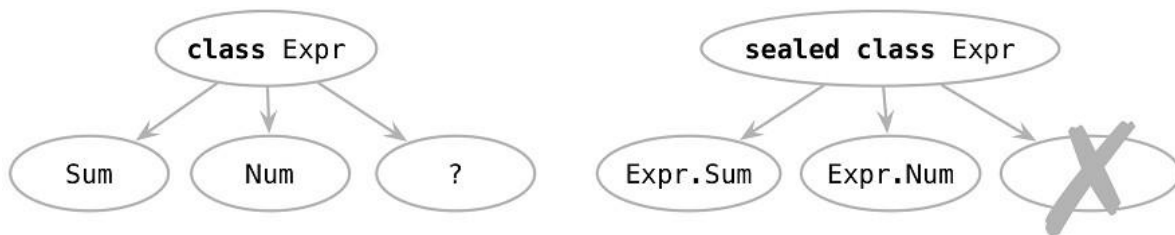


Figure 4.2 Sealed classes can't have inheritors defined outside of the class.

Under the hood, the `Expr` class has a private constructor, which can be called only inside the class. You can't declare a `sealed` interface. Why? If you could, the Kotlin compiler wouldn't be able to guarantee that someone couldn't implement this interface in the Java code. Note that with this approach, when you add a new subclass, the `when` expression returning a value fails to compile, which points you to the code that must be changed.

NOTE

Note

At this time, the `sealed` functionality is rather restricted. For instance, all the subclasses must be nested, and a subclass can't be made a `data` class (`data` classes are covered later in this chapter). Plans call for these restrictions to be relaxed in future versions of Kotlin.

As you'll recall, in Kotlin, you use a colon both to extend a class and to implement an interface. Let's take a closer look at a subclass declaration:

```
class Num(val value: Int) : Expr()
```

This simple example should be clear, except for the meaning of the parentheses after the class name in `Expr()`. We'll talk about them in the next section, which covers initializing classes in Kotlin.

4.2 Declaring a class with nontrivial constructors or properties

In Java, as you know, a class can declare one or more constructors. Kotlin is similar, with one additional change: it makes a distinction between a *primary* constructor (which is usually the main, concise way to initialize a class and is declared outside of the class body) and a *secondary* constructor (which is declared in the class body). It also allows you to put additional initialization logic in *initializer blocks*. First we'll look at the syntax of declaring the primary constructor and initializer blocks, and then we'll explain how to declare several constructors. After that, we'll talk more about properties.

4.2.1 Initializing classes: primary constructor and initializer blocks

In chapter 2, you saw how to declare a simple class:

```
class User(val nickname: String)
```

Normally, all the declarations in a class go inside curly braces. You may wonder why this class has no curly braces and instead has only a declaration in parentheses. This block of code surrounded by parentheses is called a *primary constructor*. It serves two purposes: specifying constructor parameters and defining properties that are initialized by those parameters. Let's unpack what happens here and look at the most explicit code you can write that does the same thing:

```
class User constructor(_nickname: String)
{
    val nickname: String

    init {
        nickname = _nickname
    }
}
```

- ❶ Primary constructor with one parameter
- ❷ Initializer block

In this example, you see two new Kotlin keywords: `constructor` and `init`. The `constructor` keyword begins the declaration of a primary or secondary constructor. The `init` keyword introduces an *initializer block*. Such blocks contain initialization code that's executed when the class is created through the primary constructor. Because the primary constructor has a constrained syntax, it can't contain the initialization code; that's why you have initializer blocks. If you want to, you can declare several initializer blocks in one class.

The underscore in the constructor parameter `_nickname` serves to distinguish the name of the property from the name of the constructor parameter. An alternative

possibility is to use the same name and write `this` to remove the ambiguity, as is commonly done in Java: `this.nickname = nickname`.

In this example, you don't need to place the initialization code in the initializer block, because it can be combined with the declaration of the `nickname` property. You can also omit the `constructor` keyword if there are no annotations or visibility modifiers on the primary constructor. If you apply those changes, you get the following:

```
class User(_nickname: String)
    { val nickname = _nickname
    }
```

1

2

- 1 Primary constructor with one parameter
- 2 The property is initialized by the parameter.

This is another way to declare the same class. Note how you can refer to primary constructor parameters in property initializers and in initializer blocks.

The two previous examples declared the property by using the `val` keyword in the body of the class. If the property is initialized by the corresponding constructor parameter, the code can be simplified by adding the `val` keyword before the parameter. This replaces the property definition in the class:

```
class User(val nickname: String)
```

1

- 1 "val" means the corresponding property is generated for the constructor parameter.

All the declarations of the `User` class are equivalent, but the last one uses the most concise syntax.

You can declare default values for constructor arguments just as you can for function arguments:

```
class User(val nickname: String,
           val isSubscribed: Boolean = true)
```

1

- 1 Provides a default value for the constructor parameter

To create an instance of a class, you call the constructor directly, without the `new` keyword:

```
>>> val alice = User("Alice")
```

1

```
>>> println(alice.isSubscribed)
true

>>> val bob = User("Bob", isSubscribed = false)
>>> println(bob.isSubscribed)
false
```

- ❶ Uses the default value "true" for the isSubscribed parameter
- ❷ You can explicitly specify names for some constructor arguments.

It seems that Alice subscribed to the mailing list by default, whereas Bob read the terms and conditions carefully and deselected the default option.

NOTE

Note

If all the constructor parameters have default values, the compiler generates an additional constructor without parameters that uses all the default values. That makes it easier to use Kotlin with libraries that instantiate classes via parameterless constructors.

If your class has a superclass, the primary constructor also needs to initialize the superclass. You can do so by providing the superclass constructor parameters after the superclass reference in the base class list:

```
open class User(val nickname: String) { ... }

class TwitterUser(nickname: String) : User(nickname) { ... }
```

If you don't declare any constructors for a class, a default constructor that does nothing will be generated for you:

```
open class Button
```

- ❶ The default constructor without arguments is generated.

If you inherit the `Button` class and don't provide any constructors, you have to explicitly invoke the constructor of the superclass even if it doesn't have any parameters:

```
class RadioButton: Button()
```

That's why you need empty parentheses after the name of the superclass. Note the difference with interfaces: interfaces don't have constructors, so if you implement an interface, you never put parentheses after its name in the supertype list.

If you want to ensure that your class can't be instantiated by other code, you have to

make the constructor private. Here's how you make the primary constructor private:

```
class Secretive private constructor() {}
```

1

1 This class has a private constructor.

Alternatively, you can declare it in a more usual way in the body of the class:

```
class Secretive {  
    private constructor()  
}
```

1

Because the `Secretive` class has only a private constructor, the code outside of the class can't instantiate it. Later in this chapter, we'll talk about companion objects, which may be a good place to call such constructors.

SIDEBAR Alternatives to private constructors

In Java, you can use a private constructor that prohibits class instantiation to express a more general idea: that the class is a container of static utility members or is a singleton. Kotlin has built-in language features for these purposes. You use top-level functions (which you saw in section 3.2.3) as static utilities. To express singletons, you use object declarations, as you'll see later in this chapter in section 4.4.1.

In most real use cases, the constructor of a class is straightforward: it contains no parameters or assigns the parameters to the corresponding properties. That's why Kotlin has concise syntax for primary constructors: it works great for the majority of cases. But life isn't always that easy, so Kotlin allows you to define as many constructors as your class needs. Let's see how this works.

4.2.2 Secondary constructors: initializing the superclass in different ways

Generally speaking, classes with multiple constructors are much less common in Kotlin code than in Java. The majority of situations where you'd need overloaded constructors in Java are covered by Kotlin's support for default parameter values.

TIP

Tip

Don't declare multiple secondary constructors to overload and provide default values for arguments. Instead, specify default values directly.

But there are still situations when multiple constructors are required. The most

common one comes up when you need to extend a framework class that provides multiple constructors that initialize the class in different ways. Imagine a `View` class that's declared in Java and that has two constructors (you may recognize the definition if you're an Android developer). A similar declaration in Kotlin will be as follows:

```
open class View
{
    constructor(ctx: Context) ❷
    {
        // some code ❸
    }
    constructor(ctx: Context, attr: AttributeSet) {
        // some code
    }
}
```

❶ Secondary constructors

This class doesn't declare a primary constructor (as you can tell because there are no parentheses after the class name in the class header), but it declares two secondary constructors. A secondary constructor is introduced using the `constructor` keyword. You can declare as many secondary constructors as you need.

If you want to extend this class, you can declare the same constructors:

```
class MyButton : View
{
    constructor(ctx: Context)
    {
        : super(ctx) { ❶
        // ...
    }
    constructor(ctx: Context, attr: AttributeSet) ❶
    {
        : super(ctx, attr) {
        // ...
    }
}
```

❶ Calling superclass constructors

Here you define two constructors, each of which calls the corresponding constructor of the superclass using the `super()` keyword. This is illustrated in figure 4.3; an arrow shows which constructor is delegated to.

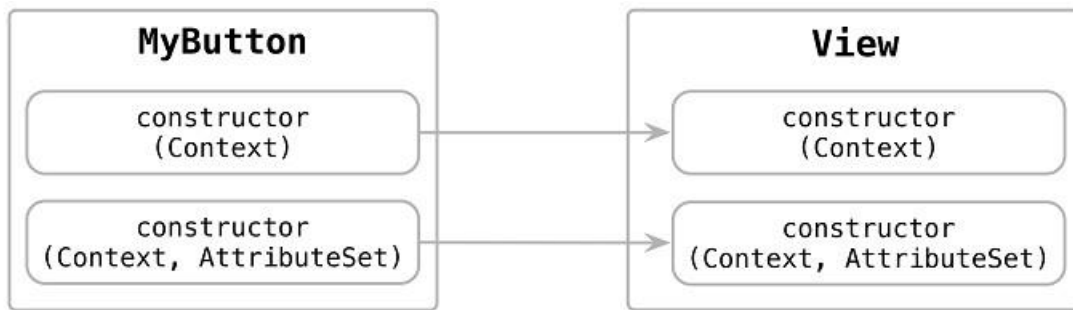


Figure 4.3 Using different superclass constructors

Just as in Java, you also have an option to call another constructor of your own class from a constructor, using the `this()` keyword. Here's how this works:

```
class MyButton : View {
    constructor(ctx: Context): this(ctx, MY_STYLE) {
        // ...
    }
    constructor(ctx: Context, attr: AttributeSet): super(ctx, attr) {
        // ...
    }
}
```

1

1 Delegates to another constructor of the class

You change the `MyButton` class so that one of the constructors delegates to the other constructor of the same class (using `this`), passing the default value for the parameter, as shown in figure 4.4. The second constructor continues to call `super()`.

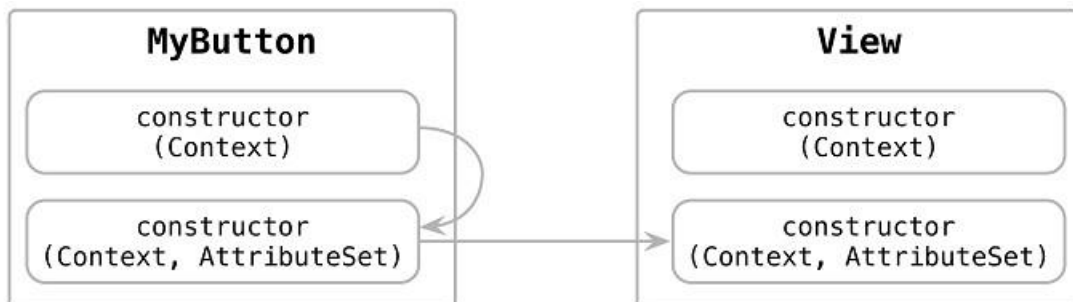


Figure 4.4 Delegating to a constructor of the same class

If the class has no primary constructor, then each secondary constructor has to initialize the base class or delegate to another constructor that does so. Thinking in terms of the previous figures, each secondary constructor must have an outgoing arrow starting a path that ends at any constructor of the base class.

Java interoperability is the main use case when you need to use secondary constructors. But there's another possible case: when you have multiple ways to create instances of your class, with different parameter lists. We'll discuss an example later, in

the section 4.4.2.

We've discussed how to define nontrivial constructors. Now let's turn our attention to nontrivial properties.

4.2.3 Implementing properties declared in interfaces

In Kotlin, an interface can contain abstract property declarations. Here's an example of an interface definition that declares such a declaration:

```
interface User {  
    val nickname: String  
}
```

This means classes implementing the `User` interface need to provide a way to obtain the value of `nickname`. The interface doesn't specify whether the value should be stored in a backing field or obtained through a getter. Therefore, the interface itself doesn't contain any state, and only classes implementing the interface may store the value if they need to.

Let's look at a few possible implementations for the interface: `PrivateUser`, who fills in only their nickname; `SubscribingUser`, who apparently was forced to provide an email to register; and `FacebookUser`, who rashly shared their Facebook account ID. All these classes implement the abstract property in the interface in different ways:

```
class PrivateUser(override val nickname: String) : User ❶  
  
class SubscribingUser(val email: String) : User {  
    override val nickname: String  
        get() = email.substringBefore('@') ❷  
}  
  
class FacebookUser(val accountId: Int) : User  
    { override val nickname = ❸  
        getFacebookName(accountId)  
    }  
  
>>> println(PrivateUser("test@kotlinlang.org").nickname)  
test@kotlinlang.org  
>>> println(SubscribingUser("test@kotlinlang.org").nickname)  
test
```

- ❶ Primary constructor property
- ❷ Custom getter
- ❸ Property initializer

For `PrivateUser`, you use the concise syntax to declare a property directly in the primary constructor. This property implements the abstract property from `User`, so you mark it as `override`.

For `SubscribingUser`, the `nickname` property is implemented through a custom getter. This property doesn't have a backing field to store its value; it has only a getter that calculates a nickname from the email on every invocation.

For `FacebookUser`, you assign the value to the `nickname` property in its initializer. You use a `getFacebookName` function that's supposed to return the name of a Facebook user given their account ID. (Assume that it's defined somewhere else.) This function is costly: it needs to establish a connection with Facebook to get the desired data. That's why you decide to invoke it once during the initialization phase.

Pay attention to the different implementations of `nickname` in `SubscribingUser` and `FacebookUser`. Although they look similar, the first property has a custom getter that calculates `substringBefore` on every access, whereas the property in `FacebookUser` has a backing field that stores the data computed during the class initialization.

In addition to abstract property declarations, an interface can contain properties with getters and setters, as long as they don't reference a backing field. (A backing field would require storing state in an interface, which isn't allowed.)

Let's look at an example:

```
interface User {  
    val email: String  
    val nickname: String  
  
    get() = email.substringBefore('@')  
}
```

1

- 1 Property doesn't have a backing field: the result value is computed on each access.

This interface contains the abstract property `email`, as well as the `nickname` property with a custom getter. The first property must be overridden in subclasses, whereas the second one can be inherited.

Unlike properties implemented in interfaces, properties implemented in classes have full access to backing fields. Let's see how you can refer to them from accessors.

4.2.4 Accessing a backing field from a getter or setter

You've seen a few examples of two kinds of properties: properties that store values and properties with custom accessors that calculate values on every access. Now let's see how you can combine the two and implement a property that stores a value and provides additional logic that's executed when the value is accessed or modified. To support that, you need to be able to access the property's *backing field* from its accessors.

For example, let's say you want to log any change of data stored in a property. You declare a mutable property and execute additional code on each setter access:

```
class User(val name: String) {
```

```

var address: String = "unspecified"
set(value: String) {
    println("""
        Address was changed for $name:

        "$field" -> "$value".""".trimIndent())
    field = value
}

>>> val user = User("Alice")
>>> user.address = "Elsenheimerstraße 47, 80687 München"
Address was changed for Alice:
"unspecified" -> "Elsenheimerstraße 47, 80687 München".

```

- ❶ Reads the backing field value
- ❷ Updates the backing field value

You change a property value as usual by saying `user.address = "new value"`, which invokes a setter under the hood. In this example, the setter is redefined, so the additional logging code is executed (for simplicity, in this example you just print it out).

In the body of the setter, you use the special identifier `field` to access the value of the backing field. In a getter, you can only read the value; and in a setter, you can both read and modify it.

Note that you can redefine only one of the accessors for a mutable property. The getter in the previous example is trivial and just returns the field value, so you didn't need to redefine it.

You may wonder what the difference is between making a property that has a backing field and one that doesn't. The way you access it doesn't depend on whether the property has a backing field. The compiler will generate the backing field for the property if you either reference it explicitly or use the default accessor implementation. If you provide custom accessor implementations that don't use `field` (for the getter if it's `val` and for both accessors if it's a mutable property), the backing field won't be present.

Sometimes you don't need to change the implementation of an accessor, but you need to change its visibility. Let's see how you can do this.

4.2.5 Changing accessor visibility

The accessor's visibility by default is the same as the property's. But you can change this if you need to, by putting a visibility modifier before the `get` or `set` keyword. To see how you can use it, let's look an example:

```

class LengthCounter
{ var counter: Int =
    0
    private set

    fun addWord(word: String)
    { counter +=

```

```
}  
}
```

- ❶ You can't change this property outside of the class.

This class calculates the total length of the words added to it. The property holding the total length is public, because it's part of the API the class provides to its clients. But you need to make sure it's only modified in the class, because otherwise external code could change it and store an incorrect value. Therefore, you let the compiler generate a getter with the default visibility, and you change the visibility of the setter to `private`.

Here's how you can use this class:

```
>>> val lengthCounter = LengthCounter()  
>>> lengthCounter.addWord("Hi!")  
>>> print(lengthCounter.counter)  
3
```

You create an instance of `LengthCounter`, and then you add a word "Hi!" of length 3. Now the `counter` property stores 3.

SIDEBAR More about properties later

Later in the book, we'll continue our discussion of properties. Here are some references:

- The `lateinit` modifier on a non-null property specifies that this property is initialized later, after the constructor is called, which is a common case for some frameworks. This feature will be covered in chapter 6.
- Lazy initialized properties, as part of the more general *delegated properties* feature, will be covered in chapter 7.
- For compatibility with Java frameworks, you can use annotations that emulate Java features in Kotlin. For instance, the `@JvmField` annotation on a property exposes a `public` field without accessors. You'll learn more about annotations in chapter 10.
- The `const` modifier makes working with annotations more convenient and lets you use a property of a primitive type or `String` as an annotation argument. Chapter 10 provides details.

That concludes our discussion of writing nontrivial constructors and properties in Kotlin. Next, you'll see how to make value-object classes even friendlier, using the concept of `data` classes.

4.3 Compiler-generated methods: data classes and class delegation

The Java platform defines a number of methods that need to be present in many classes and are usually implemented in a mechanical way, such as `equals()`, `hashCode()`, and `toString()`. Fortunately, Java IDEs can automate the generation of these methods, so you usually don't need to write them by hand. But in this case, your codebase contains the boilerplate code. The Kotlin compiler takes a step forward: it can perform the mechanical code generation behind the scenes, without cluttering your source code files with the results.

You already saw how this works for trivial class constructor and property accessors. Let's look at some more examples of cases where the Kotlin compiler generates typical methods that are useful for simple data classes and greatly simplifies the class-delegation pattern.

4.3.1 Universal object methods

As is the case in Java, all Kotlin classes have several methods you may want to override: `toString()`, `equals()`, and `hashCode()`. Let's look at what these methods are and how Kotlin can help you generate their implementations automatically. As a starting point, you'll use a simple `Client` class that stores a client's name and postal code:

```
class Client(val name: String, val postalCode: Int)
```

Let's see how class instances are represented as strings.

STRING REPRESENTATION: TOSTRING()

All classes in Kotlin, just as in Java, provide a way to get a string representation of the class's objects. This is primarily used for debugging and logging, although you can use this functionality in other contexts as well. By default, the string representation of an object looks like `Client@5e9f23b4`, which isn't very useful. To change this, you need to override the `toString()` method:

```
class Client(val name: String, val postalCode: Int) {  
    override fun toString() = "Client(name=$name, postalCode=$postalCode)"  
}
```

Now the representation of a client looks like this:

```
>>> val client1 = Client("Alice", 342562)  
>>> println(client1)  
Client(name=Alice, postalCode=342562)
```

Much more informative, isn't it?

OBJECT EQUALITY: EQUALS()

All the computations with the `Client` class take place outside of it. This class just stores the data; it's meant to be plain and transparent. Nevertheless, you may have some requirements for the behavior of such a class. For example, suppose you want the objects to be considered equal if they contain the same data:

```
>>> val client1 = Client("Alice", 342562)
>>> val client2 = Client("Alice", 342562)
>>> println(client1 == client2)
false
```

- ❶ In Kotlin, `==` checks whether the objects are equal, not the references. "equals" is invoked beneath.

You see that the objects aren't equal. That means you must override `equals` for the `Client` class.

SIDEBAR == for equality

In Java, you can use `==` to compare primitive and reference types. If applied to primitive types, Java's `==` compares values, whereas `==` on reference types compares references. Thus, in Java, there's the well-known practice of always calling `equals`, and there's the well-known problem of forgetting to do so.

In Kotlin, `==` is the default way to compare two objects: it compares their values by calling `equals` under the hood. Thus, if `equals` is overridden in your class, you can safely compare its instances using `==`. For reference comparison, you can use the `===` operator, which works exactly the same as `==` in Java.

Let's look at the changed `Client` class:

```
class Client(val name: String, val postalCode: Int)
{
    override fun equals(other: Any?): Boolean {
        if (other == null || other !is Client)
            return false

        return name == other.name &&
            postalCode == other.postalCode
    }
    override fun toString() = "Client(name=$name, postalCode=$postalCode)"
}
```

- ❶ "Any" is the analogue of `java.lang.Object`: a superclass of all classes in Kotlin. The nullable type "Any?" means "other" can be null.

- ❷ Checks whether "other" is a `Client`
- ❸ Checks whether the corresponding properties are equal

Just to remind you, the `is` check in Kotlin is the analogue of `instanceof` in Java. It checks whether a value has the specified type. Like the `!in` operator, which is a negation for the `in` check (we discussed both in the section 2.4.4), the `!is` operator denotes the negation of the `is` check. Such operators make your code easier to read. In chapter 6, we'll discuss nullable types in detail and why the condition `other == null || other !is Client` can be simplified to `other !is Client`.

Because in Kotlin the `override` modifier is mandatory, you're protected from accidentally writing `fun equals(other: Client)`, which would add a new method instead of overriding `equals`. After you override `equals`, you may expect that clients with the same property values are equal. Indeed, the equality check `client1 == client2` in the previous example returns `true` now. But if you want to do more complicated things with clients, it doesn't work. The usual interview question is, "What's broken, and what's the problem?" You may say that the problem is that `hashCode` is missing. That's indeed the case, and we'll now discuss why this is important. (Be sure you know the explanation before you read the next section!)

HASH CONTAINERS: HASHCODE()

The `hashCode` method should be always overridden together with `equals`. This section explains why.

Let's create a set with one element: a client named Alice. When you check whether this set contains the client with the same name and postal code, you consider such objects to be equal, but the set doesn't contain it:

```
>>> val processed = setOf(Client("Alice", 342562))
>>> println(processed.contains(Client("Alice", 342562)))
false
```

The reason is that the `Client` class is missing the `hashCode` method. Therefore, it violates the general `hashCode` contract: if two objects are equal, they must have the same hash code. The `processed` set is a `HashSet`. Values in a `HashSet` are compared in an optimized way: at first their hash codes are compared, and then, only if they're equal, the actual values are compared. The hash codes are different for two different instances of the `Client` class in the previous example, so the set decides that it doesn't contain the second object, even though `equals` would return `true`. Therefore, if the rule isn't followed, the `HashSet` can't work correctly with such objects.

To fix that, you can add the implementation of `hashCode()` to the class:

```
class Client(val name: String, val postalCode: Int) {
    ...
    override fun hashCode(): Int = name.hashCode() * 31 + postalCode
}
```

Now you have a class that works as expected in all scenarios—but notice how much code you’ve had to write. Fortunately, the Kotlin compiler can help you by generating all of those methods automatically. Let’s see how you can ask it to do that.

4.3.2 *Data classes: autogenerated implementations of universal methods*

If you want your class to be a convenient holder for your data, don’t forget to override these methods: `toString`, `equals`, and `hashCode`. Usually, the implementations of those methods are straightforward, and IDEs like IntelliJ IDEA can help you generate them automatically and verify that they’re implemented correctly and consistently.

The good news is, you don’t have to generate all these methods in Kotlin. If you add the modifier `data` to your class, all the necessary methods are automatically generated for you:

```
data class Client(val name: String, val postalCode: Int)
```

Easy, right? Now you have a class that overrides all the standard Java methods:

- `equals()` for comparing instances
- `hashCode()` for using them as keys in hash-based containers such as `HashMap`
- `toString()` for generating string representations showing all the fields in declaration order

The `equals` and `hashCode` methods take into account all the properties declared in the primary constructor. The generated `equals()` method checks that the values of all the properties are equal. The `hashCode()` method returns a value that depends on the hash codes of all the properties. Note that properties that aren’t declared in the primary constructor don’t take part in the equality checks and hashcode calculation.

This isn’t a complete list of useful methods generated for `data` classes. The next section reveals one more, and the section 7.4 fills in the rest.

DATA CLASSES AND IMMUTABILITY: THE COPY() METHOD

Note that even though the properties of a data class aren't required to be `val`—you can use `var` as well—it's strongly recommended that you use only read-only properties, making the instances of the data class *immutable*. This is required if you want to use such instances as keys in a `HashMap` or a similar container, because otherwise the container could get into an invalid state if the object used as a key was modified after it was added to the container. Immutable objects are also much easier to reason about, especially in multithreaded code: once an object has been created, it remains in its original state, and you don't need to worry about other threads modifying the object while your code is working with it.

To make it even easier to use data classes as immutable objects, the Kotlin compiler generates one more method for them: a method that allows you to *copy* the instances of your classes, changing the values of some properties. Creating a copy is usually a good alternative to modifying the instance in place: the copy has a separate lifecycle and can't affect the places in the code that refer to the original instance. Here's what the `copy()` method would look like if you implemented it manually:

```
class Client(val name: String, val postalCode: Int) {  
    ...  
    fun copy(name: String = this.name,  
             postalCode: Int = this.postalCode) =  
        Client(name, postalCode)  
}
```

And here's how the `copy()` method can be used:

```
>>> val bob = Client("Bob", 973293)  
>>> println(bob.copy(postalCode = 382555))  
Client(name=Bob, postalCode=382555)
```

You've seen how the `data` modifier makes value-object classes more convenient to use. Now let's talk about the other Kotlin feature that lets you avoid IDE-generated boilerplate code: class delegation.

4.3.3 Class delegation: using the "by" keyword

A common problem in the design of large object-oriented systems is fragility caused by implementation inheritance. When you extend a class and override some of its methods, your code becomes dependent on the implementation details of the class you're extending. When the system evolves and the implementation of the base class changes or new methods are added to it, the assumptions about its behavior that you've made in your class can become invalid, so your code may end up not behaving correctly.

The design of Kotlin recognizes this problem and treats classes as `final` by default.

This ensures that only those classes that are designed for extensibility can be inherited from. When working on such a class, you see that it's open, and you can keep in mind that modifications need to be compatible with derived classes.

But often you need to add behavior to another class, even if it wasn't designed to be extended. A commonly used way to implement this is known as the *Decorator pattern*. The essence of the pattern is that a new class is created, implementing the same interface as the original class and storing the instance of the original class as a field. Methods in which the behavior of the original class doesn't need to be modified are forwarded to the original class instance.

One downside of this approach is that it requires a fairly large amount of boilerplate code (so much that IDEs like IntelliJ IDEA have dedicated features to generate that code for you). For example, this is how much code you need for a decorator that implements an interface as simple as `Collection`, even when you don't modify any behavior:

```
class DelegatingCollection<T> : Collection<T>
{
    private val innerList = arrayListOf<T>()

    override val size: Int get() = innerList.size
    override fun isEmpty(): Boolean = innerList.isEmpty()
    override fun contains(element: T): Boolean = innerList.contains(element)
    override fun iterator(): Iterator<T> = innerList.iterator()
    override fun containsAll(elements: Collection<T>): Boolean =
        innerList.containsAll(elements)
}
```

The good news is that Kotlin includes first-class support for delegation as a language feature. Whenever you're implementing an interface, you can say that you're *delegating* the implementation of the interface to another object, using the `by` keyword. Here's how you can use this approach to rewrite the previous example:

```
class DelegatingCollection<T> {
    innerList: Collection<T> = ArrayList<T>()
} : Collection<T> by innerList {}
```

As you can see, all the method implementations in the class are gone. The compiler will generate them, and the implementation is similar to that in the `DelegatingCollection` example. Because there's little interesting content in the code, there's no point in writing it manually when the compiler can do the same job for you automatically.

Now, when you need to change the behavior of some methods, you can override them, and your code will be called instead of the generated methods. You can leave out methods for which you're satisfied with the default implementation of delegating to the underlying instance.

Let's see how you can use this technique to implement a collection that counts the

number of attempts to add an element to it. For example, if you're performing some kind of deduplication, you can use such a collection to measure how efficient the process is, by comparing the number of attempts to add an element with the resulting size of the collection:

```
class CountingSet<T>(  
    val innerSet: MutableCollection<T> = HashSet<T>()  
) : MutableCollection<T> by innerSet 1  
  
    { var objectsAdded = 0  
  
    override fun add(element: T): Boolean 2  
    { objectsAdded++  
      return innerSet.add(element)  
    }  
  
    override fun addAll(c: Collection<T>): Boolean 3  
    { objectsAdded += c.size  
      return innerSet.addAll(c)  
    }  
}  
  
>>> val cset = CountingSet<Int>()  
>>> cset.addAll(listOf(1, 1, 2))  
>>> println("${cset.objectsAdded} objects were added, ${cset.size} remain")  
3 objects were added, 2 remain
```

- 1** Delegates the `MutableCollection` implementation to `innerSet`
- 2** Does not delegate; provides a different implementation

As you see, you override the `add` and `addAll` methods to increment the count, and you delegate the rest of the implementation of the `MutableCollection` interface to the container you're wrapping.

The important part is that you aren't introducing any dependency on how the underlying collection is implemented. For example, you don't care whether that collection implements `addAll()` by calling `add()` in a loop, or if it uses a different implementation optimized for a particular case. You have full control over what happens when the client code calls your class, and you rely only on the documented API of the underlying collection to implement your operations, so you can rely on it continuing to work.

We've finished our discussion of how the Kotlin compiler can generate useful methods for classes. Let's proceed to the final big part of Kotlin's class story: the `object` keyword and the different situations in which it comes into play.

4.4 Declaring a class and creating an instance, combined, with the *object* keyword

The `object` keyword comes up in Kotlin in a number of cases, but they all share the same core idea: the keyword defines a class and creates an instance (in other words, an object) of that class at the same time. Let's look at the different situations when it's used:

- *Object declaration* is a way to define a singleton.
- *Companion objects* can contain factory methods and other methods that are related to this class but don't require a class instance to be called. Their members can be accessed via class name.
- *Object expression* is used instead of Java's anonymous inner class.

Now we'll discuss these Kotlin features in detail.

4.4.1 Object declarations: singletons made easy

A fairly common occurrence in the design of object-oriented systems is a class for which you need only one instance. In Java, this is usually implemented using the *Singleton* pattern: you define a class with a private constructor and a static field holding the only existing instance of //AU: Should "private" be code font? TT the class.

Kotlin provides first-class language support for this using the *object declaration* feature. The object declaration combines a *class declaration* and a declaration of a *single instance* of that class.

For example, you can use an object declaration to represent the payroll of an organization. You probably don't have multiple payrolls, so using an object for this sounds reasonable:

```
object Payroll {  
    val allEmployees = arrayListOf<Person>()  
  
    fun calculateSalary() {  
        for (person in allEmployees) {  
            ...  
        }  
    }  
}
```

As you can see, object declarations are introduced with the `object` keyword. An object declaration effectively defines a class and a variable of that class in a single statement.

Just like a class, an object declaration can contain declarations of properties, methods, initializer blocks, and so on. The only things that aren't allowed are constructors (either primary or secondary). Unlike instances of regular classes, object declarations are created immediately at the point of definition, not through constructor calls from other places in the code. Therefore, defining a constructor for an object declaration doesn't make sense.

And just like a variable, an object declaration lets you call methods and access properties by using the object name to the left of the `.` character:

```
Payroll.allEmployees.add(Person(...))

Payroll.calculateSalary()
```

Object declarations can also inherit from classes and interfaces. This is often useful when the framework you're using requires you to implement an interface, but your implementation doesn't contain any state. For example, let's take the `java.util.Comparator` interface. A `Comparator` implementation receives two objects and returns an integer indicating which of the objects is greater. Comparators almost never store any data, so you usually need just a single `Comparator` instance for a particular way of comparing objects. That's a perfect use case for an object declaration.

As a specific example, let's implement a comparator that compares file paths case-insensitively:

```
object CaseInsensitiveFileComparator : Comparator<File>
{
    override fun compare(file1: File, file2: File): Int
    {
        return file1.getPath().compareTo(file2.getPath(),
            ignoreCase = true)
    }
}

>>> println(CaseInsensitiveFileComparator.compare(
...     File("/User"), File("/user")))
0
```

You use singleton objects in any context where an ordinary object (an instance of a class) can be used. For example, you can pass this object as an argument to a function that takes a `Comparator`:

```
>>> val files = listOf(File("/Z"), File("/a"))
>>> println(files.sortedWith(CaseInsensitiveFileComparator))
[/a, /Z]
```

Here you're using the `sortedWith` function, which returns a list sorted according to the specified comparator.

SIDEBAR Singletons and dependency injection

Just like the Singleton pattern, object declarations aren't always ideal for use in large software systems. They're great for small pieces of code that have few or no dependencies, but not for large components that interact with many other parts of the system. The main reason is that you don't have any control over the instantiation of objects, and you can't specify parameters for the constructors.

This means you can't replace the implementations of the object itself, or other classes the object depends on, in unit tests or in different configurations of the software system. If you need that ability, you should use regular Kotlin classes together with a dependency injection framework such as Guice (<https://github.com/google/guice>), just as in Java.

You can also declare objects in a class. Such objects also have just a single instance; they don't have a separate instance per instance of the containing class. For example, it's logical to place a comparator comparing objects of a particular class inside that class:

```
data class Person(val name: String) {
    object NameComparator : Comparator<Person> {
        override fun compare(p1: Person, p2: Person): Int =
            p1.name.compareTo(p2.name)
    }
}

>>> val persons = listOf(Person("Bob"), Person("Alice"))
>>> println(persons.sortedWith(Person.NameComparator))
[Person(name="Alice"), Person(name="Bob")]
```

SIDEBAR Using Kotlin objects from Java

An object in Kotlin is compiled as a class with a static field holding its single instance, which is always named `INSTANCE`. If you implemented the Singleton pattern in Java, you'd probably do the same thing by hand. Thus, to use a Kotlin object from the Java code, you access the static `INSTANCE` field:

```
/* Java */
CaseInsensitiveFileComparator.INSTANCE.compare(file1, file2);
```

In this example, the `INSTANCE` field has the type `CaseInsensitiveFileComparator`.

Now let's look at a special case of objects nested inside a class: *companion objects*.

4.4.2 Companion objects: a place for factory methods and static members

Classes in Kotlin can't have static members; Java's `static` keyword isn't part of the Kotlin language. As a replacement, Kotlin relies on package-level functions (which can replace Java's static methods in many situations) and object declarations (which replace Java static methods in other cases, as well as static fields). In most cases, it's recommended that you use package-level functions. But package-level functions can't access private members of a class. Thus, if you need to write a function that can be called without having a class instance but needs access to the internals of a class, you can write it as a member of an object declaration inside that class. An example of such a function would be a factory method.

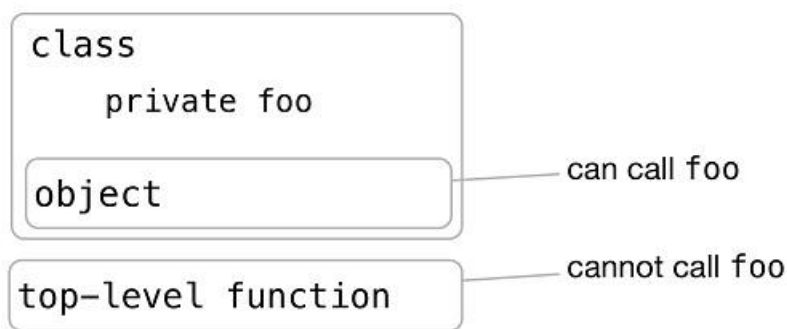


Figure 4.5 Private members can't be used in top-level util functions outside of the class

One of the objects defined in a class can be marked with a special keyword, `companion`. If you do that, you gain the ability to access the methods and properties of that object directly through the name of the containing class, without specifying the name of the object explicitly. The resulting syntax looks exactly like static method invocation in Java. Here's a basic example showing the syntax:

```
class A {
    companion object
    { fun bar() {
        println("Companion object called")
    }
    }
}

>>> A.bar()
Companion object called
```

Remember when we promised you a good place to call a private constructor? That's the companion object. The companion object has access to all private members of the class, and it's an ideal candidate to implement the factory pattern.

Let's look at an example of declaring two constructors, and then change it to use factory methods declared in the companion object. We'll build on the example from

earlier in the chapter, with `FacebookUser` and `SubscribingUser`. Previously, these entities were different classes implementing the common interface `User`. Now you decide to manage with only one class, but to provide different means of creating it:

```
class User {  
    val nickname: String  
  
    constructor(email: String) {  
        nickname = email.substringBefore('@')  
    }  
  
    constructor(facebookAccountId: Int) {  
        nickname = getFacebookName(facebookAccountId)  
    }  
}
```

1 Secondary constructors

An alternative approach to express the same logic, which may be beneficial for many reasons, is to use factory methods to create instances of the class.

The `User` instance is created through factory methods, not via multiple constructors:

```
class User(val nickname: String)  
{  
    companion object {  
        fun newSubscribingUser(email: String) =  
            User(email.substringBefore('@'))  
  
        fun newFacebookUser(accountId: Int) =  
            User(getFacebookName(accountId))  
    }  
}
```

- 1 Declares the companion object
- 2 Factory method creating a new user by email
- 3 Factory method creating a new user by Facebook account ID

You can invoke the methods of `companion object` via the class name:

```
>>> val subscribingUser = User.newSubscribingUser("bob@gmail.com")  
>>> val facebookUser = User.newFacebookUser(4)  
  
>>> println(subscribingUser.nickname)  
bob
```

Factory methods are very useful. They can be named according to their purpose, as shown in the example. In addition, a factory method can return subclasses of the class where the method is declared, as in the example when `SubscribingUser` and

`FacebookUser` are classes. You can also avoid creating new objects when it's not necessary. For example, you can ensure that every email corresponds to a unique `User` instance, and return an existing instance instead of a new one when the factory method is called with an email that's already in the cache. But if you need to extend such classes, using several constructors may be a better solution, because companion object members can't be overridden in subclasses.

4.4.3 Companion objects as regular objects

A companion object is a regular object that is declared in a class. It can be named, implement an interface, or have extension functions or properties. In this section, we'll look at an example.

Suppose you're working on a web service for a company's payroll, and you need to serialize and deserialize objects as JSON. You can place the serialization logic in a companion object:

```
class Person(val name: String)
{
    companion object Loader {
        fun fromJSON(jsonText: String): Person = ...
    }
}

>>> person = Person.Loader.fromJSON("{name: 'Dmitry'}")
>>> person.name
Dmitry

>>> person2 = Person.fromJSON("{name: 'Brent'}")
>>> person2.name
Brent
```

❶ You can use both ways to call `fromJSON`.

In most cases, you refer to the companion object through the name of its containing class, so you don't need to worry about its name. But you can specify it if needed, as in the example: companion object `Loader`. If you omit the name of the companion object, the default name assigned to it is `Companion`. You'll see some examples using this name later, when we talk about companion-object extensions.

IMPLEMENTING INTERFACES IN COMPANION OBJECTS

Just like any other object declaration, a companion object can implement interfaces. As you'll see in a moment, you can use the name of the containing class directly as an instance of an object implementing the interface.

Suppose you have many kinds of objects in your system, including `Person`. You want to provide a common way to create objects of all types. Let's say you have an interface

`JSONFactory` for objects that can be deserialized from JSON, and all objects in your system should be created through this factory. You can provide an implementation of that interface for your `Person` class:

```
interface JSONFactory<T> {  
    fun fromJSON(jsonText: String): T  
}  
  
class Person(val name: String) {  
    companion object : JSONFactory<Person> {  
        override fun fromJSON(jsonText: String): Person = ...  
    }  
}
```

❶ Companion object implementing an interface

Then, if you have a function that uses an abstract factory to load entities, you can pass the `Person` object to it:

```
fun loadFromJSON<T>(factory: JSONFactory<T>): T {  
    ...  
}  
  
loadFromJSON(Person)
```

❶ Passes the companion-object instance to the function

Note that the name of the `Person` class is used as an instance of `JSONFactory`.

SIDEBAR Kotlin companion objects and static members

The companion object for a class is compiled similarly to a regular object: a static field in a class refers to its instance. If the companion object isn't named, it can be accessed through the `Companion` reference from the Java code:

```
/* Java */
Person.Companion.fromJSON("...");
```

If a companion object has a name, you use this name instead of `Companion`.

But you may need to work with Java code that requires a member of your class to be static. You can achieve this with the `@JvmStatic` annotation on the corresponding member. If you want to declare a `static` field, use the `@JvmField` annotation on a top-level property or a property declared in an `object`. These features exist specifically for interoperability purposes and are not, strictly speaking, part of the core language. We'll cover annotations in detail in chapter 10.

Note that Kotlin can access static methods and fields declared in Java classes, using the same syntax as Java.

COMPANION-OBJECT EXTENSIONS

As you saw in the section 3.3, extension functions allow you to define methods that can be called on instances of a class defined elsewhere in the codebase. But what if you need to define functions that can be called on the class itself, like companion-object methods or Java static methods? If the class has a companion object, you can do so by defining extension functions on the companion object. More specifically, if class `C` has a companion object, and you define an extension function `func` on `C.Companion`, you can call it as `C.func()`.

For example, imagine that you want to have a cleaner separation of concerns for your `Person` class. The class itself will be part of the core business-logic module, but you don't want to couple that module to any specific data format. Because of that, the deserialization function needs to be defined in the module responsible for client/server communication. You can accomplish this using extension functions. Note how you use the default name (`Companion`) to refer to the companion object that was declared without an explicit name:

```
// business logic module
class Person(val firstName: String, val lastName: String) {
    companion object {
```

```

    }
}

// client/server communication module

fun Person.Companion.fromJSON(json: String): Person {
    ...
}

val p = Person.fromJSON(json)

```

- ❶ Declares an empty companion object
- ❷ Declares an extension function

You call the `fromJSON` function because it was defined in the companion object, but it's an extension to companion object. As always with extension functions, it looks like a member, but it's not. But note that you have to declare a companion object in your class, even an empty one, in order to be able to define extensions to it.

You've seen how useful companion objects can be. Now let's move to the next feature in Kotlin that's expressed with the same `object` keyword: object expressions.

4.4.4 Object expressions: anonymous inner classes rephrased

The `object` keyword can be used not only for declaring named singleton-like objects, but also for declaring *anonymous objects*. Anonymous objects replace Java's use of anonymous inner classes. For example, let's see how you can convert a typical use of a Java anonymous inner class—an event listener—into Kotlin:

```

window.addMouseListener( object
    ct : MouseAdapter() {
        override fun mouseClicked(e: MouseEvent) {
            // ...
        }

        override fun mouseEntered(e: MouseEvent) {
            // ...
        }
    }
)

```

- ❶ Declares an anonymous object extending `MouseAdapter`
- ❷ Overrides `MouseAdapter` methods

As you can see, the syntax is the same as with object declarations, except that you omit the name of the object. The object expression declares a class and creates an instance of that class, but it doesn't assign a name to the class or the instance. Typically, neither is necessary, because you'll use the object as a parameter in a function call. If you do need to assign a name to the object, you can store it in a variable:

```
val listener = object : MouseAdapter() {  
    override fun mouseClicked(e: MouseEvent) { ... }  
    override fun mouseEntered(e: MouseEvent) { ... }  
}
```

Unlike a Java anonymous inner class, a Kotlin anonymous object can implement multiple interfaces or no interfaces (even though the latter is unlikely to be useful).

NOTE

Note

Unlike object declarations, anonymous objects aren't singletons. Every time an object expression is executed, a new instance of the object is created.

Just as with Java's anonymous classes, code in an object expression can access the variables in the function where it was created. But unlike in Java, this isn't restricted to `final` variables; you can also modify the values of variables from within an object expression.

For example, let's see how you can use the listener to count the number of clicks in a window:

```
fun countClicks(window: Window)  
{  
    var clickCount = 0  
  
    window.addMouseListener(object : MouseAdapter()  
    {  
        override fun mouseClicked(e: MouseEvent) {  
            clickCount++  
        }  
    })  
    // ...  
}
```

1

2

- 1 Declares a local variable
- 2 Updates the value of the variable

NOTE

Note

Object expressions are mostly useful when you need to override multiple methods in your anonymous object. If you only need to implement a single-method interface (such as `Runnable`), you can rely on Kotlin's support for SAM conversion (converting a function literal to an implementation of an interface with a single abstract method) and write your implementation as a function literal (lambda). We'll discuss lambdas and SAM conversion in much more detail in chapter 5.

We've finished our discussion of classes, interfaces, and objects. In the next chapter, we'll move on to one of the most interesting areas of Kotlin: lambdas and functional programming.

4.5 Summary

- Interfaces in Kotlin are similar to Java's but can contain default implementations and properties.
- All declarations are `final` and `public` by default.
- To make a declaration non-`final`, mark it as `open`.
- `internal` declarations are visible in the same module.
- Nested classes aren't inner by default. Use the keyword `inner` to store a reference to an outer class.
- A `sealed` class can only have subclasses nested in its declaration.
- Initializer blocks and secondary constructors provide flexibility for initializing class instances.
- You use the `field` identifier to reference a property backing field from the accessor body.
- Data classes provide compiler-generated `equals()`, `hashCode()`, `toString()`, `copy()`, and other methods.
- Class delegation helps to avoid many similar delegating methods in your code.
- Object declaration is Kotlin's way to define a singleton class.
- Companion objects (along with package-level functions and properties) replace Java's static method and field definitions.
- Companion objects, like other objects, can implement interfaces or have extension functions or properties.
- Object expressions are Kotlin's replacement for Java's anonymous inner classes, with added power such as the ability to implement multiple interfaces and to modify the variables defined in the scope where the object is created.

Programming with

5 *lambdas*

This chapter covers

- Lambda expressions and member references
- Working with collections in a functional style
- Sequences: performing collection operations lazily
- Using Java functional interfaces in Kotlin
- Using lambdas with receivers

Lambda expressions, or simply *lambdas*, are essentially small chunks of code that can be passed to other functions. With lambdas, you can easily extract common code structures into library functions, and the Kotlin standard library makes heavy use of them. One of the most common uses for lambdas is working with collections, and in this chapter you'll see many examples of replacing common collection access patterns with lambdas passed to standard library functions. You'll also see how lambdas can be used with Java libraries—even those that weren't originally designed with lambdas in mind. Finally, we'll look at lambdas with receivers—a special kind of lambdas where the body is executed in a different context than the surrounding code.

5.1 *Lambda expressions and member references*

The introduction of lambdas to Java 8 was one of the longest-awaited changes in the evolution of the language. Why was it such a big deal? In this section, you'll find out why lambdas are so useful and what the syntax of lambda expressions in Kotlin looks like.

5.1.1 Introduction to lambdas: blocks of code as method parameters

Passing and storing pieces of behavior in your code is a frequent task. For example, you often need to express ideas like "When an event happens, run this handler" or "Apply this operation to all elements in a data structure." In older versions of Java, you could accomplish this through anonymous inner classes. This technique works but requires verbose syntax.

Functional programming offers you another approach to solve this problem: the ability to treat functions as values. Instead of declaring a class and passing an instance of that class to a method, you can pass a function directly. With lambda expressions, the code is even more concise. You don't need to declare a function: instead, you can, effectively, pass a block of code directly as a method parameter.

Let's look at an example. Imagine that you need to define a behavior for clicking a button. You add a listener responsible for handling the click. This listener implements the corresponding `OnClickListener` interface with one method, `onClick`:

```
/* Java */
button.setOnClickListener(new OnClickListener() {
    @Override
    public void onClick(View view) {
        /* actions on click */
    }
});
```

The verbosity required to declare an anonymous inner class becomes irritating when repeated many times. What you want to express here is just the behavior—what should be done on clicking. In Kotlin, as in Java 8, you can use a lambda for that:

```
button.setOnClickListener { /* actions on click */ }
```

This Kotlin code does the same thing as an anonymous class in Java but is more concise and readable. We'll discuss the details of this example later in this section.

You saw how a lambda can be used as an alternative to an anonymous object with only one method. Let's now continue with another classical use of lambda expressions: working with collections.

5.1.2 Lambdas and collections

One of the main tenets of good programming style is to avoid any duplication in your code. Most of the tasks we perform with collections follow a few common patterns, so the code that implements them should live in a library. But without lambdas, it's difficult to provide a good, convenient library for working with collections. Thus if you wrote your code in Java (prior to Java 8), you most likely have a habit of implementing everything on your own. This habit must be changed with Kotlin!

Let's look at an example. You'll use the `Person` class that contains information about a person's name and age:

```
data class Person(val name: String, val age: Int)
```

Suppose you have a list of people, and you need to find the oldest of them. If you had no experience with lambdas, you might rush to implement the search manually. You'd introduce two intermediate variables—one to hold the maximum age and another to store people of this age—and then iterate over the list, updating these variables:

```
fun findTheOldest(people: List<Person>)
{
    1 var maxAge = 0
    2 var theOldest: Person? = null
    for (person in people) {
        3 if (person.age > maxAge)
        {
            maxAge = person.age
            theOldest = person
        }
    }
    println(theOldest)
}
>>> val people = listOf(Person("Alice", 29), Person("Bob", 31))
>>> findTheOldest(people)
Person(name=Bob, age=31)
```

- 1 Stores the maximum age
- 2 Stores a person of the maximum age
- 3 If the next person is older than the current oldest person, changes the maximum

With enough experience, you can bang out such loops pretty quickly. But there's quite a lot of code here, and it's easy to make mistakes. For example, you might get the comparison wrong and find the minimum element instead of the maximum.

In Kotlin, there's a better way. You can use a library function:

```
>>> val people = listOf(Person("Alice", 29), Person("Bob", 31))
>>> println(people.maxBy { it.age })
Person(name=Bob, age=31)
```

- 1 Finds the maximum by comparing the ages

The `maxBy` function can be called on any collection and takes one argument: the function that specifies what values should be compared to find the maximum element. The code in curly braces `{ it.age }` is a lambda implementing that logic. It receives a collection element as an argument (referred to using `it`) and returns a value to compare.

In this example, the collection element is a `Person` object, and the value to compare is its age, stored in the `age` property.

If a lambda just delegates to a method or property, it can be replaced by a member reference:

```
people.maxBy(Person::age)
```

This code means the same thing as the previous example.

Most of the things we typically do with collections in Java (prior to Java 8) can be better expressed with library functions taking lambdas or member references. The resulting code is much shorter and easier to understand. To help you start getting used to it, let's look at the syntax for lambda expressions.

5.1.3 Syntax for lambda expressions

As we've mentioned, a lambda encodes a small piece of behavior that you can pass around as a value. It can be declared independently and stored in a variable. But more frequently, it's declared directly when passed to a function. Figure 5.1 shows the syntax for declaring lambda expressions.

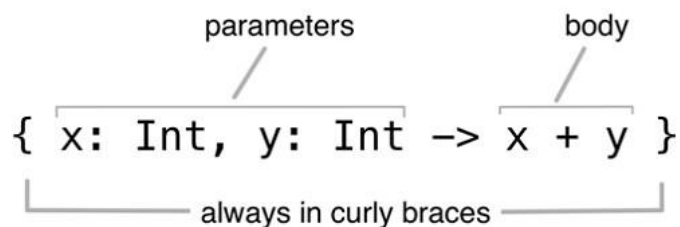


Figure 5.1 Lambda expression syntax

A lambda expression in Kotlin is always surrounded by curly braces. Note that there are no parentheses around the arguments. The arrow separates the argument list from the body of the lambda.

You can store a lambda expression in a variable and then treat this variable like a normal function (call it with the corresponding arguments):

```
>>> val sum = { x: Int, y: Int -> x + y }  
>>> println(sum(1, 2))  
3
```

❶

❶ Calls the lambda stored in a variable

If you want to, you can call the lambda expression directly:

```
>>> { println(42) }()
```

But such syntax isn't readable and doesn't make much sense (it's equivalent to executing the lambda body directly). If you need to enclose a piece of code in a block, you can use the library function `run` that executes the lambda passed to it:

```
>>> run { println(42) }
42
```

1

1 Runs the code in the lambda

In section 8.2, you'll learn why such invocations have no runtime overhead and are as efficient as built-in language constructs. Let's return to the earlier example that finds the oldest person in a list:

```
>>> val people = listOf(Person("Alice", 29), Person("Bob", 31))
>>> println(people.maxBy { it.age })
Person(name=Bob, age=31)
```

1

If you rewrite this example without using any syntax shortcuts, you'll get the following:

```
people.maxBy({ p: Person -> p.age })
```

It should be clear what happens here: the piece of code in curly braces is a lambda expression, and you pass it as an argument to the function. The lambda expression takes one argument of type `Person` and returns its age.

But this code is verbose. First, there's too much punctuation, which hurts readability. Second, the type can be inferred from the context and therefore omitted. Last, you don't need to assign a name to the lambda argument in this case.

Let's make these improvements, starting with braces. In Kotlin, a syntactic convention lets you move a lambda expression out of parentheses if it's the last argument in a function call. In this example, the lambda is the only argument, so it can be placed after the parentheses:

```
people.maxBy() { p: Person -> p.age }
```

When the lambda is the only argument to a function, you can also remove the empty parentheses from the call:

```
people.maxBy { p: Person -> p.age }
```

All three syntactic forms mean the same thing, but the last one is the easiest to read. If a lambda is the only argument, you'll definitely want to write it without the parentheses. When you have several arguments, you can emphasize that the lambda is an argument by leaving it inside the parentheses, or you can put it outside of them—both options are valid. If you want to pass two or more lambdas, you can't move more than one out, so it's usually better to pass them using the regular syntax.

To see what these options look like with a more complex call, let's go back to the `joinToString` function that you used extensively in chapter 3. It's also defined in the Kotlin standard library, with the difference that the standard library version takes a function as an additional parameter. This function can be used to convert an element to a string differently than the `toString()` function. Here's how you can use it to print names only:

```
>>> val people = listOf(Person("Alice", 29), Person("Bob", 31))
>>> val names = people.joinToString(separator = " ",
...                               transform = { p: Person -> p.name })
>>> println(names)
Alice Bob
```

And here's how you can rewrite that call with the lambda outside the parentheses:

```
people.joinToString(" ") { p: Person -> p.name }
```

The second variant does the same thing more concisely, but it doesn't express explicitly what the lambda is used for, so it may be harder to understand for people not familiar with the function being called.

TIP

IntelliJ IDEA tip

To convert one syntactic form to the other, you can use this action:
"Move lambda expression out of parentheses."

Let's move on with simplifying the shortest syntax and get rid of the parameter type:

```
people.maxBy { p: Person -> p.age }
people.maxBy { p -> p.age }
```

2

3

- 1 Argument type explicitly written
- 2 Argument type inferred

As with local variables, if the type of a lambda parameter can be inferred, you don't need to specify it explicitly. With the `maxBy` function, the parameter type is always the

same as the collection element type. The compiler knows you're calling `maxBy` on a collection of `Person` objects, so it can understand that the lambda parameter will also be of type `Person`.

There are cases when the compiler can't infer the lambda parameter type, but we won't discuss them here. The simple rule you can follow is to always start without the types; if the compiler complains, specify them.

You can specify only some of the argument types while leaving others with just names. Doing so may be convenient if the compiler can't infer one of the types or if an explicit type improves readability.

The last simplification you can make in this example is to replace an argument with the default argument name: `it`. This name is generated if the context expects a lambda with only one argument, and its type can be inferred:

```
people.maxBy { it.age }
```

❶

❶ "it" is an autogenerated argument name.

This default name is generated only if you don't specify the argument name explicitly.

NOTE

Note

The `it` convention is great for shortening your code, but you shouldn't abuse it. In particular, in the case of nested lambdas, it's better to declare the parameter of each lambda explicitly; otherwise it's difficult to understand which value the `it` refers to. It's useful also to declare parameters explicitly if the meaning or the type of the parameter isn't clear from the context.

If you store a lambda in a variable, there's no context from which to infer the argument types, so you have to specify them explicitly:

```
>>> val getAge = { p: Person -> p.age }  
>>> people.maxBy(getAge)
```

So far, you've only seen examples with lambdas that consist of one expression or statement. But lambdas aren't constrained to such a small size and can contain multiple statements. In this case, the last expression is the result:

```
>>> val sum = { x: Int, y: Int ->  
...     println("Computing the sum of $x and $y")  
...     x + y
```

```
... }
>>> println(sum(1, 2))
Computing the sum of 1 and 2...
3
```

Next, let's talk about a concept that often goes side-by-side with lambda expressions: capturing variables from the context.

5.1.4 Accessing variables in scope

You know that when you declare an anonymous inner class in a method, you can refer to parameters and local variables of that method from inside the class. With lambdas, you can do exactly the same thing. If you use a lambda in a function, you can access the parameters of that function as well as the local variables declared before the lambda.

To demonstrate this, let's use the `forEach` standard library function. It's one of the most basic collection-manipulation functions; all it does is call the given lambda on every element in the collection. The `forEach` function is somewhat more concise than a regular `for` loop, but it doesn't have many other advantages, so you needn't rush to convert all your loops to lambdas.

The following example takes a list of messages and prints each message with the same prefix:

```
fun printMessagesWithPrefix(messages: Collection<String>, prefix: String)
{
    messages.forEach {
        println("$prefix $it")
    }
}

>>> val errors = listOf("403 Forbidden", "404 Not Found")
>>> printMessagesWithPrefix(errors, "Error:")
Error: 403 Forbidden
Error: 404 Not Found
```

- ❶ Takes as an argument a lambda specifying what to do with each element
- ❷ Accesses the "prefix" parameter in the lambda

One important difference between Kotlin and Java is that in Kotlin, you aren't restricted to accessing final variables. You can also modify variables from within a lambda. The next example counts the number of client and server errors in the given set of response status codes:

```
fun printProblemCounts(responses: Collection<String>)
{
    var clientErrors = 0
    var serverErrors = 0
    responses.forEach {
        if (it.startsWith("4")) {
```

```

        clientErrors++
    } else if (it.startsWith("5")) {
        serverErrors++
    }
}
println("$clientErrors client errors, $serverErrors server errors")
}

>>> val responses = listOf("200 OK", "418 I'm a teapot",
...                          "500 Internal Server Error")
>>> printProblemCounts(responses)
1 client errors, 1 server errors

```

- ❶ Declares variables that will be accessed from the lambda
- ❷ Modifies variables in the lambda

As you can see, Kotlin, unlike Java, allows you to access non-final variables and even modify them in a lambda. External variables accessed from a lambda, such as `prefix`, `clientErrors`, and `serverErrors` in these examples, are said to be *captured* by the lambda.

Note that, by default, the lifetime of a local variable is constrained by the function in which the variable is declared. But if it's captured by the lambda, the code that uses this variable can be stored and executed later. You may ask how this works. When you capture a final variable, its value is stored together with the lambda code that uses it. For non-final variables, the value is enclosed in a special wrapper that lets you change it, and the reference to the wrapper is stored together with the lambda.

SIDEBAR Capturing a mutable variable: implementation details

Java allows you to capture a final variable only. When you want to capture a mutable variable, you can use one of the following tricks: either declare an array of one element in which to store the mutable value, or create an instance of a wrapper class that stores the reference that can be changed. The similar code in Kotlin is as follows:

```
class Ref<T>(var value: T)
>>> val counter = Ref(0)
>>> val inc = { counter.value++ }
```

1

2

- 1 Class that's used to simulate capturing a mutable variable
- 2 Formally, an immutable variable is captured; but the actual value is stored in a field and can be changed.

In Kotlin, you don't need to create such wrappers. Instead, you can mutate the variable directly:

```
var counter = 0
val inc = { counter++ }
```

How does it work? The first example shows how the second example works under the hood. Any time you capture a final variable (`val`), its value is copied, as in Java. When you capture a mutable variable (`var`), its value is stored as an instance of a `Ref` class. The `Ref` variable is final and can be easily captured, whereas the actual value is stored in a field and can be changed from the lambda.

An important caveat is that, if a lambda is used as an event handler or is otherwise executed asynchronously, the modifications to local variables will occur only when the lambda is executed. For example, the following code isn't a correct way to count button clicks:

```
fun tryToCountButtonClicks(button: Button): Int
{
    var clicks = 0
    button.onClick { clicks++ }
    return clicks
}
```

This function will always return 0. Even though the `onClick` handler will modify the value of `clicks`, you won't be able to observe the modification, because the `onClick`

handler will be called after the function returns. A correct implementation of the function would need to store the click count not in a local variable, but in a location that remains accessible outside of the function—for example, in a property of a class.

We’ve discussed the syntax for declaring lambdas and how variables are captured in lambdas. Now let’s talk about member references, a feature that lets you easily pass references to existing functions.

5.1.5 Member references

You’ve seen how lambdas allow you to pass a block of code as a parameter to a function. But what if the code that you need to pass as a parameter is already defined as a function? Of course, you can pass a lambda that calls that function, but doing so is somewhat redundant. Can you pass the function directly?

In Kotlin, just like in Java 8, you can do so if you convert the function to a value. You use the `::` operator for that:

```
val getAge = Person::age
```

This expression is called *member reference*, and it provides a short syntax for creating a function value that calls exactly one method or accesses a property. A double colon separates the name of a class from the name of the member you need to reference (a method or property), as shown in figure 5.2.

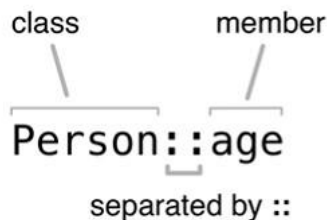


Figure 5.2 Member reference syntax

This is a more concise expression of a lambda that does the same thing:

```
val getAge = { person: Person -> person.age }
```

Note that, regardless of whether you’re referencing a function or a property, you shouldn’t put parentheses after its name in a method reference.

A member reference has the same type as a lambda that calls that function, so you can use the two interchangeably:

```
people.maxBy(Person::age)
```

You can have a reference to a function that's declared at the top level (and isn't a member of a class), as well:

```
fun salute() = println("Salute!")  
  
>>> run(::salute)  
Salute!
```

1

1 Reference to the top-level function

In this case, you omit the class name and start with `::`. The member reference `::salute` is passed as an argument to the library function `run`, which calls the corresponding function.

It's convenient to provide a member reference instead of a lambda that delegates to a function taking several parameters:

```
val action = { person: Person, message: String ->  
    sendEmail(person, message)  
}  
  
val nextAction = ::sendEmail
```

1

2

1 This lambda delegates to a `sendEmail` function.

2 You can use a member reference instead.

You can store or postpone the action of creating an instance of a class using a *constructor reference*. The constructor reference is formed by specifying the class name after the double colons:

```
data class Person(val name: String, val age: Int)  
  
>>> val createPerson = ::Person  
>>> val p = createPerson("Alice", 29)  
>>> println(p)  
Person("Alice", 29)
```

1

1 An action of creating an instance of "Person" is saved as a value.

Note that you can also reference extension functions the same way:

```
fun Person.isAdult() = age >= 21  
val predicate = Person::isAdult
```

Although `isAdult` isn't a member of the `Person` class, you can access it via reference, just as you can access it as a member on an instance: `person.isAdult()`.

SIDEBAR Bound references

In Kotlin 1.0, when you take a reference to a method or property of a class, you always need to provide an instance of that class when you call the reference. Support for bound-method references, which allow you to use the method-reference syntax to capture a reference to the method on a specific object instance, is planned for Kotlin 1.1:

```
>>> val p = Person("Dmitry", 34)
>>> val personsAgeFunction = Person::age
>>> println(personsAgeFunction(p))
34

>>> val dmitrysAgeFunction = p::age
>>> println(dmitrysAgeFunction())
34
```

1

1 A bound member reference that you can use in Kotlin 1.1

Note that `personsAgeFunction` is a one-argument function (it returns the age of a given person), whereas `dmitrysAgeFunction` is a zero-argument function (it returns the age of a specific person). Before Kotlin 1.1, you need to write the lambda `{ p.age }` explicitly instead of using the bound member reference `p::age`.

In the following section, we'll look at many library functions that work great with lambda expressions, as well as member references.

5.2 Functional APIs for collections

Functional style provides many benefits when it comes to manipulating collections. You can use library functions for the majority of tasks and simplify your code. In this section, we'll discuss some of the functions in the Kotlin standard library for working with collections. We'll start with staples like `filter` and `map` and the concepts behind them. We'll also cover other useful functions and give you tips about how not to overuse them and write clear and comprehensible code.

Note that none of these functions were invented by the designers of Kotlin. These or similar functions are available for all languages that support lambdas. If you're already familiar with these concepts, you can quickly look through the following examples and skip the explanations.

5.2.1 Essentials: *filter* and *map*

The `filter` and `map` functions form the basis for manipulating collections. Many requests to collections can be expressed with their help.

For each function, we'll provide one example with numbers and one using the

familiar `Person` class:

```
data class Person(val name: String, val age: Int)
```

The `filter` function transforms a collection and filters out elements that don't satisfy the given predicate:

```
>>> val list = listOf(1, 2, 3, 4)
>>> list.filter { it % 2 == 0 }
[2, 4]
```

❶

❶ Only even numbers remain.

The result is a new collection that contains only the elements from the input collection that satisfy the predicate, as illustrated in figure 5.3.

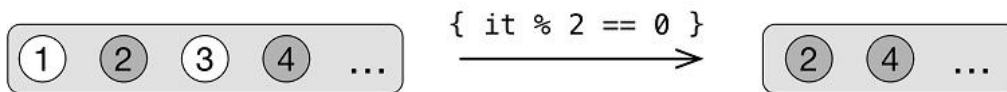


Figure 5.3 How the `filter` function works

If you want to keep only people older than are 30, you can use `filter`:

```
>>> val people = listOf(Person("Alice", 29), Person("Bob", 31))
>>> people.filter { it.age > 30 }
[Person("Bob", 31)]
```

The `filter` function can remove unwanted elements from a collection, but it doesn't change the elements. Transforming elements is where `map` comes into play.

The `map` function applies the given function to each element in the collection and collects the results into a new collection. You can transform a list of numbers into a list of their squares, for example:

```
>>> val list = listOf(1, 2, 3, 4)
>>> list.map { it * it }
[1, 4, 9, 16]
```

The result is a new collection that contains the same number of elements, but each element is transformed according to the given predicate (see figure 5.4).

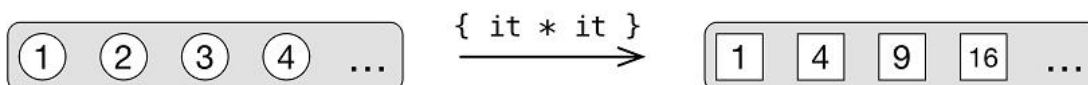


Figure 5.4 How the `map` function works

If you want to print just a list of names, not a list of people, you can transform the list using `map`:

```
>>> val people = listOf(Person("Alice", 29), Person("Bob", 31))
>>> people.map { it.name }
[Alice, Bob]
```

Note that this example can be nicely rewritten using member references:

```
people.map(Person::name)
```

You can easily chain several calls like that. For example, let's print the names of people older than 30:

```
>>> people.filter { it.age > 30 }.map(Person::name)
[Bob]
```

Now, let's say you need the names of the oldest people in the group. You can find the maximum age of the people in the group and return everyone who is that age. It's easy to write such code using lambdas:

```
people.filter { it.age == people.maxBy(Person::age).age }
```

But note that this code repeats the process of finding the maximum age for every person, so if there are 100 people in the collection, the search for the maximum age will be performed 100 times!

The following solution improves on that and calculates the maximum age only once:

```
val maxAge = people.maxBy(Person::age).age
people.filter { it.age == maxAge }
```

Don't repeat a calculation if you don't need to! Simple-looking code using lambda expressions can sometimes obscure the complexity of the underlying operations, so always keep in mind what is happening in the code you write.

You can also apply the filtering and transformation functions to maps:

```
>>> val numbers = mapOf(0 to "zero", 1 to "one")
>>> println(numbers.mapValues { it.value.toUpperCase() })
{0=ZERO, 1=ONE}
```

There are separate functions to handle keys and values. `filterKeys` and `mapKeys` filter and transform the keys of a map, respectively, whereas `filterValues` and `mapValues` filter and transform the corresponding values.

5.2.2 all, any, count, and find: applying a predicate to a collection

Another common task is checking whether all elements in a collection match a certain condition (or, as a variation, whether any elements match). In Kotlin, this is expressed through the `all` and `any` functions. The `count` function checks how many elements satisfy the predicate, and the `find` function returns the first matching element.

To demonstrate those functions, let's define the predicate `canBeInClub27` to check whether a person is 27 or younger:

```
val canBeInClub27 = { p: Person -> p.age <= 27 }
```

If you're interested in whether all the elements satisfy this predicate, you use the `all` function:

```
>>> val people = listOf(Person("Alice", 27), Person("Bob", 31))
>>> println(people.all(canBeInClub27))
false
```

If you need to check whether there's at least one matching element, use `any`:

```
>>> println(people.any(canBeInClub27))
true
```

Note that `!all` (not-all) can be replaced with `any` with a negated condition, and vice versa. To make your code easier to understand, you should choose a function that doesn't require you to put a negation sign before it:

```
>>> val list = listOf(1, 2, 3)
>>> println(!list.all { it == 3 })
true
>>> println(list.any { it != 3 })
true
```

- ❶ The negation `!` isn't noticeable, so it's better to use "any" in this case.
- ❷ The condition in the argument has changed to its opposite.

The first check ensures that not all elements are equal to 3. That's the same as having at least one non-3, which is what you check using `any` on the second line.

If you want to know how many elements satisfy this predicate, use `count`:

```
>>> val people = listOf(Person("Alice", 27), Person("Bob", 31))
>>> println(people.count(canBeInClub27))
1
```

SIDEBAR Using the right function for the job: count vs. size

It's extremely easy to forget about `count` and implement it by filtering the collection and getting its size:

```
>>> println(people.filter(canBeInClub27).size)
1
```

But in this case, an intermediate collection is created to store all the elements that satisfy the predicate. On the other hand, the `count` method only tracks the number of matching elements, not the elements themselves, and is therefore more efficient.

As a general rule, try to find the most appropriate operation that satisfies your needs.

To find an element that satisfies the predicate, use the `find` function:

```
>>> val people = listOf(Person("Alice", 27), Person("Bob", 31))
>>> println(people.find(canBeInClub27))
Person(name=Alice, age=27)
```

This returns the first matching element if there are many or `null` if nothing satisfies the predicate. A synonym of `find` is `firstOrNull`, which you can use if it expresses the idea more clearly for you.

5.2.3 *groupBy: converting a list to a map of groups*

Imagine that you need to divide all elements into different groups according to some quality. For example, you want to group people of the same age together. It's convenient to pass this quality directly as a parameter. The `groupBy` function can do this for you:

```
>>> val people = listOf(Person("Alice", 31),
...                     Person("Bob", 29), Person("Carol", 31))
>>> println(people.groupBy { it.age })
```

The result of this operation is a map from the key by which the elements are grouped (age, in this case) to the groups of elements (persons); see figure 5.5.

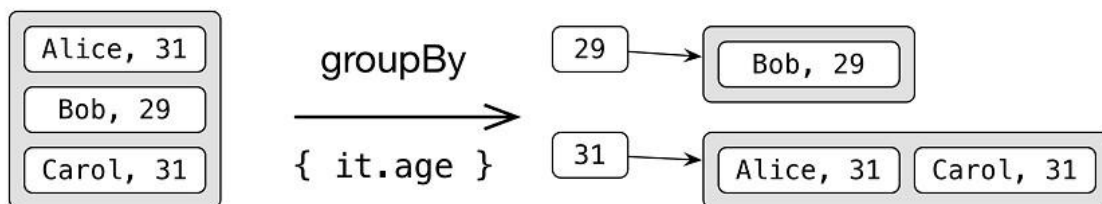


Figure 5.5 The result of applying the `groupBy` function

For this example, the output is as follows:

```
{29=[Person(name=Bob, age=29)],  
 31=[Person(name=Alice, age=31), Person(name=Carol, age=31)]}
```

Each group is stored in a list, so the result type is `Map<Int, List<Person>>`. You can do further modifications with this map, using functions such as `mapKeys` and `mapValues`.

As another example, let's see how to group strings by their first character using member references:

```
>>> val list = listOf("a", "ab", "b")  
>>> println(list.groupBy(String::first))  
{a=[a, ab], b=[b]}
```

Note that `first` here isn't a member of the `String` class, it's an extension. Nevertheless, you can access it as a member reference.

5.2.4 *flatMap* and *flatten*: processing elements in nested collections

Now let's put aside our discussion of people and switch to books. Suppose you have a storage of books, represented by the class `Book`:

```
class Book(val title: String, val authors: List<String>)
```

Each book was written by one or more authors. You can compute the set of all the authors in your library:

```
books.flatMap { it.authors }.toSet()
```

1

1 Set of all authors who wrote "books"

The `flatMap` function does two things: at first it transforms (or *maps*) each element to a collection according to the function given as an argument, and then it combines (or *flattens*) several lists into one. An example with strings illustrates this concept well (see figure 5.6):

```
>>> val strings = listOf("abc", "def")  
>>> println(strings.flatMap { it.toList() })  
[a, b, c, d, e, f]
```

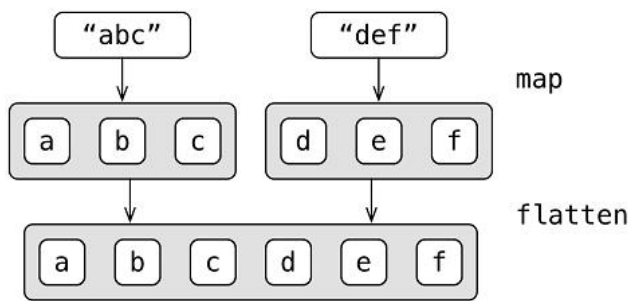



Figure 5.6 The result of applying the flatMap function

The `toList()` function on a string converts it into a list of characters. If you used the `map` function together with `toList()`, you'd get a list of lists of characters, as shown in the second row in the figure. The `flatMap` function does the following step as well, and returns one list consisting of all the elements.

Let's return to the authors:

```
>>> val books = listOf(Book("Thursday Next", listOf("Jasper Fforde")),
...                     Book("Mort", listOf("Terry Pratchett")),
...                     Book("Good Omens", listOf("Terry Pratchett",
...                                                "Neal Gaiman")))
>>> println(books.flatMap { it.authors }.toSet())
[Jasper Fforde, Terry Pratchett, Neal Gaiman]
```

Each book can be written by multiple authors, and the `book.authors` property stores the collection of authors. The `flatMap` function combines the authors of all the books in a single, flat list. The `toSet` call removes duplicates from the resulting collection—so, in this example, Terry Pratchett is listed only once in the output.

You may think of `flatMap` when you're stuck with a collection of collections of elements that have to be combined into one. Note that if you don't need to transform anything and just need to flatten such a collection, you can use the `flatten` function: `listOfLists.flatten()`.

We've highlighted a few of the collection operation functions in the Kotlin standard library, but there are many more. We won't cover them all, for reasons of space, and also because showing a long list of functions is boring. Our general advice when you write code that works with collections is to think of how the operation could be expressed as a general transformation, and to look for a library function that performs such a transformation. It's likely that you'll be able to find one and use it to solve your problem more quickly than with a manual implementation.

Now let's take a closer look at the performance of code that chains collection operations. In the next section, you'll see the different ways in which such operations can be executed.

5.3 Lazy collection operations: sequences

In the previous section, you saw several examples of chained collection functions, such as `map` and `filter`. These functions create intermediate collections *eagerly*, meaning the intermediate result of each step is stored in a temporary list. *Sequences* give you an alternative way to perform such computations that avoids the creation of intermediate temporary objects.

Here's an example:

```
people.map(Person::name).filter { it.startsWith("A") }
```

The Kotlin standard library reference says that both `filter` and `map` return a list. That means this chain of calls will create two lists: one to hold the results of the `filter` function and another for the results of `map`. This isn't a problem when the source list contains two elements, but it becomes much less efficient if you have a million.

To make this more efficient, you can convert the operation so it uses *sequences* instead of using collections directly:

```
people.asSequence()  
    .map(Person::name)  
    .filter { it.startsWith("A") }  
    .toList()
```

- ❶
- ❷
- ❸

- ❶ Converts the initial collection to Sequence
- ❷ Sequences support the same API as collections.
- ❸ Converts the resulting Sequence back into a list

The result of applying this operation is the same as in the previous example: a list of people's names that start with the letter *A*. But in the second example, no intermediate collections to store the elements are created, so performance for a large number of elements will be noticeably better.

The entry point for lazy collection operations in Kotlin is the `Sequence` interface. The interface represents just that: a sequence of elements that can be enumerated one by one. `Sequence` provides only one method, `iterator`, that you can use to obtain the values from the sequence.

The strength of the `Sequence` interface is in the way operations on it are implemented. The elements in a sequence are evaluated lazily. Therefore, you can use sequences to efficiently perform chains of operations on elements of a collection without creating collections to hold intermediate results of the processing.

You can convert any collection to a sequence by calling the extension method `asSequence`. You call `toList` for backward conversion.

Why do you need to convert the sequence back to a collection? Wouldn't it be more convenient to use sequences instead of collections, if they're so much better? The answer is: sometimes. If you only need to iterate over the elements in a sequence, you can use the sequence directly. If you need to use other API methods, such as accessing the elements by index, then you need to convert the sequence to a list.

NOTE

Note

As a rule, use a sequence whenever you have a chain of operations on a *large* collection. In section 8.2, we'll discuss why eager operations on regular collections are efficient in Kotlin, in spite of creating intermediate collections. But if the collection contains a large number of elements, the intermediate rearranging of elements costs a lot, so lazy evaluation is preferable.

Because operations on a sequence are lazy, in order to perform them, you need to iterate over the sequence's elements directly or by converting it to a collection. The next section explains that.

5.3.1 Executing sequence operations: intermediate and terminal operations

Operations on a sequence are divided into two categories: intermediate and terminal. An *intermediate operation* returns another sequence, which knows how to transform the elements of the original sequence. A *terminal operation* returns a result, which may be a collection, an element, a number, or any other object that's somehow obtained by the sequence of transformations of the initial collection (see figure 5.7).

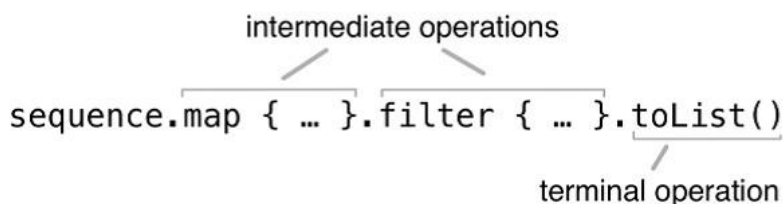


Figure 5.7 Intermediate and terminal operations on sequences

Intermediate operations are always lazy. Look at this example, where the terminal operation is missing:

```
>>> listOf(1, 2, 3, 4).asSequence()
...     .map { print("map($it) "); it * it }
...     .filter { print("filter($it) "); it % 2 == 0 }
```

Executing this code snippet prints nothing to the console. That means the `map` and

`filter` transformations are postponed and will be applied only when the result is obtained (that is, when the terminal operation is called):

```
>>> listOf(1, 2, 3, 4).asSequence()
...     .map { print("map($it) "); it * it }
...     .filter { print("filter($it) "); it % 2 == 0 }
...     .toList()
map(1) filter(1) map(2) filter(4) map(3) filter(9) map(4) filter(16)
```

The terminal operation causes all the postponed computations to be performed.

One more important thing to notice in this example is the order in which the computations are performed. The naive approach would be to call the `map` function on each element first and then call the `filter` function on each element of the resulting sequence. That's how `map` and `filter` work on collections, but not on sequences. For sequences, all operations are applied to each element sequentially: the first element is processed (mapped, then filtered), then the second element is processed, and so on.

This approach means some elements aren't transformed at all if the result is obtained earlier. Let's look at an example with `map` and `find` operations. First you map a number to its square, and then you find the first item that's greater than 3:

```
>>> println(listOf(1, 2, 3, 4).asSequence()
...           .map { it * it }.find { it > 3 })
4
```

If the same operations are applied to a collection instead of a sequence, then the result of `map` is evaluated first, transforming all elements in the initial collection. In the second step, an element satisfying the predicate is found in the intermediate collection. With sequences, the lazy approach means you can skip processing some of the elements. Figure 5.8 illustrates the difference between evaluating this code in an eager (using collections) and lazy (using sequences) manner.

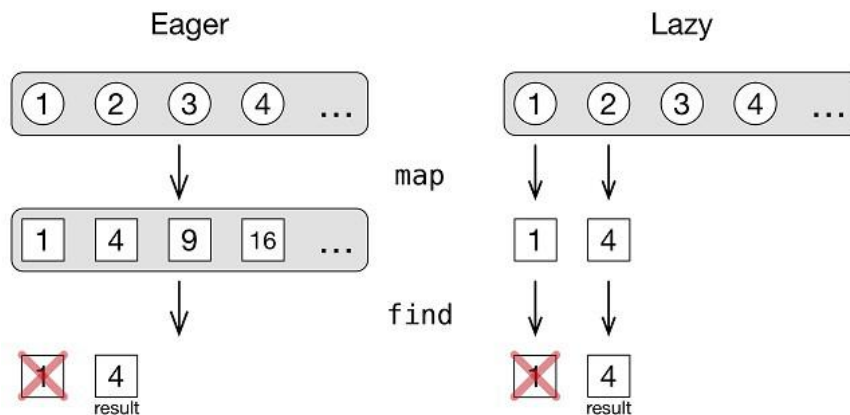


Figure 5.8 Eager evaluation runs each operation on the entire collection; lazy evaluation processes elements one by one.

In the first case, when you work with collections, the list is transformed into another list, so the `map` transformation is applied to each element, including 3 and 4. Afterward, the first element satisfying the predicate is found: the square of 2.

In the second case, the `find()` call begins processing the elements one by one. You take a number from the original sequence, transform it with `map`, and then check whether it matches the predicate passed to `find`. When you reach 2, you see that its square is greater than 3 and return it as the result of the `find` operation. You don't need to look at 3 and 4, because the result was found before you reached them.

The order of the operations you perform on a collection can affect performance as well. Imagine that you have a collection of people, and you want to print their names if they're shorter than a certain limit. You need to do two things: map each person to their name, and then filter out those names that aren't short enough. You can apply `map` and `filter` operations in any order in this case. Both approaches give the same result, but they differ in the total number of transformations that should be performed (see figure 5.9):

```
>>> val people = listOf(Person("Alice", 29), Person("Bob", 31),  
...      Person("Charles", 31), Person("Dan", 21))  
  
>>> println(people.asSequence().map(Person::name)           ❶  
...      .filter { it.length < 4 }.toList())  
[Bob, Dan]  
>>> println(people.asSequence().filter { it.name.length < 4 }  
...      .map(Person::name).toList())           ❷  
[Bob, Dan]
```

❶ "map" goes first, then "filter".

❷ "map" goes after "filter".

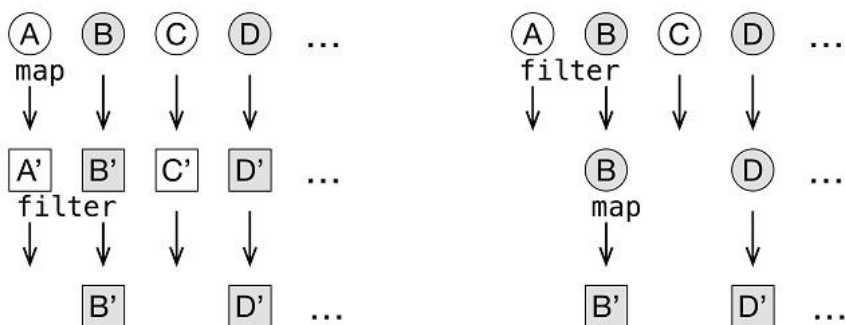


Figure 5.9 Applying filter first helps to reduce the total number of transformations.

If `map` goes first, each element is transformed. If you apply `filter` first, inappropriate elements are filtered out as soon as possible and aren't transformed.

SIDEBAR Streams vs. sequences

If you're familiar with Java 8 streams, you'll see that sequences are exactly the same concept. Kotlin provides its own version of the same concept because Java 8 streams aren't available on platforms built on older versions of Java, such as Android. If you're targeting Java 8, streams give you one big feature that isn't currently implemented for Kotlin collections and sequences: the ability to run a stream operation (such as `map()` or `filter()`) on multiple CPUs in parallel. You can choose between streams and sequences based on the Java versions you target and your specific requirements.

5.3.2 Creating sequences

The previous examples used the same method to create a sequence: you called `asSequence()` on a collection. Another possibility is to use the `generateSequence()` function. This function calculates the next element in a sequence given the previous one. For example, here's how you can use `generateSequence()` to calculate the sum of all natural numbers up to 100:

```
>>> val naturalNumbers = generateSequence(0) { it + 1 }
>>> val numbersTo100 = naturalNumbers.takeWhile { it <= 100 }
>>> println(numbersTo100.sum())
5050
```

❶ All the delayed operations are performed when the result "sum" is obtained.

Note that `naturalNumbers` and `numbersTo100` in this example are both sequences with postponed computation. The actual numbers in those sequences won't be evaluated until you call the terminal operation (`sum` in this case).

Another common use case is a sequence of parents. If an element has parents of its own type (such as a human being or a Java file), you may be interested in qualities of the sequence of all of its ancestors. In the following example, you inquire whether the file is located in a hidden directory by generating a sequence of its parent directories and checking this quality on each of the directories:

```
fun File.isInsideHiddenDirectory() =
    generateSequence(this) { it.parentFile }.any { it.isHidden }

>>> val file = File("/Users/svtk/.HiddenDir/a.txt")
>>> println(file.isInsideHiddenDirectory())
true
```

Once again, you generate a sequence by providing the first element and a way to get each subsequent element. By replacing `any` with `find`, you'll get the desired directory. Note that using sequences allows you to stop traversing the parents as soon as you find the required directory.

We've thoroughly discussed a frequently used application of lambda expressions: using them to simplify manipulating collections. Now let's continue with another important topic: using lambdas with an existing Java API.

5.4 Using Java functional interfaces

Using lambdas with Kotlin libraries is nice, but the majority of APIs that you work with are probably written in Java, not Kotlin. The good news is that Kotlin lambdas are fully interoperable with Java APIs; in this section, you'll see exactly how this works.

At the beginning of the chapter, you saw an example of passing a lambda to a Java method:

```
button.setOnClickListener { /* actions on click */ }
```

1

1 Passes the lambda as an argument

The `Button` class sets a new listener to a button via an `setOnClickListener` method that takes an argument of type `OnClickListener`:

```
/* Java */
public class Button {
    public void setOnClickListener(OnClickListener l) { ... }
}
```

The `OnClickListener` interface declares one method, `onClick`:

```
/* Java */
public interface OnClickListener {
    void onClick(View v);
}
```

In Java (prior to Java 8), you have to create a new instance of an anonymous class to pass it as an argument to the `setOnClickListener` method:

```
button.setOnClickListener(new OnClickListener() {
    @Override
    public void onClick(View v) {
        ...
    }
})
```

In Kotlin, you can pass a lambda instead:

```
button.setOnClickListener { view -> ... }
```

The lambda used to implement `OnClickListener` has one parameter of type `View`, as in the `onClick` method. The mapping is illustrated in figure 5.10.

```
public interface OnClickListener {  
    void onClick(View v);  
}  
→ { view -> ... }
```

Figure 5.10 Parameters of the lambda correspond to method parameters.

This works because the `OnClickListener` interface has only one abstract method. Such interfaces are called *functional interfaces*, or *SAM interfaces*, where SAM stands for *single abstract method*. The Java API is full of functional interfaces like `Runnable` and `Callable`, as well as methods working with them. Kotlin allows you to use lambdas when calling Java methods that take functional interfaces as parameters, ensuring that your Kotlin code remains clean and idiomatic.

NOTE

Note

Unlike Java, Kotlin has proper function types. Because of that, Kotlin methods that need to take lambdas as parameters should use function types, not functional interface types, as the types of those parameters. Automatic conversion of lambdas to objects implementing Kotlin interfaces isn't supported. We'll discuss the use of function types in method declarations in section 8.1.1.

Let's look in detail at what happens when you pass a lambda to a method that takes an argument of a functional interface type.

5.4.1 Passing a lambda as a parameter to a Java method

You can pass a lambda to any Java method that expects a functional interface. For example, consider this method that takes a lambda as a parameter:

```
/* Java */  
void postponeComputation(int delay, Runnable computation);
```

In Kotlin, you can invoke it and pass a lambda as a parameter. The compiler will automatically convert it into an instance of `Runnable`:

```
postponeComputation(1000) { println(42) }
```


Note that when we say "an instance of `Runnable`," what we mean is "an instance of an anonymous class implementing `Runnable`." The compiler will create that for you and will use the lambda as the body of the single abstract method—the `run` method, in this case.

You can achieve the same effect by creating an anonymous object that implements `Runnable` explicitly:

```
postponeComputation(1000, object : Runnable  
    { override fun run() {  
        println(42)  
    }  
})
```

1

1 When you pass a lambda, an anonymous class is created.

But there's a difference. When you explicitly declare an object, a new instance is created on each invocation. With a lambda, the situation is different: if the lambda doesn't access any variables from the function where it's defined, the corresponding anonymous class instance is reused between calls:

```
postponeComputation(1000) { println(42) }
```

1

1 One instance of `Runnable` is created for the entire program.

Therefore, the equivalent implementation with an explicit `object` declaration is the following snippet, which stores the `Runnable` instance in a variable and uses it for every invocation:

```
val runnable = Runnable { println(42) }  
fun handleComputation() {  
    postponeComputation(1000, runnable)  
}
```

1

2

1 Compiled to a static variable; only one instance in the program

2 One object is used for every `handleComputation` call.

If the lambda captures variables from the surrounding scope, it's no longer possible to reuse the same instance for every invocation. In that case, the compiler creates a new

object for every call and stores the values of the captured variables in that object. For example, in the following function, every invocation uses a new `Runnable` instance, storing the `id` value as a field:

```
fun handleComputation(id: String)
{ postponeComputation(1000)
  { println(id) }
}
```

1
2

- 1 Captures the variable "id" in a lambda
- 2 Creates a new instance of `Runnable` on each `handleComputation` call

SIDEBAR Lambda implementation details

As of Kotlin 1.0, every lambda expression is compiled into an anonymous class, unless it's an inline lambda. Support for generating Java 8 bytecode is planned for later versions of Kotlin, which will allow the compiler to avoid generating a separate `.class` file for every lambda expression.

If a lambda captures variables, the anonymous class will have a field for each captured variable, and a new instance of that class will be created for every invocation. Otherwise, a single instance will be created. The name of the class is derived by adding a suffix from the name of the function in which the lambda is declared: `HandleComputation$1`, for this example.

Here's what you'll see if you decompile the code of the previous lambda expression:

```
class HandleComputation$1(val id: String) : Runnable
{ override fun run() {
    println(id)
  }
}
fun handleComputation(id: String) {
    postponeComputation(1000, HandleComputation$1(id))
}
```

1

- 1 Under the hood, instead of a lambda, an instance of a special class is created.

As you can see, the compiler generates a field and a constructor parameter for each captured variable.

Note that the discussion of creating an anonymous class and an instance of this class for a lambda is valid for Java methods expecting functional interfaces, but not valid for

working with collections using Kotlin extension methods. If you pass a lambda to the Kotlin function that's marked `inline`, no anonymous classes are created. And most of the library functions are marked `inline`. Details of how this works are discussed later, in section 8.2.

As you've seen, in most cases the conversion of a lambda to an instance of a functional interface happens automatically, without any effort on your part. But there are cases when you need to perform the conversion explicitly. Let's see how to do that.

5.4.2 SAM constructors: explicit conversion of lambdas to functional interfaces

A *SAM constructor* is a compiler-generated function that lets you perform an explicit conversion of a lambda into an instance of a functional interface. You can use it in contexts when the compiler doesn't apply the conversion automatically. For example, if you have a method that returns an instance of a functional interface, you can't return a lambda directly; you need to wrap it into a SAM constructor. Here's a simple example:

```
fun createAllDoneRunnable(): Runnable
    { return Runnable { println("All
      done!") }
}

>>> createAllDoneRunnable().run()
All done!
```

The name of the SAM constructor is the same as the name of the underlying functional interface. The SAM constructor takes a single argument—a lambda that will be used as the body of the single abstract method in the functional interface—and returns an instance of the class implementing the interface.

In addition to returning values, SAM constructors are used when you need to store a functional interface instance generated from a lambda in a variable. Suppose you want to reuse one listener for several buttons, as in the following example (in an Android application, this code can be a part of the `Activity.onCreate` method):

```
val listener = OnClickListener { view ->
    val text = when (view.id) {
        R.id.button1 -> "First button"
        R.id.button2 -> "Second button"
        else -> "Unknown button"
    }
    toast(text)
}
button1.setOnClickListener(listener)
button2.setOnClickListener(listener)
```

- ❶ Uses `view.id` to determine which button was clicked
- ❷ Shows "text" to the user

`listener` checks which button was the source of the click and behaves accordingly. You could create it by using an object declaration that implements `OnClickListener`, but SAM constructors give you a more concise option.

SIDEBAR Lambdas and adding/removing listeners

Note that there's no `this` in a lambda as there is in an anonymous object: there's no way to refer to the anonymous class instance into which the lambda is converted. From the compiler's point of view, the lambda is a block of code, not an object, and you can't refer to it as an object. The `this` reference in a lambda refers to a surrounding class.

If your event listener needs to unsubscribe itself while handling an event, you can't use a lambda for that. Use an anonymous object to implement a listener, instead. In an anonymous object, the `this` keyword refers to the instance of that object, and you can pass it to the API that removes the listener.

Also, even though SAM conversion in method calls typically happens automatically, there are cases when the compiler can't choose the right overload when you pass a lambda as a parameter to an overloaded method. In those cases, applying an explicit SAM constructor is a good way to resolve the compilation error.

To finish our discussion of lambda syntax and usage, let's look at lambdas with receivers and how they're used to define convenient library functions that look like built-in constructs.

5.5 Lambdas with receivers: *with* and *apply*

This section demonstrates the `with` and `apply` functions from the Kotlin standard library. These functions are convenient, and you'll find many uses for them even without understanding how they're declared. Later, in section 11.2.1, you'll see how you can declare similar functions for your own needs.

The explanations in this section, however, help you become familiar with a unique feature of Kotlin's lambdas that isn't available with Java: the ability to call methods of a different object in the body of a lambda without any additional qualifiers. Such lambdas are called *lambdas with receivers*. Let's begin by looking at the `with` function, which uses a lambda with a receiver.

5.5.1 The *with* function

Many languages have special statements you can use to perform multiple operations on the same object without repeating its name. Kotlin also has this facility, but it's provided as a library function called `with`, not as a statement.

To see how it can be useful, consider the following example, which you'll then refactor using `with`:

```
fun alphabet(): String {
    val result = StringBuilder()
    for (letter in 'A'..'Z') {
        result.append(letter)
    }
    result.append("\nNow I know the alphabet!")
    return result.toString()
}

>>> println(alphabet())
ABCDEFGHIIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Now I know the alphabet!
```

In this example, you call several different methods on the `result` instance and repeating the `result` name in each call. This isn't too bad, but what if the expression you were using was longer or repeated more often?

Here's how you can rewrite the code using `with`:

```
fun alphabet(): String {
    val stringBuilder = StringBuilder()

    return with(stringBuilder)
        { for (letter in 'A'..'Z')
          {
              this.append(letter)
          }
          append("\nNow I know the alphabet!")
          this.toString()
        }
}
```

1

2

3

4

- 1 Specifies the receiver value on which you're calling the methods
- 2 Calls a method on the receiver value though an explicit "this"
- 3 Calls a method, omitting "this"
- 4 Returns a value from the lambda

The `with` structure looks like a special construct, but it's a function that takes two arguments: `stringBuilder`, in this case, and a lambda. The convention of putting the lambda outside of the parentheses works here, and the entire invocation looks like a built-in feature of the language. Alternatively, you could write this as `with(stringBuilder, { ... })`, but it's less readable.

The `with` function converts its first argument into a *receiver* of the lambda that's passed as a second argument. You can access this receiver via an explicit `this` reference. Alternatively, as usual for a `this` reference, you can omit it and access methods or properties of this value without any additional qualifiers.

In the previous example, `this` refers to `stringBuilder`, which is passed to `with` as the first argument. You can access methods on `stringBuilder` via explicit `this` references, as in `this.append(letter)`; or directly, as in `append("\nNow...")`.

SIDEBAR Lambdas with receiver and extension functions

You may recall that you saw a similar concept with `this` referring to the function receiver. In the body of an extension function, `this` refers to the instance of the type the function is extending, and it can be omitted to give you direct access to the receiver's members.

Note that an extension function is, in a sense, a function with a receiver. The following analogy can be applied:

Regular function	Regular lambda
Extension function	Lambda with a receiver

SIDEBAR A lambda is a way to define behavior similar to a regular function, and a lambda with a receiver is a way to define behavior similar to an extension function.

Let's refactor the initial `alphabet` function even further and get rid of the extra `stringBuilder` variable:

```
fun alphabet() = with(StringBuilder())
    { for (letter in 'A'..'Z') {
        append(letter)
    }
    append("\nNow I know the alphabet!")
    toString()
}
```

This function now only returns an expression, so it's rewritten using the expression-body syntax. You create a new instance of `StringBuilder` and pass it directly as an argument, and then you reference it without the explicit `this` in the lambda.

SIDEBAR Method-name conflicts

What happens if the object you pass as a parameter to `with` has a method with the same name as the class in which you're using `with`? In this case, you can add an explicit label to the `this` reference to specify which method you need to call.

Imagine that the `alphabet` function is a method of the class `OuterClass`. If you need to refer to the `toString` method defined in the outer class instead of the one in `StringBuilder`, you can do so using the following syntax:

```
this@OuterClass.toString()
```

The value that `with` returns is the result of executing the lambda code. The result is the last expression in the lambda. But sometimes you want the call to return the receiver object, not the result of executing the lambda. That's where the `apply` library function can be of use.

5.5.2 The *apply* function

The `apply` function works almost exactly the same as `with`; the only difference is that `apply()` always returns the object passed to it as a parameter (in other words, the receiver object). Let's refactor the `alphabet` function again, this time using `apply`:

```
fun alphabet() = StringBuilder().apply  
    { for (letter in 'A'..'Z') {  
        append(letter)  
    }  
    append("\nNow I know the alphabet!")  
}.toString()
```

As you can see, `apply` is an extension function. The receiver of this function becomes the receiver of the lambda passed as an argument. The result of executing `apply` is `StringBuilder`, so you call `toString` to convert it to `String` afterward.

One of many cases where this is useful is when you're creating an instance of an object with preinitialized properties. In Java, this is usually accomplished through a separate `Builder` object; and in Kotlin, you can use `apply` on any object without any special support.

To see how `apply()` is used for such cases, let's look at an example that creates an `Android TextView` component with some custom attributes:

```
fun createViewWithCustomAttributes(context: Context) =
```

```
TextView(context).apply
{ text = "Sample
  Text" textSize = 20.0
  setPadding(10, 0, 0, 0)
}
```

As you can see, `apply` allows you to use the compact expression body style for the function. You create a new `TextView` instance and immediately pass it to `apply`. In the lambda passed to `apply`, the `TextView` instance becomes the receiver, so you can call methods and set properties on it. After the lambda is executed, `apply` returns that instance, which is already initialized; it becomes the result of the `createViewWithCustomAttributes` function.

The `with` and `apply` functions are basic generic examples of using lambdas with receivers. More specific functions can also use the same pattern. For example, you can simplify the `alphabet` function even further by using the `buildString` standard library function, which will take care of creating a `StringBuilder` and calling `toString()`. The parameter of `buildString` is a lambda with a receiver, and the receiver is always a `StringBuilder`:

```
fun alphabet() = buildString
{ for (letter in 'A'..'Z')
  {
    append(letter)
  }
  append("\nNow I know the alphabet!")
}
```

The `buildString` function is an elegant solution for the task of creating a `String` with the help of `StringBuilder`.

You'll see more interesting examples in chapter 11, when we begin discussing domain-specific languages. Lambdas with receivers are great tools for building DSLs; we'll show you how to use them for that purpose and how to define your own functions that call lambdas with receivers.

5.6 Summary

- Lambdas allow you to pass chunks of code as parameters to methods.
- Kotlin lets you pass lambdas to methods outside of parentheses and refer to a single lambda parameter as `it`.
- Code in a lambda can access and modify variables in the function containing the call to the lambda.
- You can create references to methods, constructors, and properties by prefixing the name of the function with `::`, and pass such references to methods instead of lambdas.
- Most common operations with collections can be performed without manually iterating over elements, using functions such as `filter`, `map`, `all`, `any`, and so on.
- Sequences allow you to combine multiple operations on a collection without creating collections to hold intermediate results.
- You can pass lambdas as arguments to methods that take a Java functional interface (an interface with a single abstract method, also known as a SAM interface) as a parameter.
- Lambdas with receivers are lambdas in which you can directly call methods on a special receiver object.
- The `with` standard library function allows you to call multiple methods on the same object without repeating the reference to the object. `apply` lets you construct and initialize any object using a builder-style API.

The Kotlin type system

This chapter covers

- Nullable types and syntax for dealing with nulls
- Primitive types and their correspondence to the Java types
- Kotlin collections and their relationship to Java

By now, you've seen a large part of Kotlin's syntax in action. You've moved beyond creating Java-equivalent code in Kotlin and are ready to enjoy some of Kotlin's productivity features that can make your code more compact and readable.

Let's slow down a bit and take a closer look at one of the most important parts of Kotlin: its type system. Compared to Java, Kotlin's type system introduces several new features that are essential for improving the reliability of your code, such as support for *nullable types* and *read-only collections*. It also removes some of the features of the Java type system that have turned out to be unnecessary or problematic, such as raw types and first-class support for arrays. Let's look at the details.

6.1 Nullability

Nullability is a feature of the Kotlin type system that helps you avoid `NullPointerException` errors. As a client of a program, you've probably seen an error message similar to "An error has occurred: java.lang.NullPointerException," with no additional details. Another version is a message like "Unfortunately, the application X has stopped," which often also conceals a `NullPointerException` exception as a cause. Such errors can be troublesome for both users and developers.

The approach of modern languages, including Kotlin, is to convert these problems from runtime errors into compile-time errors. By supporting nullability as part of the type system, the compiler can detect many possible errors during compilation and reduce the possibility of having exceptions thrown at runtime.

In this section, we'll discuss nullable types in Kotlin: how Kotlin marks values that are allowed to be `null`, and the tools Kotlin provides to deal with such values. Moving beyond that, we'll cover the details of mixing Kotlin and Java code with respect to nullable types.

6.1.1 Nullable types

The first and probably most important difference between Kotlin's and Java's type systems is Kotlin's explicit support for *nullable types*. What does this mean? It's a way to indicate which variables or properties in your program are allowed to be `null`. If a variable can be `null`, calling a method on it isn't safe, because it can cause a `NullPointerException`. Kotlin disallows such calls and thereby prevents many possible exceptions.

To see how this works in practice, let's look at the following Java function:

```
/* Java */
int strLen(String s)
{ return
  s.length();
}
```

Is this function safe? If the function is called with a `null` argument, it will throw a `NullPointerException`. Do you need to add a check for `null` to the function? It depends on the function's intended use.

Let's try to rewrite this function in Kotlin. The first question you must answer is, do you expect the function to be called with a `null` argument? We mean not only the `null` literal directly, as in `strLen(null)`, but also any variable or other expression that may have the value `null` at runtime.

If you don't expect it to happen, you declare this function in Kotlin as follows:

```
fun strLen(s: String) = s.length
```

Calling `strLen` with an argument that may be `null` isn't allowed and will be flagged as error at compile time:

```
>>> strLen(null)
ERROR: Null can not be a value of a non-null type String
```

The parameter is declared as type `String`, and in Kotlin this means it must always contain a `String` instance. The compiler enforces that, so you can't pass an argument containing `null`. This gives you the guarantee that the `strLen` function will never throw a `NullPointerException` at runtime.

If you want to allow the use of this function with all arguments, including those that

can be `null`, you need to mark it explicitly by putting a question mark after the type name:

```
fun strLenSafe(s: String?) = ...
```

You can put a question mark after any type, to indicate that the values of this type can store `null` references: `String?`, `Int?`, `MyCustomType?`, and so on (see figure 6.1).

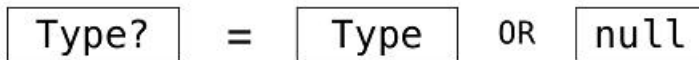


Figure 6.1 Nullable Type denotes that its values can store `null` reference

To reiterate, a type without a question mark denotes that variables of this type can't store `null` references. This means all regular types are `non-null` by default, unless explicitly marked as nullable.

Once you have a value of a nullable type, the set of operations you can perform on it is restricted. For example, you can no longer call methods on it:

```
>>> fun strLenSafe(s: String?) = s.length()
ERROR: only safe (?.) or non-null asserted (!!.) calls are allowed
on a nullable receiver of type kotlin.String?
```

You can't assign it to a variable of a `non-null` type:

```
>>> val x: String? = null
>>> var y: String = x
ERROR: Type mismatch: inferred type is String? but String was expected
```

You can't pass it as a parameter to a function expecting a `non-null` argument:

```
>>> strLen(x)
ERROR: Type mismatch: inferred type is String? but String was expected
```

So what can you do with it? The most important thing is to compare it with `null`. And once you perform the comparison, the compiler remembers that and treats the value as being `non-null` in the scope where the check has been performed. For example, this code is perfectly valid:

```
fun strLenSafe(s: String?): Int =
    if (s != null) s.length else 0

>>> val x: String? = null
>>> println(strLenSafe(x))
```

1

```
0
>>> println(strLenSafe("abc"))
3
```

- ❶ By adding the check for null, the code now compiles.

If using `if` checks was the only tool for tackling nullability, your code would become verbose fairly quickly. Fortunately, Kotlin provides a number of other tools to help deal with nullable values in a more concise manner. But before we look at those tools, let's spend some time discussing the meaning of nullability and what variable types are.

6.1.2 The meaning of types

Let's think about the most general questions: what are types, and why do variables have them? The Wikipedia article on types (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Data_type) gives a pretty good answer to what a type is: "A type is a classification... that determines the possible values for that type, and the operations that can be done on values of that type".

Let's try to apply this definition to some of the Java types, starting with the `double` type. As you know, a `double` is a 64-bit floating-point number. You can perform standard mathematical operations on these values. All of those functions are equally applicable to all values of type `double`.

Therefore, if we have a variable of type `double`, then we can be certain that any operation on its value allowed by the compiler will execute successfully.

Now let's contrast this with a variable of type `String`. In Java, such a variable can hold one of two kinds of values: an instance of the class `String` or `null`. Those kinds of values are completely unlike each other: even Java's own `instanceof` operator will tell you that `null` isn't a `String`. The operations that can be done on the value of the variable are also completely different: an actual `String` instance allows you to call any methods on the string, whereas a `null` value allows only a limited set of operations.

This means Java's type system isn't doing a good job in this case. Even though the variable has a declared type—`String`—you don't know what you can do with values of this variable unless you perform additional checks. Often, you skip those checks because you know from the general flow of data in your program that a value can't be `null` at a certain point. Sometimes you're wrong, and your program then crashes with a `NullPointerException`.

SIDEBAR**Other ways to cope with `NullPointerException` errors**

Java has some tools to help solve the problem of `NullPointerException`. For example, some people use annotations (such as `@Nullable` and `@NotNull`) to express the nullability of values. There are tools (for example, IntelliJ IDEA's built-in code inspections) that can use these annotations to detect places where a `NullPointerException` can be thrown. But such tools aren't part of the standard Java compilation process, so it's hard to ensure that they're applied consistently. It's also difficult to annotate the entire codebase, including the libraries used by the project, so that all possible error locations can be detected. Our own experience at JetBrains shows that even widespread use of nullability annotations in Java doesn't completely solve the problem of NPEs.

Another path to solving this problem is to never use `null` values in code and to use a special wrapper type, such as the `Optional` type introduced in Java 8, to represent values that may or may not be defined. This approach has several downsides: the code gets more verbose, the extra wrapper instances affect performance at runtime, and it's not used consistently across the entire ecosystem. Even if you do use `Optional` everywhere in your own code, you'll still need to deal with `null` values returned from methods of the JDK, the Android framework, and other third-party libraries.

Nullable types in Kotlin provide a comprehensive solution to this problem. Distinguishing nullable and non-`null` types provides a clear understanding of what operations are allowed on the value and what operations can lead to exceptions at runtime and are therefore forbidden.

NOTE**Note**

Objects of nullable or non-`null` types at runtime are the same; a nullable type isn't a wrapper for a non-`null` type. All checks are performed at compilation time. That means there's no runtime overhead for working with nullable types in Kotlin.

Now let's see how to work with nullable types in Kotlin and why dealing with them is by no means annoying. We'll start with the special operator for safely accessing a nullable value.

6.1.3 Safe call operator: `?.`

One of the most useful tools in Kotlin's arsenal is the *safe-call* operator: `?.` It allows you to combine a `null` check and a method call into a single operation. For example, the expression `s?.toUpperCase()` is equivalent to the following, more cumbersome one: `if (s != null) s.toUpperCase() else null`.

In other words, if the value on which you're trying to call the method isn't `null`, the

method call is executed normally. If it's `null`, the call is skipped, and `null` is used as the value instead. Figure 6.2 illustrates.

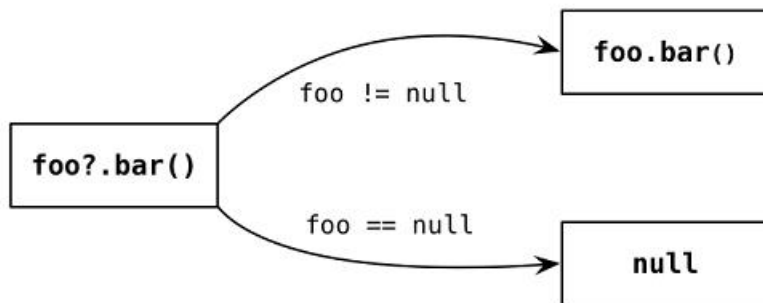


Figure 6.2 The safe-call operator calls methods only on non-null values.

Note that the result type of such an invocation is nullable. Although `String.toUpperCase` returns a value of type `String`, the result type of an expression `s?.toUpperCase()` when `s` is nullable will be `String?`:

```
fun printAllCaps(s: String?) {  
    val allCaps: String? = s?.toUpperCase() ❶  
    println(allCaps)  
}
```

```
>>> printAllCaps("abc")  
ABC  
>>> printAllCaps(null)  
null
```

❶ `allCaps` may be null.

Safe calls can be used for accessing properties as well, not just for method calls. The following quick example shows a simple Kotlin class with a nullable property and demonstrates the use of a safe-call operator for accessing that property.

```
class Employee(val name: String, val manager: Employee?)  
  
fun managerName(employee: Employee): String? = employee.manager?.name  
  
>>> val ceo = Employee("Da Boss", null)  
>>> val developer = Employee("Bob Smith", ceo)  
>>> println(managerName(developer))  
Da Boss  
>>> println(managerName(ceo))  
null
```

If you have an object graph in which multiple properties have nullable types, it's often convenient to use multiple safe calls in the same expression. Say you store information about a person, their company, and the address of the company using different classes. Both the company and its address may be omitted. With the `?.`

operator, you can access the `country` property for a `Person` in one line, without any additional checks:

```
class Address(val streetAddress: String, val zipCode: Int,
              val city: String, val country: String)

class Company(val name: String, val address: Address?)

class Person(val name: String, val company: Company?)

fun Person.countryName(): String {
    val country = this.company?.address?.country
    return if (country != null) country else "Unknown"
}

>>> val person = Person("Dmitry", null)
>>> println(person.countryName())
Unknown
```

1

1 Several safe-access operators can be in a chain.

Sequences of calls with `null` checks are a common sight in Java code, and you’ve now seen how Kotlin makes them more concise. But the previous example contains unnecessary repetition: you’re comparing a value to `null` and returning either that value or something else if it’s `null`. Let’s see if Kotlin can help get rid of that repetition.

6.1.4 Elvis operator: `?:`

Kotlin has a handy operator to provide default values instead of `null`. It’s called the *Elvis operator* (or the *null-coalescing operator*, if you prefer more serious-sounding names for things). It looks like this: `?:` (you can visualize it being Elvis if you turn your head sideways). Here’s how it’s used:

```
fun foo(s: String?) {
    val t: String = s ?: ""
}
```

1

1 If `"s"` is `null`, the result is an empty string.

The operator takes two values, and its result is the first value if it isn’t `null` or the second value if the first one is `null`. Figure 6.3 shows how it works.

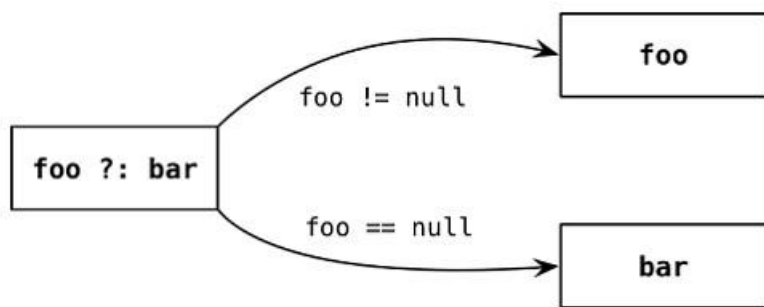


Figure 6.3 The Elvis operator substitutes a specified value for null.

The Elvis operator is often used together with the safe-call operator to substitute a value other than `null` when the object on which the method is called is `null`. Here's how you can use this pattern to simplify the `strLenSafe()` example:

```
fun strLenSafe(s: String?): Int = s?.length ?: 0

>>> println(strLenSafe("abc"))
3
>>> println(strLenSafe(null))
0
```

The `countryName` function from the previous section also fits on one line now:

```
fun Person.countryName() =
    company?.address?.country ?: "Unknown"
```

What makes the Elvis operator particularly handy in Kotlin is that operations such as `return` and `throw` work as expressions and therefore can be used on the operator's right side. In that case, if the value on the left side is `null`, the function will immediately return a value or throw an exception. This is helpful for checking preconditions in a function.

Let's see how you can use this operator to implement a function to print a shipping label with the person's company address. The following code repeats the declarations of all the classes—in Kotlin, they're so concise that it's not a problem:

```
class Address(val streetAddress: String, val zipCode: Int,
              val city: String, val country: String)

class Company(val name: String, val address: Address?)

class Person(val name: String, val company: Company?)

fun printShippingLabel(person: Person) {
    val address = person.company?.address
    ?: throw IllegalArgumentException("No address")
    with (address) {
        println(streetAddress)
        println("$zipCode $city, $country")
    }
}
```

1

2

```

}

>>> val address = Address("Elsestr. 47", 80687, "Munich", "Germany")
>>> val jetbrains = Company("JetBrains", address)
>>> val person = Person("Dmitry", jetbrains)

>>> printShippingLabel(person)
Elsestr. 47
80687 Munich, Germany

>>> printShippingLabel(Person("Alexey", null))
java.lang.IllegalArgumentException: No address

```

- ❶ Throws an exception if the address is absent
- ❷ "address" is not-null.

The function `printShippingLabel` prints a label if everything is correct. If there's no address, it doesn't just throw a `NullPointerException` with a line number, but instead reports a meaningful error. If an address is present, the label consists of the street address, the ZIP code, the city, and the country. Note how the `with` function, which you saw in the previous chapter, is used to avoid repeating `address` four times in a row.

Now that you've seen the Kotlin way to perform "if not-null" checks, let's talk about the Kotlin safe version of `instanceof` checks: the *safe-cast operator* that often appears together with safe calls and Elvis operators.

6.1.5 Safe casts: `as?`

In chapter 2, you saw the regular Kotlin operator for type casts: the `as` operator. Just like a regular Java type cast, `as` throws a `ClassCastException` if the value doesn't have the type you're trying to cast it to. Of course, you can combine it with an `is` check to ensure that it does have the proper type. But as a safe and concise language, doesn't Kotlin provide a better solution? Indeed it does.

The `as?` operator tries to cast a value to the specified type and returns `null` if the value doesn't have the proper type. Figure 6.4 illustrates this.

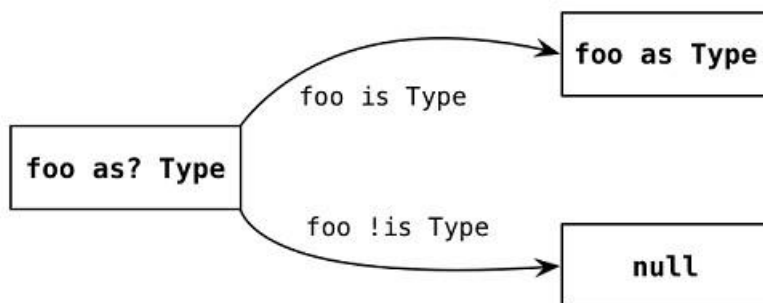


Figure 6.4 The safe-cast operator tries to cast a value to the given type and returns `null` if the type differs.

One common pattern of using a safe cast is combining it with the Elvis operator. For example, this comes in handy for implementing the `equals()` method:

```
class Person(val firstName: String, val lastName: String)
{ override fun equals(o: Any?): Boolean {
    val otherPerson = o as? Person ?: return false ❶

    return otherPerson.firstName == firstName && ❷
           otherPerson.lastName == lastName
}

override fun hashCode(): Int =
    firstName.hashCode() * 37 + lastName.hashCode()
}

>>> val p1 = Person("Dmitry", "Jemerov")
>>> val p2 = Person("Dmitry", "Jemerov")
>>> println(p1 == p2) ❸
true
>>> println(p1.equals(42))
false
```

- ❶ Checks the type and returns false if no match
- ❷ After the safe cast, the variable `otherPerson` is smart-cast to the `Person` type.
- ❸ The `==` operator calls the `equals()` method.

With this pattern, you can easily check whether the parameter has a proper type, cast it, and return `false` if the type isn't right—all in the same expression. Of course, smart casts also apply in this context: after you've checked the type and rejected `null` values, the compiler knows that the type of the `otherPerson` variable's value is `Person` and lets you use it accordingly.

The safe-call, safe-cast, and Elvis operators are useful and appear often in Kotlin code. But sometimes you don't need Kotlin's support in handling `null`'s; you just need to tell it that the value is in fact not `null`. Let's see how you can achieve that.

6.1.6 Not-null assertions: **!!**

The *not-null assertion* is the simplest and bluntest tool Kotlin gives you for dealing with a value of a nullable type. It's represented by a double exclamation mark and converts any value to a non-null type. For `null` values, an exception is thrown. The logic is illustrated in figure 6.5.

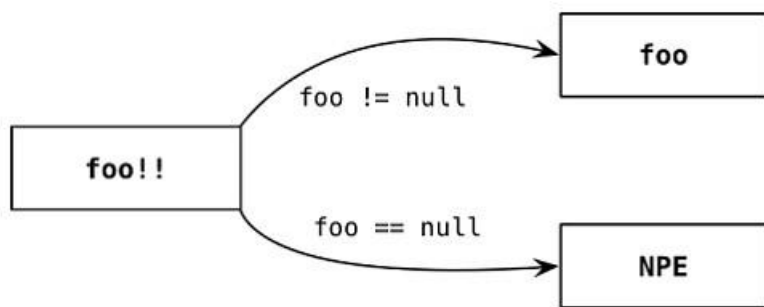


Figure 6.5 By using a not-null assertion, you can explicitly throw an exception if the value is null.

Here's a trivial example of a function that uses the assertion to convert a nullable argument to a non-null one:

```
fun ignoreNulls(s: String?) {  
    val sNotNull: String = s!!  
    println(sNotNull.length)  
}  
  
>>> ignoreNulls(null)  
Exception in thread "main" kotlin.KotlinNullPointerException  
    at <...>.ignoreNulls(07_NotnullAssertions.kt:2)
```

❶ The exception that follows points to this line.

What happens if `s` is `null` in this function? Kotlin doesn't have much choice: it will throw an exception (a special kind of `NullPointerException`) at runtime. But note that the place where the exception is thrown is the assertion itself, not a subsequent line where you're trying to use the value. Essentially, you're telling the compiler, "I know the value isn't `null`, and I'm ready for an exception if it turns out I'm wrong."

NOTE

Note

You may notice that the double exclamation mark looks a bit rude: it's almost like you're yelling at the compiler. This is intentional. The designers of Kotlin are trying to nudge you toward a better solution that doesn't involve making assertions that can't be verified by the compiler.

But there are situations when `not-null` assertions are the appropriate solution for a problem. When you check for `null` in one function and use the value in another function, the compiler can't recognize that the value is safe. If you're certain the check is always performed in another function, you may not want to duplicate it before using the value; then you can use a `not-null` assertion instead.

This happens in practice with action classes, which appear in many UI frameworks such as Swing. In an action class, there are separate methods for updating the state of an

action (to enable or disable it) and for executing it. The checks performed in the update method ensure that the execute method won't be called if the conditions aren't met, but there's no way for the compiler to recognize that.

Let's look at an example of a Swing action that uses a not-null assertion in this situation. The action `CopyRowAction` is supposed to copy the value of the selected row in a list to the clipboard. We omit all the unnecessary details, keeping only the code responsible for checking whether any row was selected (and therefore the action can be performed) and for obtaining the value for the selected row. The Action API implies that the `actionPerformed` is called only when `isEnabled` is `true`.

```
class CopyRowAction(val list: JList<String>) : AbstractAction()
{ override fun isEnabled(): Boolean =
    list.selectedValue != null

    override fun actionPerformed(e: ActionEvent) ❶
    { val value = list.selectedValue!!
      // copy value to clipboard
    }
}
```

❶ `actionPerformed` is called only if `isEnabled` returns "true".

Note that if you don't want to use `!!` in this case, you can write `val value = list.selectedValue ?: return` to obtain a value of a non-null type. If you use that pattern, a nullable value of `list.selectedValue` will cause an early return from the function, so `value` will always be non-null. Although the not-null check using the Elvis operator is redundant here, it may be a good protection against `isEnabled` becoming more complicated later.

There's one more caveat to keep in mind: when you use `!!` and it results in an exception, the stack trace identifies the line number in which the exception was thrown but not a specific expression. To make it clear exactly which value was `null`, it's best to avoid using multiple `!!` assertions on the same line:

```
person.company!!.address!!.country ❶
```

❶ Don't write code like this!

If you get an exception in this line, you won't be able to tell whether it was `company` or `address` that held a `null` value.

So far, we've discussed mostly how to *access* the values of nullable types. But what should you do if you need to pass a nullable value as an argument to a function that

expects a `non-null` value? The compiler doesn't allow you to do that without a check, because doing so is unsafe. The Kotlin language doesn't have any special support for this case, but there's a standard library function that can help you: it's called `let`.

6.1.7 The `let` function

The `let` function makes it easier to deal with a nullable argument that should be passed to a function that expects a `non-null` parameter. Let's say the function `sendEmailTo` takes one parameter of type `String` and sends an email to that address. This function is written in Kotlin and requires a `non-null` parameter:

```
fun sendEmailTo(email: String) { /*...*/ }
```

You can't pass a value of a nullable type to this function:

```
>>> val email: String? = ...
>>> sendEmailTo(email)
ERROR: Type mismatch: inferred type is String? but String was expected
```

You have to check explicitly whether this value isn't `null`:

```
if (email != null) sendEmailTo(email)
```

But you can go another way: use the `let` function, and call it via a safe call. All the `let` function does is turn the object on which it's called into a parameter of the lambda. If you combine it with the safe call syntax, it effectively converts an object of a nullable type on which you call `let` into a `non-null` type (see figure 6.6).

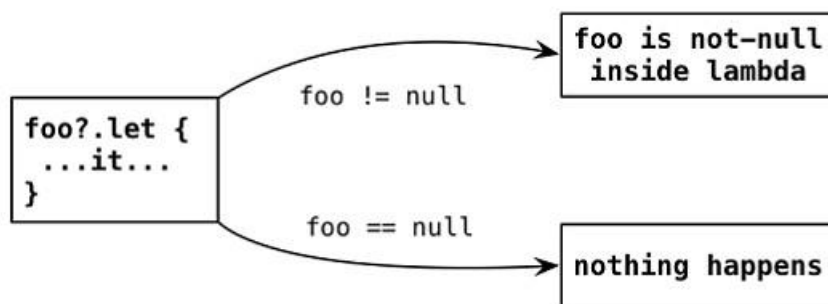


Figure 6.6 Safe-calling 'let' executes a lambda only if an expression isn't `null`.

The `let` function will be called only if the email value is `non-null`, so you use the email as a `non-null` argument of the lambda:

```
email?.let { email -> sendEmailTo(email) }
```

After using the short syntax, the autogenerated name `it`, the result is much shorter: `email?.let { sendEmailTo(it) }`. Here's a more complete example that shows this pattern:

```
fun sendEmailTo(email: String)
    { println("Sending email to
      $email")
}

>>> var email: String? = "yole@example.com"
>>> email?.let { sendEmailTo(it) }
Sending email to yole@example.com
>>> email = null
>>> email?.let { sendEmailTo(it) }
```

Note that the `let` notation is especially convenient when you have to use the value of a longer expression if it's not `null`. You don't have to create a separate variable in this case. Compare an explicit `if` check

```
val person: Person? = getTheBestPersonInTheWorld()
if (person != null) sendEmailTo(person.email)
```

to the same code without an extra variable:

```
getTheBestPersonInTheWorld()?.let { sendEmailTo(it.email) }
```

This function returns `null`, so the code in the lambda will never be executed:

```
fun getTheBestPersonInTheWorld(): Person? = null
```

When you need to check multiple values for `null`, you can use nested `let` calls to handle them. But in most cases, such code ends up fairly verbose and hard to follow. It's generally easier to use a regular `if` statement to check all the values together.

One other common situation is properties that are effectively `non-null` but can't be initialized with a `non-null` value in the constructor. Let's see how Kotlin allows you to deal with that situation.

6.1.8 *Late-initialized properties*

Many frameworks initialize objects in dedicated methods called after the object instance has been created. For example, in Android, the activity initialization happens in the `onCreate` method. JUnit requires you to put initialization logic in methods annotated with `@Before`.

But you can't leave a `non-null` property without an initializer in the constructor and only initialize it in a special method. Kotlin normally requires you to initialize all

properties in the constructor, and if a property has a non-null type, you have to provide a non-null initializer value. If you can't provide that value, you have to use a nullable type instead. If you do that, every access to the property requires either a `null` check or the `!!` operator:

```
class MyService {
    fun performAction(): String = "foo"
}

class MyTest {
    private var myService: MyService? = null

    @Before fun setUp() {
        myService =
            MyService()
    }

    @Test fun testAction() {
        Assert.assertEquals("foo",
            myService!!.performAction())
    }
}
```

- 1 Declares a property of a nullable type to initialize it with null
- 2 Provides a real initializer in the `setUp` method
- 3 You have to take care of nullability: use `!!` or `?`.

This looks ugly, especially if you access the property many times. To solve this, you can declare the `myService` property as *late-initialized*. This is done by applying the `lateinit` modifier:

```
class MyService {
    fun performAction(): String = "foo"
}

class MyTest {
    private lateinit var myService: MyService

    @Before fun setUp() {
        myService =
            MyService()
    }

    @Test fun testAction() {
        Assert.assertEquals("foo",
            myService.performAction())
    }
}
```

- 1 Declares a property of a non-null type without an initializer
- 2 Initializes the property in the `setUp` method as before

3 Accesses the property without extra null checks

Note that a late-initialized property is always a `var`, because you need to be able to change its value outside of the constructor. But you no longer need to initialize it in a constructor, even though the property has a non-`null` type. If you access the property before it's been initialized, you get an exception "lateinit property `myService` has not been initialized". It clearly identifies what has happened and is much easier to understand than a generic `NullPointerException`.

NOTE

Note

A common use case for `lateinit` properties is dependency injection. In that scenario, the values of `lateinit` properties are set externally by a dependency-injection framework. To ensure compatibility with a broad range of Java frameworks, Kotlin generates a field with the same visibility as the `lateinit` property. If the property is declared as `public`, the field will be `public` as well.

Now let's look at how you can extend Kotlin's set of tools for dealing with `null` values by defining extension functions for nullable types.

6.1.9 Extensions on nullable types

Defining extension functions for nullable types is one more powerful way to deal with `null` values. Rather than ensuring that a variable can't be `null` before a method call, you can allow the calls with `null` as a receiver, and deal with `null` in the function. This is only possible for extension functions; regular method calls are dispatched through the object instance and therefore can never be performed when the instance is `null`.

As an example, consider the functions `isEmpty` and `isBlank`, defined as extensions of `String` in the Kotlin standard library. The first one checks whether the string is an empty string "", and the second one checks whether it's empty or if it consists solely of whitespace characters. You'll generally use these functions to check that the string is non-trivial in order to do something meaningful with it. You may think it would be useful to interpret `null` together with trivial empty or blank strings. And, indeed, you can do so: the functions `isEmptyOrNull` and `isBlankOrNull` can be called with a receiver of type `String?`:

```
fun verifyUserInput(input: String?)
{
    if (input.isNullOrEmpty()) {
        println("Please fill in the required fields")
    }
}

>>> verifyUserInput(" ")
Please fill in the required fields
```

1

```
>>> verifyUserInput(null)
Please fill in the required fields
```

2

- 1 No safe call is needed.
- 2 No exception happens when you call `isNullOrBlank` with "null" as a receiver.

As you can see, you can call an extension function that was declared on a nullable receiver without safe access (see figure 6.7). The function handles possible 'null's itself.

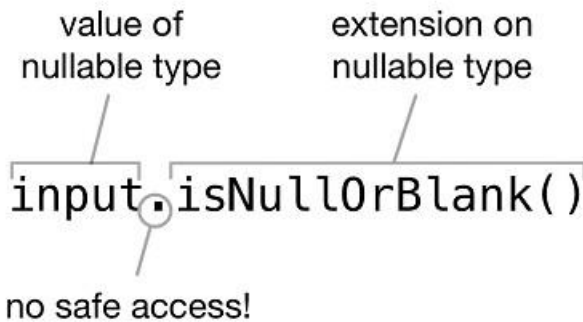


Figure 6.7 Extensions of nullable types can be accessed without a safe call.

The function `isNullOrBlank` checks explicitly for `null`, returning `true` in this case, and then calls `isBlank`, which can be called on a non-null `String` only:

```
fun String?.isNullOrBlank(): Boolean =
    this == null || this.isBlank()
```

1

2

- 1 Extension of a nullable `String`
- 2 The second "this" is a smart cast.

When you declare an extension function for a nullable type (ending with `?`), that means you can call this function on nullable values; and `this` in a function body can be `null`, so you have to check for that explicitly. In Java, `this` is always not-null, because it references the instance of a class you're in. In Kotlin, that's no longer the case: in an extension function of a nullable type, `this` can be `null`.

Note that the `let` function we discussed earlier can be called on a nullable receiver as well, but it doesn't check the value for `null`. If you invoke it on a nullable type without using the safe-call operator, the lambda argument will also be nullable:

```
>>> val person: Person? = ...
>>> person.let { sendEmailTo(it) }
ERROR: Type mismatch: inferred type is Person? but Person was expected
```

1

- ❶ No safe call, so "it" has a nullable type

Therefore, if you want to check the arguments for being non-null with `let`, you have to use the safe-call operator `?.`, as you saw earlier: `person?.let { sendEmailTo(it) }`.

NOTE

Note

When you define your own extension function, you need to consider whether you should define it as an extension of a nullable type. By default, define it as an extension of a non-null type. You can safely change it later (no code will be broken) if it turns out it's used mostly on nullable values, and the `null` value can be reasonably handled.

This section showed you something unexpected. If you dereference a variable without an extra check, as in `s.isNullOrBlank()`, it doesn't immediately mean the variable is non-null: the function can be an extension of a nullable type. Next, let's discuss another case that may surprise you: a type parameter can be nullable even without a question mark at the end.

6.1.10 Nullability of type parameters

By default, all type parameters of functions and classes in Kotlin are nullable. A type parameter can be substituted for any type, including a nullable type; in this case, declarations using the type parameter as a type are allowed to be `null`, even though the type parameter `T` doesn't end with a question mark. Consider the following example:

```
fun <T> printHashCode(t: T)
    { println(t?.hashCode()) }
>>> printHashCode(null)
null
```

❶

❷

- ❶ You have to use a safe call because "t" might be null.
- ❷ "T" is inferred as "Any?".

In the `printHashCode` call, the inferred type for the type parameter `T` is a nullable type, `Any?`. Therefore, the parameter `t` is allowed to hold `null`, even without a question mark after `T`.

To make the type parameter non-null, you need to specify a non-null upper bound for it. That will reject a nullable value as an argument:

```

fun <T: Any> printHashCode(t: T)
{ println(t.hashCode())
}

>>> printHashCode(null)
Error: Type parameter bound for `T` is not satisfied
>>> printHashCode(42)
42

```

- ❶ Now "T" can't be nullable.
- ❷ This code doesn't compile: you can't pass null because a non-null value is expected.

Chapter 9 will cover generics in Kotlin, and section 9.1.4 will cover this topic in more detail.

Note that type parameters are the only exception to the rule that a question mark at the end is required to mark a type as nullable, and types without a question mark are non-null. The next section shows another special case of nullability: types that come from the Java code.

6.1.11 Nullability and Java

The previous discussion covered the tools for working with null's in the Kotlin world. But Kotlin prides itself on its Java interoperability, and you know that Java doesn't support nullability in its type system. So what happens when you combine Kotlin and Java? Do you lose all safety, or do you have to check every value for `null`? Or is there a better solution? Let's find out.

First, as we mentioned, sometimes Java code contains information about nullability, expressed using annotations. When this information is present in the code, Kotlin uses it. Thus `@Nullable String` in Java is seen as `String?` by Kotlin, and `@NotNull String` is just `String` (see figure 6.8)

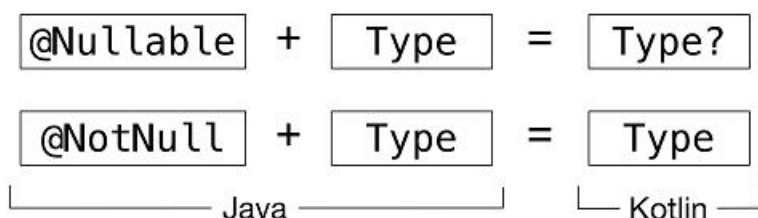


Figure 6.8 Annotated Java types are represented as nullable and non-null types in Kotlin, according to the annotations.

Kotlin recognizes many different flavors of nullability annotations, including those from the JSR-305 standard (in the `javax.annotation` package), the Android ones (

`android.support.annotation`), and those supported by JetBrains tools (`org.jetbrains.annotations`). The interesting question is what happens when annotations aren't present. In that case, the Java type becomes a *platform type* in Kotlin.

PLATFORM TYPES

A platform type is essentially a type for which Kotlin doesn't have nullability information; you can work with it as either a nullable or a non-`null` type (see figure 6.9). This means, just as in Java, you have full responsibility for the operations you perform with that type. The compiler will allow all operations. It also won't highlight as redundant any `null`-safe operations on such values, which it normally does when you perform a `null`-safe operation on a value of a non-`null` type. If you know the value can be `null`, you can compare it with `null` before use. If you know it's not `null`, you can use it directly. Just as in Java, you'll get a `NullPointerException` at the usage site if you get this wrong.

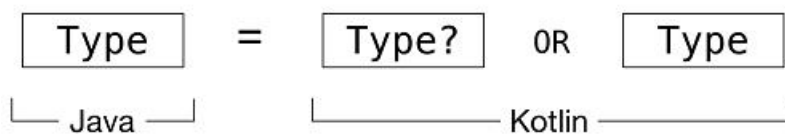


Figure 6.9 Java types are represented in Kotlin as platform types, which you can use either as a nullable type or as a non-null type.

Let's say the class `Person` is declared in Java:

```
/* Java */
public class Person {
    private final String name;

    public Person(String name)
    { this.name = name;
    }

    public String getName()
    { return name;
    }
}
```

Can `getName` return `null` or not? The Kotlin compiler knows nothing about nullability of the `String` type in this case, so you have to deal with it yourself. If you're sure the name isn't `null`, you can dereference it in a usual way, as in Java, without additional checks. But be ready to get an exception in this case:

```
fun yellAt(person: Person)
{ println(person.name.toUpperCase() +
    "!!!")
}
```

```
java.lang.IllegalArgumentException: Parameter specified as non-null  
is null: method toUpperCase, parameter $receiver
```

- ❶ The receiver `person.name` of the `toUpperCase()` call is null, so an exception is thrown.

Note that instead of a plain `NullPointerException`, you get a more detailed error message that the method `toUpperCase` can't be called on a null receiver.

In fact, for public Kotlin functions, the compiler generates checks for every parameter (and a receiver as well) that has a `non-null` type, so that attempts to call such a function with incorrect parameters are immediately reported as exceptions. Note that the value-checking is performed right away when the method is called, not when the parameter is used. This ensures that incorrect calls are detected early and won't cause hard-to-understand exceptions if the `null` value is accessed after being passed around between multiple methods in different layers of the codebase.

Your other option is to interpret the return type of `getName()` as nullable and access it safely:

```
fun yellAtSafe(person: Person) {  
    println((person.name ?: "Anyone").toUpperCase() + "!!!")  
}  
  
>>> yellAtSafe(Person(null))  
ANYONE!!!
```

In this example, `null`'s are handled properly, and no runtime exception is thrown.

Be careful while working with Java APIs. Most of the libraries aren't annotated, so you may interpret all the types as `non-null`, but that can lead to errors. To avoid errors, you should check the documentation (and, if needed, the implementation) of the Java methods you're using to find out when they can return `null`, and add checks for those methods.

SIDEBAR

Why platform types?

Wouldn't it be safer for Kotlin to treat all values coming from Java as nullable? Such a design would be possible, but it would require a large number of redundant `null` checks for values that can never be `null`, because the Kotlin compiler wouldn't be able to see that information.

The situation would be especially bad with generics—for example, every `ArrayList<String>` coming from Java would be an `ArrayList<String?>` in Kotlin, and you'd need to check values for `null` on every access or use a cast, which would defeat the safety benefits. Writing such checks is extremely annoying, so the designers of Kotlin went with the pragmatic option and allowed the developers to take responsibility for correctly handling values coming from Java.

You can't declare a variable of a platform type in Kotlin; these types can only come from Java code. But you may see them in error messages:

```
>>> val i: Int = person.name
ERROR: Type mismatch: inferred type is String! but Int was expected
```

The `String!` notation is how the Kotlin compiler denotes platform types coming from Java code. You can't use this syntax in your own code, and usually this exclamation mark isn't connected with the source of a problem, so you can usually ignore it. It just emphasizes that the nullability of the type is unknown.

As we said already, you may interpret platform types any way you like—as nullable or as non-`null`—so both of the following declarations are valid:

```
>>> val s: String? = person.name
>>> val s1: String = person.name
```

1
2

- 1 Java's property can be seen as nullable...
- 2 ...or non-null.

In this case, just as with the method calls, you need to make sure you get the nullability right. If you try to assign a `null` value coming from Java to a non-`null` Kotlin variable, you'll get an exception at the point of assignment.

We've discussed how Java types are seen from Kotlin. Let's now talk about some pitfalls of creating mixed Kotlin and Java hierarchies.

INHERITANCE

When overriding a Java method in Kotlin, you have a choice whether to declare the parameters and the return type as nullable or non-`null`. For example, let's look at a `StringProcessor` interface in Java:

```
/* Java */
interface StringProcessor
{ void process(String
  value);
}
```

In Kotlin, both of the following implementations will be accepted by the compiler:

```
class StringPrinter : StringProcessor
{ override fun process(value: String)
{
    println(value)
}
}

class NullableStringPrinter : StringProcessor
{ override fun process(value: String?) {
    if (value != null)
    { println(value)
    }
}
}
```

Note that it's important to get nullability right when implementing methods from Java classes or interfaces. Because the implementation methods can be called from non-Kotlin code, the Kotlin compiler will generate non-`null` assertions for every parameter that you declare with a non-`null` type. If the Java code does pass a `null` value to the method, the assertion will trigger, and you'll get an exception, even if you never access the parameter value in your implementation.

Let's summarize our discussion of nullability. We've discussed nullable and non-`null` types and the means of working with them: operators for safe operations (safe call `?.`, Elvis operator `?:`, and safe cast `as?`), as well as the operator for unsafe dereference (the not-`null` assertion `!!`). You've seen how the library function `let` can help you accomplish concise non-`null` checks and how extensions of nullable types can help move a not-`null` check into a function. We've also discussed platform types that represent Java types in Kotlin.

Now that we've covered the topic of nullability, let's talk about how the primitive types are represented in Kotlin. This knowledge of nullability will be important for understanding how Kotlin handles Java's boxed types.

6.2 Primitive and other basic types

This section describes the basic types used in programs, such as `Int`, `Boolean`, and `Any`. Unlike Java, Kotlin doesn't differentiate primitive types and wrappers. You'll shortly learn why, and how it works under the hood. You'll see the correspondence between Kotlin types and such Java types as `Object` and `Void`, as well.

6.2.1 Primitive types: *Int*, *Boolean*, and more

As you know, Java makes a distinction between primitive types and reference types. A variable of a *primitive type* (such as `int`) holds its value directly. A variable of a *reference type* (such as `String`) holds a reference to the memory location containing the object.

Values of primitive types can be stored and passed around more efficiently, but you can't call methods on such values or store them in collections. Java provides special wrapper types (such as `java.lang.Integer`) that encapsulate primitive types in situations when an object is needed. Thus, to define a collection of integers, you can't say `Collection<int>`; you have to use `Collection<Integer>` instead.

Kotlin doesn't distinguish between primitive types and wrapper types. You always use the same type (for example, `Int`):

```
val i: Int = 1
val list: List<Int> = listOf(1, 2, 3)
```

That's convenient. What's more, you can call methods on values of a number type. For example, consider this snippet, which uses the `coerceIn` standard library function to restrict the value to the specified range:

```
fun showProgress(progress: Int) {
    val percent = progress.coerceIn(0, 100)
    println("We're ${percent}% done!")
}

>>> showProgress(146)
We're 100% done!
```

If primitive and reference types are the same, does that mean Kotlin represents all numbers as objects? Wouldn't that be terribly inefficient? Indeed it would, so Kotlin doesn't do that.

At runtime, the number types are represented in the most efficient way possible.

In most cases - for variables, properties, parameter and return types - Kotlin's `Int` type is compiled to the Java primitive type `int`. The only case where this is not possible is generic classes such as collections. A primitive type used as a type argument of a generic class will be compiled to the corresponding Java wrapper type.

For example, if the `Int` type is used as a type argument of the collection, then the collection will store instances of `java.lang.Integer`, the corresponding wrapper type.

The full list of types that correspond to Java primitive types is as follows:

- Integer types—`Byte`, `Short`, `Int`, `Long`
- Floating-point number types—`Float`, `Double`
- The character type—`Char`
- The boolean type—`Boolean`

The Kotlin `Int` type can be easily compiled under the hood to the corresponding Java primitive type, because the values of both types can't store the `null` reference. Now let's discuss the nullable versions of the same types.

6.2.2 Nullable primitive types: *Int?*, *Boolean?*, and more

Nullable types in Kotlin can't be represented by Java primitive types, because `null` can only be stored in a variable of a Java reference type. That means whenever you use a nullable version of a primitive type in Kotlin, it's compiled to the corresponding wrapper type.

To see the nullable types in use, let's go back to the opening example of the book and recall the `Person` class declared there. The class represents a person whose name is always known and whose age can be either known or unspecified. Let's add a function that checks whether one person is older than another, as shown here:

```
data class Person(val name: String,
                  val age: Int? = null) {

    fun isOlderThan(other: Person): Boolean? {
        if (age == null || other.age == null)
            return null
        return age > other.age
    }
}

>>> println(Person("Sam", 35).isOlderThan(Person("Amy", 42)))
false
>>> println(Person("Sam", 35).isOlderThan(Person("Jane")))
null
```

Note how the regular nullability rules apply here. You can't just compare two values of type `Int?`, because one of them may be `null`. Instead, you have to check that both values aren't `null`. After that, the compiler allows you to work with them normally.

The value of the `age` property declared in the class `Person` is stored as a `java.lang.Integer`. But this detail only matters if you're working with the class from Java. To choose the right type in Kotlin, you only need to consider whether `null` is a possible value for the variable or property.

As mentioned earlier, generic classes are another case when wrapper types come into

play. If you use a primitive type as a type parameter of a class, Kotlin uses the boxed representation of the type. For example, this creates a list of boxed `Integer`'s, even though you've never specified a nullable type or used a `null` value:

```
val listOfInts = listOf(1, 2, 3)
```

This happens because of the way generics are implemented on the Java virtual machine. The JVM doesn't support using a primitive type as a type parameter, so a generic class (both in Java and in Kotlin) must always use a boxed representation of the type. As a consequence, if you need to efficiently store large collections of primitive types, you need to either use a third-party library (such as Trove4J, <http://trove.starlight-systems.com>) that provides support for such collections or store them in arrays. We'll discuss arrays in detail at the end of this chapter.

Now let's look at how you can convert values between different primitive types.

6.2.3 Number conversions

One important difference between Kotlin and Java is the way they handle numeric conversions. Kotlin doesn't automatically convert numbers from one type to the other, even when the other type is larger. For example, the following code won't compile in Kotlin:

```
val i = 1
val l: Long = i
```

❶

❶ Error: type mismatch

Instead, you need to apply the conversion explicitly:

```
val i = 1
val l: Long = i.toLong()
```

Conversion functions are defined for every primitive type (except `Boolean`): `toByte()`, `toShort()`, `toChar()` and so on. The functions support converting in both directions: extending a smaller type to a larger one, like `Int.toLong()`, and truncating a larger type to a smaller one, like `Long.toInt()`.

Kotlin makes the conversion explicit in order to avoid surprises, especially when comparing boxed values. The `equals` method for two boxed values checks the box type, not just the value stored in it. Thus, in Java, `new Integer(42).equals(new Long(42))` returns `false`. If Kotlin supported implicit conversions, you could write something like this:

```
val x = 1
val list = listOf(1L, 2L, 3L)
x in list
```

1
2
3

- 1 Int variable
- 2 List of Long values
- 3 False if Kotlin supported implicit conversions

This would evaluate to `false`, contrary to everyone's expectations. Thus the line `x in list` from this example doesn't compile. Kotlin requires you to convert the types explicitly so that only values of the same type are compared:

```
>>> val x = 1
>>> println(x.toLong() in listOf(1L, 2L, 3L))
true
```

If you use different number types in your code at the same time, you have to convert variables explicitly to avoid unexpected behavior.

SIDEBAR

Primitive type literals

Kotlin supports the following ways to write number literals in source code, in addition to simple decimal numbers:

- Literals of type `Long` use the `L` suffix: `123L`.
- Literals of type `Double` use the standard representation of floating-point numbers: `0.12`, `2.0`, `1.2e10`, `1.2e-10`.
- Literals of type `Float` use the `'f'` or `F` suffix: `123.4f`, `.456F`, `1e3f`.
- *Hexadecimal literals* use the `0x` or `0X` prefix (such as `0xCAFEFABE` or `0xbcdL`).
- *Binary literals* use the `0b` or `0B` prefix (such as `0b000000101`).

Note that, unlike Java, Kotlin currently doesn't support underscores in number literals.

For character literals, you use mostly the same syntax as in Java. You write the character in single quotes, and you can also use escape sequences if you need to. The following are examples of valid Kotlin character literals: `'1'`, `'\t'` (the tab character), `'\u0009'` (the tab character represented using a Unicode escape sequence).

Note that, when you're writing a number literal, you usually don't need to use conversion functions. One possibility is to use the special syntax to mark the type of the constant explicitly, like `42L` or `42.0f`. And even if you don't use it, the necessary

conversion is applied automatically if you use a number literal to initialize a variable of a known type, or pass it as a parameter to a method. Also arithmetic operators are overloaded to accept all appropriate numeric types.

For example, the following code works correctly without any explicit conversions:

```
fun foo(l: Long) = println(l)

>>> val b: Byte = 1
>>> val l = b + 1L
>>> foo(42)
42
```

- 1 Constant value gets the correct type
- 2 + works with Byte and Long arguments.
- 3 The compiler interprets 42 as a Long value.

SIDEBAR

Conversion from String

The Kotlin standard library provides a similar set of extension functions to convert a string into a primitive type (`toInt`, `toByte`, `toBoolean`, and so on):

```
>>> println("42".toInt())
42
```

Each of these functions tries to parse the contents of the string as the corresponding type and throws a `NumberFormatException` if the parsing fails.

Before we move on to other types, there are three more special types we need to mention: `Any`, `Unit`, and `Nothing`

6.2.4 Any and Any?: the root types

Similar to how `Object` is the root of the class hierarchy in Java, the `Any` type is the supertype of all non-nullable types in Kotlin. But in Java, `Object` is a supertype of all reference types only, and primitive types aren't part of the hierarchy. That means you have to use wrapper types such as `java.lang.Integer` whenever `Object` is required. In Kotlin, `Any` is a supertype of all types, including the primitive types such as `Int`.

Just as in Java, assigning a value of a primitive type to a variable of type `Any` performs automatic boxing:

```
val answer: Any = 42
```

- 1 The value 42 is boxed, because `Any` is a reference type.

Note that `Any` is a non-nullable type, so a variable of the type `Any` can't hold the value `null`. If you need a variable that can hold any possible value in Kotlin, including `null`, you must use the `Any?` type.

Under the hood, the `Any` type corresponds to `java.lang.Object`. The `Object` type used in parameters and return types of Java methods is seen as `Any` in Kotlin. (More specifically, it's viewed as a platform type, because its nullability is unknown.) When a Kotlin method uses `Any`, it's compiled to `Object` in the Java bytecode.

As you saw in chapter 4, all Kotlin classes have the following three methods: `toString()`, `equals()`, and `hashCode()`. These methods are inherited from `Any`. Other methods defined on `java.lang.Object` (such as `wait` and `notify`) aren't available on `Any`, but you can call them if you manually cast the value to `java.lang.Object`.

6.2.5 The Unit type: Kotlin's "void"

The `Unit` type in Kotlin fulfills the same function as `void` in Java. It can be used as a return type of a function that has nothing interesting to return:

```
fun f(): Unit { ... }
```

Syntactically, it's the same as writing a function with a block body without a type declaration:

```
fun f() { ... }
```

❶

❶ Explicit `Unit` declaration is omitted

In most cases, you won't notice the difference between `void` and `Unit`. If your Kotlin function has the `Unit` return type and doesn't override a generic function, it's compiled to a good-old `void` function under the hood. If you override it from Java, the Java function just needs to return `void`.

What distinguishes Kotlin's `Unit` from Java's `void`, then? `Unit` is a full-fledged type, and, unlike `void`, it can be used as a type argument. Only one value of this type exists; it's also called `Unit` and is returned *implicitly*. This is useful when you override a function that returns a generic parameter and make it return a value of the `Unit` type:

```
interface Processor<T>
{ fun process(): T
}
```

```
class NoResultProcessor : Processor<Unit>
{ override fun process() {
```

❶

```
// do stuff
}
}
```

2

- 1 Returns `Unit`, but you omit the type specification
- 2 You don't need an explicit return here.

The signature of the interface requires the `process` function to return a value; and, because the `Unit` type does have a value, it's no problem to return it from the method. But you don't need to write an explicit `return` statement in `NoResultProcessor.process`, because `return Unit` is added implicitly by the compiler.

Contrast this with Java, where neither of the possibilities for solving the problem of using "no value" as a type argument is as nice as the Kotlin solution. One option is to use separate interfaces (such as `Callable` and `Runnable`) to represent interfaces that don't and do return a value. The other is to use the special `java.lang.Void` type as the type parameter. If you use the second option, you still need to put in an explicit `return null`; to return the only possible value matching that type, because if the return type isn't `void`, you must always have an explicit `return` statement.

You may wonder why we chose a different name for `Unit` and didn't call it `Void`. The name `Unit` is used traditionally in functional languages to mean "only one instance," and that's exactly what distinguishes Kotlin's `Unit` from Java's `void`. We could have used the customary `Void` name, but Kotlin has a type called `Nothing` that performs an entirely different function. Having two types called `Void` and `Nothing` would be confusing because the meanings are so close. So what's this `Nothing` type about? Let's find out.

6.2.6 The *Nothing* type: "This function never returns"

For some functions in Kotlin, the concept of a "return value" doesn't make sense because they never complete successfully. For example, many testing libraries have a function called `fail` that fails the current test by throwing an exception with a specified message. A function that has an infinite loop in it will also never complete successfully.

When analyzing code that calls such a function, it's useful to know that the function will never terminate normally. To express that, Kotlin uses a special return type called `Nothing`:

```
fun fail(message: String): Nothing
{ throw
  IllegalStateException(message)
}
```

```
>>> fail("Error occurred")
java.lang.IllegalStateException: Error occurred
```

The `Nothing` type doesn't have any values, so it only makes sense to use it as a function return type or as a type argument. In all other cases, declaring a variable where you can't store any value doesn't make sense.

Note that functions returning `Nothing` can be used on the right side of the Elvis operator to perform precondition checking:

```
val address = company.address ?: fail("No address")
println(address.city)
```

This example shows why having `Nothing` in the type system is extremely useful. The compiler knows that a function with this return type never terminates normally and uses that information when analyzing the code calling the function. In the previous example, the compiler infers that the type of `address` is non-null, because the branch handling the case when it's null always throws an exception.

We've finished our discussion of the basic types in Kotlin: primitive types, `Any`, `Unit`, and `Nothing`. Now let's look at the collection types and how they differ from their Java counterparts.

6.3 Collections and arrays

You've already seen many examples of code that uses various collection APIs, and you know that Kotlin builds on the Java collections library and augments it with features added through extension functions. There's more to the story of the collection support in Kotlin and the correspondence between Java and Kotlin collections, and now is a good time to look at the details.

6.3.1 Nullability and collections

Earlier in this chapter, we discussed the concept of nullable types, but we only briefly touched on nullability of type arguments. But this is essential for a consistent type system: it's no less important to know whether a collection can hold `null` values than to know whether the value of a variable can be `null`. The good news is that Kotlin fully supports nullability for type arguments. Just as the type of a variable can have a `?` character appended to indicate that the variable can hold `null`, a type used as a type argument can be marked in the same way.

To see how this works, let's look at an example of a function that reads a list of lines from a file and tries to parse each line as a number:

```
fun readNumbers(reader: BufferedReader): List<Int??> {
```



```

val result = ArrayList<Int?>()
for (line in reader.lineSequence())
{ try {
    val number = line.toInt()
    result.add(number)
}
catch(e: NumberFormatException) {
    result.add(null)
}
}
return result
}

```

- ❶ Creates a list of nullable Int values
- ❷ Adds an integer (a non-null value) to the list
- ❸ Adds null to the list, because the current line can't be parsed to an integer

As you can see, `List<Int?>` is a list that can hold values of type `Int?`: in other words, `Int` or `null`. You add an integer to the `result` list if the line can be parsed, or `null` otherwise. Note that since Kotlin 1.1, you can shrink this example by using the function `String.toIntOrNull`, which returns `null` if the string value can't be parsed.

Note how the nullability of the type of the variable itself is distinct from the nullability of the type used as a type argument. The difference between a list of nullable ints and a nullable list of ints is illustrated in figure 6.10.

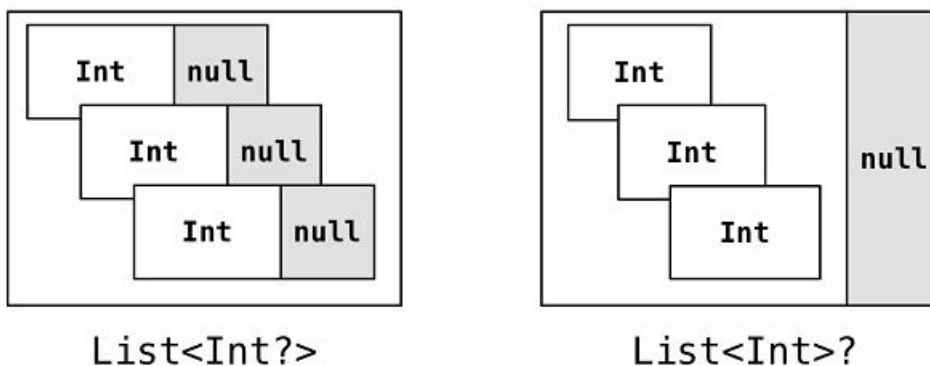


Figure 6.10 Be careful what you make nullable: the elements of the collection or the collection itself?

In the first case, the list itself is always not `null`, but each value in the list can be `null`. A variable of the second type may contain a `null` reference instead of a list instance, but the elements in the list are guaranteed to be non-`null`.

In another context, you may want to declare a variable that holds a nullable list of nullable numbers. The Kotlin way to write this is `List<Int??>`, with two question marks. You need to apply `null` checks both when using the value of the variable and when using the value of every element in the list.

To see how you can work with a list of nullable values, let's write a function to add all the valid numbers together and count the invalid numbers separately:

```
fun addValidNumbers(numbers: List<Int?>)
{
    var sumOfValidNumbers = 0
    var invalidNumbers = 0

    for (number in numbers) {
        if (number != null) {
            sumOfValidNumbers += number
        } else {
            invalidNumbers++
        }
    }
    println("Sum of valid numbers: $sumOfValidNumbers")
    println("Invalid numbers: $invalidNumbers")
}

>>> val reader = BufferedReader(StringReader("1\nabc\n42"))
>>> val numbers = readNumbers(reader)
>>> addValidNumbers(numbers)
Sum of valid numbers: 43
Invalid numbers: 1
```

- ❶ Reads a nullable value from the list
- ❷ Checks the value for null

There isn't much special going on here. When you access an element of the list, you get back a value of type `Int?`, and you need to check it for `null` before you can use it in arithmetical operations.

Taking a collection of nullable values and filtering out the null's is such a common operation that Kotlin provides a standard library function `filterNotNull` to perform it. Here's how you can use it to greatly simplify the previous example:

```
fun addValidNumbers(numbers: List<Int?>) {
    val validNumbers = numbers.filterNotNull()
    println("Sum of valid numbers: ${validNumbers.sum()}")
    println("Invalid numbers: ${numbers.size - validNumbers.size}")
}

>>> val reader = BufferedReader(StringReader("1\nabc\n42"))
>>> val numbers = readNumbers(reader)
>>> addValidNumbers(numbers)
Sum of valid numbers: 43
Invalid numbers: 1
```

Of course, the filtering also affects the type of the collection. The type of `validNumbers` is `List<Int>`, because the filtering ensures that the collection doesn't contain any null elements.

Now that you understand how Kotlin distinguishes between collections that hold

nullable and non-null elements, let's look at another major distinction introduced by Kotlin: read-only versus mutable collections.

6.3.2 Read-only and mutable collections

An important trait that sets apart Kotlin's collection design from Java's is that it separates interfaces for accessing the data in a collection and for modifying the data. This distinction exists starting with the most basic interface for working with collections, `kotlin.Collection`. Using this interface, you can iterate over the elements in a collection, obtain its size, check whether it contains a certain element, and perform other operations that read data from the collection. But this interface doesn't have any methods for adding or removing elements.

If you need to modify the data in the collection, you use the `kotlin.MutableCollection` interface. It extends the regular `kotlin.Collection` and provides methods for adding and removing the elements, clearing the collection, and so on (see figure 6.11).

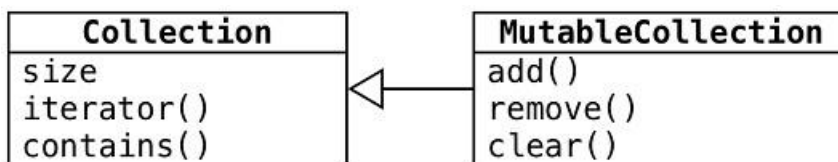


Figure 6.11 `MutableCollection` extends `Collection` and adds methods to modify a collection's contents.

As a general rule, you should use read-only interfaces everywhere in your code. Use the mutable variants only if the code will modify the collection.

Just like the separation between `val` and `var`, the separation between read-only and mutable interfaces for collections makes it much easier to understand what's happening with data in your program. If a function takes a parameter that is a `Collection` but not a `MutableCollection`, you know it's not going to modify the collection, but only read data from it. And if a function requires you to pass a `MutableCollection`, you can assume that it's going to modify the data. If you have a collection that's part of the internal state of your component, you may need to make a copy of that collection before passing it to such a function. (This pattern is usually called a *defensive copy*.)

For example, you can clearly see that the following `copyElements` function will modify the target collection but not the source collection:

```
fun <T> copyElements(source: Collection<T>,
                    target: MutableCollection<T>)
{
    for (item in source) {
        target.add(item)
    }
}
```

```
>>> val source: Collection<Int> = arrayListOf(3, 5, 7)
>>> val target: MutableCollection<Int> = arrayListOf(1)
>>> copyElements(source, target)
>>> println(target)
[1, 3, 5, 7]
```

- ❶ Loops over all items in the source collection
- ❷ Adds items to the mutable target collection

You can't pass a variable of a read-only collection type as the `target` argument, even if its value is in fact a mutable collection:

```
>>> val source: Collection<Int> = arrayListOf(3, 5, 7)
>>> val target: Collection<Int> = arrayListOf(1)
>>> copyElements(source, target)
Error: Type mismatch: inferred type is Collection<Int>
      but MutableCollection<Int> was expected
```

- ❶ Error on the "target" argument

A key thing to keep in mind when working with collection interfaces is that *read-only collections aren't necessarily immutable*.¹¹ If you're working with a variable that has a read-only interface type, this can be just one of the many references to the same collection. Other references can have a mutable interface type, as illustrated in figure 6.12.

Footnote 11 Immutable collections are planned to be added to the Kotlin standard library later.

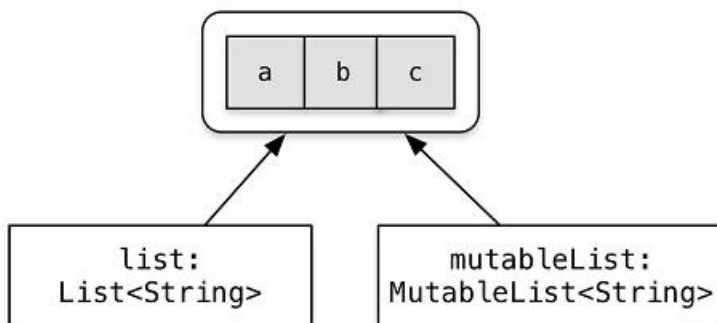


Figure 6.12 Two different references, one read-only and one mutable, pointing to the same collection object

If you call the code holding the other reference to your collection or run it in parallel, you can still come across situations where the collection is modified by other code while you're working with it, which leads to `ConcurrentModificationException` errors and other problems. Therefore, it's essential to understand that *read-only collections aren't always thread-safe*. If you're working with data in a multithreaded environment, you

need to ensure that your code properly synchronizes access to the data or uses data structures that support concurrent access.

How does the separation between read-only and mutable collections work? Didn't we say earlier that Kotlin collections are the same as Java collections? Isn't there a contradiction? Let's see what really happens here.

6.3.3 Kotlin collections and Java

It's true that every Kotlin collection is an instance of the corresponding Java collection interface. No conversion is involved when moving between Kotlin and Java; there's no need for wrappers or copying data. But every Java collection interface has two *representations* in Kotlin: a read-only one and a mutable one, as you can see in figure 6.13.

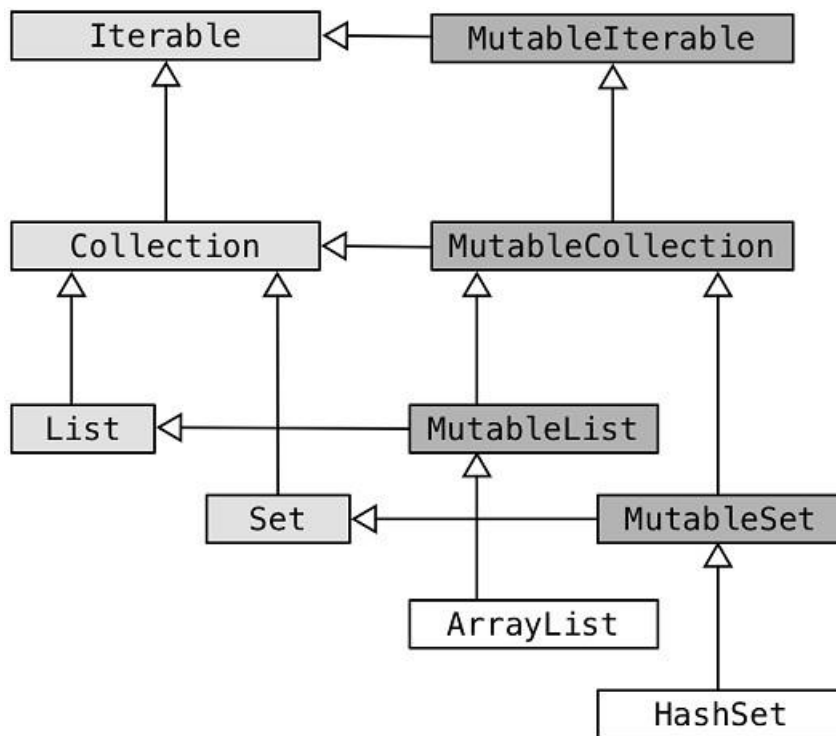


Figure 6.13 The hierarchy of the Kotlin collection interfaces. The Java classes `ArrayList` and `HashSet` extend Kotlin mutable interfaces.

All the interfaces `Iterable`, ... `Set`, `MutableIterable`, ... `MutableSet` are declared in Kotlin. As you can see, the basic structure of the Kotlin read-only and mutable interfaces is parallel to the structure of the Java collection interfaces in the `java.util` package. In addition, each mutable interface extends the corresponding read-only interface.

Mutable interfaces correspond directly to the interfaces in the `java.util` package, while the read-only versions lack all the mutating methods.

Figure 6.13 also contains the Java classes `java.util.ArrayList` and

`java.util.HashSet` to show how Java standard classes are treated in Kotlin. Kotlin sees them as if they inherited from the Kotlin's `MutableList` and `MutableSet` interfaces, respectively. Other implementations from the Java collection library (`LinkedList`, `SortedSet`, and so on) aren't presented here, but from the Kotlin perspective they have similar supertypes. This way, you get both compatibility and clear separation of mutable and read-only interfaces.

In addition to the collections, the `Map` class (which doesn't extend `Collection` or `Iterable`) is also represented in Kotlin as two distinct versions: `Map` and `MutableMap`. Table 6.1 shows the functions you can use to create collections of different types.

Table 6.1 Collection-creation functions

Collection type	Read-only	Mutable
List	<code>listOf()</code>	<code>arrayListOf()</code>
Set	<code>setOf()</code>	<code>hashSetOf()</code> , <code>linkedSetOf()</code> , <code>sortedSetOf()</code>
Map	<code>mapOf()</code>	<code>hashMapOf()</code> , <code>linkedMapOf()</code> , <code>sortedMapOf()</code>

When you need to call a Java method and pass a collection as a parameter, you can do this directly without any extra steps.

For example, if you have a Java method that takes a `java.util.Collection` as a parameter, you can pass any `Collection` or `MutableCollection` value as an argument to that parameter.

This has important consequences with regard to mutability of collections. Because Java doesn't distinguish between read-only and mutable collections, Java code *can modify the collection* even if it's declared as a read-only `Collection` on the Kotlin side. The Kotlin compiler can't fully analyze what's being done to the collection in the Java code, and therefore there's no way for Kotlin to reject a call passing a read-only `Collection` to Java code that modifies it. For example, the following two snippets of code form a compilable cross-language Kotlin/Java program:

```
/* Java */
// CollectionUtils.java
public class CollectionUtils {
    public static List<String> uppercaseAll(List<String> items)
    { for (int i = 0; i < items.size(); i++) {
        items.set(i, items.get(i).toUpperCase());
    }
    return items;
}
```

```
// Kotlin
// collections.kt

fun printInUppercase(list: List<String>)
    { println(CollectionUtils.uppercaseAll(list
    )) println(list.first())
}

>>> val list = listOf("a", "b", "c")
>>> printInUppercase(list)
[A, B, C]
A
```

- ❶ Declares a read-only parameter
- ❷ Calls a Java function that modifies the collection
- ❸ Shows that the collection has been modified

Therefore, if you're writing a Kotlin function that takes a collection and passes it to Java, *it's your responsibility to use the correct type for the parameter*, depending on whether the Java code you're calling will modify the collection.

Note that this caveat also applies to collections with `non-null` element types. If you pass such a collection to a Java method, the method can put a `null` value into it; there's no way for Kotlin to forbid that or even to detect that it has happened without compromising performance. Because of that, you need to take special precautions when you pass collections to Java code that can modify them, to make sure the Kotlin types correctly reflect all the possible modifications to the collection.

Now, let's take a closer look at how Kotlin deals with collections declared in Java code.

6.3.4 Collections as platform types

If you recall the discussion of nullability earlier in this chapter, you'll remember that types defined in Java code are seen as *platform types* in Kotlin. For platform types, Kotlin doesn't have the nullability information, so the compiler allows Kotlin code to treat them as either nullable or `non-null`. In the same way, variables of collection types declared in Java are also seen as platform types. A collection with a platform type is essentially a collection of unknown mutability—the Kotlin code can treat it as either read-only or mutable. Usually this doesn't matter, because, in effect, all the operations you may want to perform just work.

The difference becomes important when you're overriding or implementing a Java method that has a collection type in its signature. Here, as with platform types for nullability, you need to decide which Kotlin type you're going to use to represent a Java type coming from the method you're overriding or implementing.

You need to make multiple choices in this situation, all of which will be reflected in

the resulting parameter type in Kotlin:

- Is the collection nullable?
- Are the elements in the collection nullable?
- Will your method modify the collection?

To see the difference, consider the following cases. In the first example, a Java interface represents an object that processes text in a file:

```
/* Java */
interface FileContentProcessor
{ void processContents(File
    path,
    byte[] binaryContents,
    List<String> textContents);
}
```

A Kotlin implementation of this interface needs to make the following choices:

- The list will be nullable, because some files are binary and their contents can't be represented as text.
- The elements in the list are non-null, because lines in a file are never null.
- The list will be read-only, because it represents the contents of a file, and those contents aren't going to be modified.

Here's how this implementation looks:

```
class FileIndexer : FileContentProcessor
{ override fun processContents(path:
    File,
    binaryContents: ByteArray?,
    textContents: List<String>?) {

    // ...

}
}
```

Contrast this with another interface. Here the implementations of the interface parse some data from a text form into a list of objects, append those objects to the output list, and report errors detected when parsing by adding the messages to a separate list:

```
/* Java */
interface DataParser<T> {
    void parseData(String input,
        List<T> output,
        List<String> errors);
}
```

The choices in this case are different:

- List<String> will be non-null, because the callers always need to receive error messages.
- The elements in the list will be nullable, because not every item in the output list will

have an associated error message.

- `List<String>` will be mutable, because the implementing code needs to add elements to it.

Here's how you can implement that interface in Kotlin:

```
class PersonParser : DataParser<Person>
{ override fun parseData(input:
String,
    output: MutableList<Person>,
    errors: MutableList<String?>) {

    // ...

}
}
```

Note how the same Java type—`List<String>`—is represented by two different Kotlin types: a `List<String>?` (nullable list of strings) in one case and a `MutableList<String?>` (mutable list of nullable strings) in the other. To make these choices correctly, you must know the exact contract the Java interface or class needs to follow. As you can see, this is usually easy to understand based on what your implementation needs to do.

Now that we've discussed collections, it's time to look at arrays. As we've mentioned before, you should prefer using collections to arrays by default. But because many Java APIs still use arrays, we'll cover how to work with them in Kotlin.

6.3.5 Arrays of objects and primitive types

The syntax of Kotlin arrays appears in every example, because an array is part of the standard signature of the Java `main` function. Here's a reminder of how it looks:

```
fun main(args: Array<String>)
{ for (i in args.indices) {
    println("Argument $i is: ${args[i]}")
}
}
```

- ① Uses the `array.indices` extension property to iterate over the range of indices
- ② Accesses elements by index with `array[index]`

As you can see, an array in Kotlin is a class with a type parameter, and the element type is specified as the corresponding type argument.

To create an array in Kotlin, you have the following possibilities:

- The `arrayOf()` function creates an array containing the elements specified as arguments to this function.
- The `arrayOfNulls()` function creates an array of a given size containing null elements.

Of course, it can only be used to create arrays where the element type is nullable;

- The `Array()` constructor takes the size of the array and a lambda function, and initializes each array element by calling the lambda. This is how you can initialize an array with a non-null element type without passing each element explicitly.

As a simple example, here's how you can use the `Array()` function to create an array of strings from "a" to "z":

```
>>> val letters = Array(26) { i -> ('a' + i).toString() }
>>> println(letters.joinToString(""))
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
```

The lambda function takes the index of the array element and returns the value to be placed in the array at that index. Here you calculate the value by adding the index to the 'a' character and converting the result to a string.

Having said that, one of the most common cases for creating an array in Kotlin code is when you need to call a Java method that takes an array, or a Kotlin method with a `vararg` parameter. In those situations, you often have the data already stored in a collection, and you just need to convert it into an array. You can do this using the `toTypedArray()` method:

```
>>> val strings = listOf("a", "b", "c")
>>> println("%s/%s/%s".format(*strings.toTypedArray()))
a/b/c
```

1

- 1 The spread operator (*) is used to pass an array when `vararg` arguments are expected.

As with other types, *type parameters of array types always become object types*. Therefore, if you declare something like an `Array<Int>`, it will become an array of boxed integers (its Java type will be `java.lang.Integer[]`). If you need to create an array of values of a primitive type that don't use boxing, you must use one of the specialized classes for arrays of primitive types.

To represent arrays of primitive types, Kotlin provides a number of separate classes, one for each primitive type. For example, an array of values of type `Int` is called `IntArray`. For other types, Kotlin provides `ByteArray`, `CharArray`, `BooleanArray`, and so on. All of these types are compiled to regular Java primitive type arrays, such as `int[]`, `byte[]`, `char[]`, and so on. Therefore, values in such an array are stored without boxing, in the most efficient manner possible.

To create an array of a primitive type, you have the following options:

- The constructor of the type takes a `size` parameter and returns an array initialized with

default values for the corresponding primitive type (usually zeros).

- The factory function (`intArrayOf` for `IntArray`, and so on for other array types) takes a variable number of values as arguments and creates an array holding those values.
- Another constructor takes a size and a lambda used to initialize each element.

Here's how the first two options work for creating an integer array holding five zeros:

```
val fiveZeros = IntArray(5)
val fiveZerosToo = intArrayOf(0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
```

Here's how you can use the constructor accepting a lambda:

```
>>> val squares = IntArray(5) { i -> (i+1) * (i+1) }
>>> println(squares.joinToString())
1, 4, 9, 16, 25
```

Alternatively, if you have an array or a collection holding boxed values of a primitive type, you can convert them to an array of that primitive type using the corresponding conversion function, such as `toIntArray()`.

Next, let's look at some of the things you can do with arrays. In addition to the basic operations (getting the array's length and getting and setting elements), the Kotlin standard library supports the same set of extension functions for arrays as for collections. All the functions you saw in chapter 5 (`filter`, `map`, and so on) work for arrays as well, including the arrays of primitive types. (Note that the return values of these functions are lists, not arrays.)

Let's see how we can rewrite the initial example from this section using the `forEachIndexed` function and a lambda. The lambda passed to that function is called for each element of the array and receives two arguments: the index of the element and the element itself.

```
fun main(args: Array<String>)
{ args.forEachIndexed { index, element
  ->
    println("Argument $index is: $element")
  }
}
```

Now you know how to use arrays in your code. Working with them is as simple as working with collections in Kotlin.

6.4 Summary

- Kotlin's support of nullable types detects possible `NullPointerException` errors at compile time.
- Kotlin provides tools such as safe calls (`?.`), the Elvis operator (`?:`), `not-null` assertions (`!!`), and the `let` function for dealing with nullable types concisely.
- The `as?` operator provides an easy way to cast a value to a type and to handle the case when it has a different type.
- Types coming from Java are interpreted as platform types in Kotlin, allowing the developer to treat them as either nullable or `non-null`.
- Types representing basic numbers (such as `Int`) look and function like regular classes but are usually compiled to Java primitive types.
- Nullable primitive types (such as `Int?`) correspond to boxed primitive types in Java (such as `java.lang.Integer`).
- The `Any` type is a supertype of all other types and is analogous to Java's `Object`. `Unit` is an analogue of `void`.
- The `Nothing` type is used as a return type of functions that don't terminate normally.
- Kotlin uses the standard Java classes for collections and enhances them with a distinction between read-only and mutable collections.
- You need to carefully consider nullability and mutability of parameters when you extend Java classes or implement Java interfaces in Kotlin.
- Kotlin's `Array` class looks like a regular generic class, but it's compiled to a Java array.
- Arrays of primitive types are represented by special classes such as `IntArray`.

Operator overloading and other conventions



This chapter covers

- Operator overloading
- Special-named functions supporting various operations
- Delegated properties

As you know, Java has several language features tied to specific classes in the standard library. For example, objects that implement `java.lang.Iterable` can be used in `for` loops, and objects that implement `java.lang.AutoCloseable` can be used in `with-resources` statements.

Kotlin has a number of features that work in a similar way, where specific language constructs are implemented by calling functions that you define in your own code. But instead of being tied to specific types, in Kotlin those features are tied to functions with specific names. For example, if your class defines a special method named `plus`, then, by convention, you can use the `+` operator on instances of this class. Because of that, in Kotlin we refer to this technique as *conventions*. In this chapter, we'll look at different conventions supported by Kotlin and how they can be used.

Kotlin uses the principle of conventions, instead of relying on types as Java does, because this allows Kotlin to adapt existing Java classes to the requirements of Kotlin language features. The set of interfaces implemented by a class is fixed, and Kotlin can't modify an existing class so that it would implement additional interfaces. On the other hand, defining new methods for a class is possible through the mechanism of extension functions. You can define any convention methods as extensions and thereby adapt any existing Java class without modifying its code.

As a running example in this chapter, we'll use a simple `Point` class, representing a point on a screen. Such classes are available in most UI frameworks, and you can easily

adapt the definitions shown here to your environment:

```
data class Point(val x: Int, val y: Int)
```

Let's begin by defining some arithmetic operators on the `Point` class.

7.1 Overloading arithmetic operators

The most straightforward example of the use of conventions in Kotlin is arithmetic operators. In Java, the full set of arithmetic operations can be used only with primitive types, and additionally the `+` operator can be used with `String` values. But these operations could be convenient in other cases as well. For example, if you're working with numbers through the `BigInteger` class, it's more elegant to sum them using `+` than to call the `add` method explicitly. To add an element to a collection, you may want to use the `+=` operator. Kotlin allows you to do that, and in this section we'll show you how it works.

7.1.1 Overloading binary arithmetic operations

The first operation you're going to support is adding two points together. This operation sums up the points' X and Y coordinates. Here's how you can implement it:

```
data class Point(val x: Int, val y: Int)
    { operator fun plus(other: Point): Point
      {
        return Point(x + other.x, y + other.y)
      }
    }

>>> val p1 = Point(10, 20)
>>> val p2 = Point(30, 40)

>>> println(p1 + p2)
Point(x=40, y=60)
```

- ❶ Defines an operator function named "plus"
- ❷ Adds the coordinates and returns a new point
- ❸ Calls the "plus" function using the `+` sign

Note how you use the `operator` keyword to declare the `plus` function. All functions used to overload operators need to be marked with that keyword. This makes it explicit that you intend to use the function as an implementation of the corresponding convention and that you didn't define a function that accidentally had a matching name.

After you declare the `plus` function with the `operator` modifier, you can sum up your objects using just the `+` sign. Under the hood, the `plus` function is called as shown in figure 7.1.



Figure 7.1 The '+' operator is transformed into a plus function call.

As an alternative to declaring the operator as a member, you can define the operator as an extension function:

```
operator fun Point.plus(other: Point): Point
{ return Point(x + other.x, y + other.y)
}
```

The implementation is exactly the same. Future examples will use the extension function syntax because it's a common pattern to define convention extension functions for external library classes, and the same syntax will work nicely for your own classes as well.

Compared to some other languages, defining and using overloaded operators in Kotlin is simpler, because you can't define your own operators. Kotlin has a limited set of operators that you can overload, and each one corresponds to the name of the function you need to define in your class. Table 7.1 lists all the binary operators you can define and the corresponding function names.

Table 7.1 Overloadable binary arithmetic operators

Expression	Function name
<code>a * b</code>	<code>times</code>
<code>a / b</code>	<code>div</code>
<code>a % b</code>	<code>mod</code>
<code>a + b</code>	<code>plus</code>
<code>a - b</code>	<code>minus</code>

Operators for your own types always use the same precedence as the standard numeric types. For example, if you write `a + b * c`, the multiplication will always be executed before the addition, even if you've defined those operators yourself. The operators `*`, `/`, and `%` have the same priority, which is higher than the priority of the `+` and `-` operators.

SIDEBAR**Operator functions and Java**

Kotlin operators are easy to call from Java: because every overloaded operator is defined as a function, you call them as regular functions using the full name. When you call Java from Kotlin, you can use the operator syntax for any methods with names matching the Kotlin conventions. Because Java doesn't define any syntax for marking operator functions, the requirement to use the `operator` modifier doesn't apply, and the matching name is the only constraint. If a Java class defines a method with the behavior you need but gives it a different name, you can define an extension function with the correct name that would delegate to the existing Java method.

When you define an operator, you don't need to use the same types for the two operands. For example, let's define an operator that will allow you to scale a point by a certain number. You can use it to translate points between different coordinate systems:

```
operator fun Point.times(scale: Double): Point {
    return Point((x * scale).toInt(), (y * scale).toInt())
}

>>> val p = Point(10, 20)
>>> println(p * 1.5)
Point(x=15, y=30)
```

Note that Kotlin operators don't automatically support *commutativity* (the ability to swap the left and right sides of an operator). If you want users to be able to write `1.5 * p` in addition to `p * 1.5`, you need to define a separate operator for that: `operator fun Double.times(p: Point).`

The return type of an operator function can also be different from either of the operand types. For example, you can define an operator to create a string by repeating a character a number of times:

```
operator fun Char.times(count: Int): String
{ return toString().repeat(count)
}

>>> println('a' * 3)
aaa
```

This operator takes a `Char` as the left operand and an `Int` as the right operand and has `String` as the result type. Such combinations of operand and result types are perfectly acceptable.

SIDEBAR

No special operators for bitwise operations

Kotlin doesn't define any bitwise operators for standard number types; consequently, it doesn't allow you to define them for your own types. Instead, it uses regular functions supporting the infix call syntax. You can define similar functions that work with your own types.

Here's the full list of functions provided by Kotlin for performing bitwise operations:

- `shl`—Signed shift left
- `shr`—Signed shift right
- `ushr`—Unsigned shift right
- `and`—Bitwise and `or`—
- Bitwise or `xor`—Bitwise
- `xor`
- `inv`—Bitwise inversion

```
>>> println(0x0F and 0xF0)
0
>>> println(0x0F or 0xF0)
255
>>> println(0x1 shl 4)
16
```

Now let's discuss the operators like `+=` that merge two actions: assignment and the corresponding arithmetic operator.

7.1.2 Overloading compound assignment operators

Normally, when you define an operator such as `plus`, Kotlin supports not only the `+` operation but `+=` as well. Operators such as `+=`, `-=`, and so on are called *compound assignment operators*. Here's an example:

```
>>> var point = Point(1, 2)
>>> point += Point(3, 4)
>>> println(point)
Point(x=4, y=6)
```

This is the same as writing `point = point + Point(3, 4)`. Of course, that works only if the variable is mutable.

In some cases, it makes sense to define the `+=` operation that would modify an object referenced by the variable on which it's used, but not reassign the reference. One such case is adding an element to a mutable collection:

```
>>> val numbers = ArrayList<Int>()
```

```
>>> numbers += 42
>>> println(numbers[0])
42
```

If you define a function named `plusAssign`, with the `Unit` return type, Kotlin will call it when the `+=` operator is used. Other binary arithmetic operators have similarly named counterparts: `minusAssign`, `timesAssign`, and so on.

The Kotlin standard library defines a function `plusAssign` on a mutable collection, and the previous example uses it:

```
operator fun <T> MutableCollection<T>.plusAssign(element: T)
{ this.add(element)
}
```

When you write `+=` in your code, theoretically both `plus` and `plusAssign` functions can be called (see figure 7.2). If this is the case, and both functions are defined and applicable, the compiler reports an error. One possibility to resolve it is replacing your use of the operator with a regular function call. Another is to replace a `var` with a `val`, so that the `plusAssign` operation becomes inapplicable. But in general, it's best to design new classes consistently: try not to add both `plus` and `plusAssign` operations at the same time. If your class is immutable, like `Point` in one of the earlier examples, you should provide only operations that return a new value (such as `plus`). If you design a mutable class, like a builder, provide only `plusAssign` and similar operations.

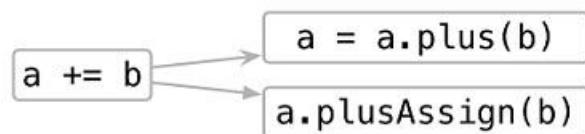


Figure 7.2 The `+=` operator can be transformed into either the `plus` or the `plusAssign` function call.

The Kotlin standard library supports both approaches for collections. The `+` and `-` operators always return a new collection. The `+=` and `-=` operators work on mutable collections by modifying them in place, and on read-only collections by returning a modified copy. (This means `+=` and `-=` can only be used with a read-only collection if the variable referencing it is declared as a `var`.) As operands of those operators, you can use either individual elements or other collections with a matching element type:

```
>>> val list = arrayListOf(1, 2)
>>> list += 3
>>> val newList = list + listOf(4, 5)
>>> println(list)
[1, 2, 3]
```

1
2

```
>>> println(newList)
[1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
```

- ➊ `+=` changes "list".
- ➋ `+` returns a new list containing all the elements.

So far, we've discussed overloading of *binary* operators—operators that are applied to two values, such as `a + b`. In addition, Kotlin allows you to overload *unary* operators, which are applied to a single value, as in `-a`.

7.1.3 Overloading unary operators

The procedure for overloading an unary operator is the same as you saw previously: declare a function (member or extension) with a predefined name, and mark it with the modifier `operator`. Let's look at an example:

```
operator fun Point.unaryMinus(): Point
{
    return Point(-x, -y)
}

>>> val p = Point(10, 20)
>>> println(-p)
Point(x=-10, y=-20)
```

- ➊
- ➋

- ➊ The unary minus function has no arguments.
- ➋ Negates the coordinates of the point, and returns it

Functions used to overload unary operators don't take any arguments.

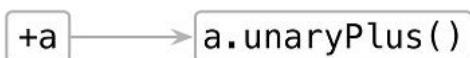


Figure 7.3 The unary '+' operator is transformed into a 'unaryPlus' function call.

Table 7.2 lists all the unary operators you can overload.

Table 7.2 Overloadable unary arithmetic operators

Expression	Function name
<code>+a</code>	<code>unaryPlus</code>
<code>-a</code>	<code>unaryMinus</code>
<code>!a</code>	<code>not</code>
<code>++a, a++</code>	<code>inc</code>
<code>--a, a--</code>	<code>dec</code>

When you define the `inc` and `dec` functions to overload increment and decrement operators, the compiler automatically supports the same semantics for pre- and post-increment operators as for the regular number types. Consider this example, which overloads the `++` operator for the `BigDecimal` class:

```
operator fun BigDecimal.inc() = this + BigDecimal.ONE

>>> var bd = BigDecimal.ZERO
>>> println(bd++) 1
0
>>> println(++bd) 2
2
```

- 1** Increments after the first `println` statement executes
- 2** Increments before the second `println` statement executes

The printed values are the same as you'd see if you used a variable of type `Int`, and you didn't need to do anything special to support this.

7.2 Overloading comparison operators

Just as with arithmetic operators, Kotlin lets you use comparison operators (`==`, `!=`, `>`, `<`, and so on) with any object, not just with primitive types. Instead of calling `equals` or `compareTo`, as in Java, you can use comparison operators directly, which is intuitive and concise. In this section, we'll look at the conventions used to support these operators.

7.2.1 Equality operators: *equals*

We already touched on the topic of equality in section XREF ID_equals. You saw that using the `==` operator in Kotlin is translated into a call of the `equals()` method. This is just one more application of the conventions principle we've been discussing.

Using the `!=` operator is also translated into a call of `equals`, with the obvious difference that the result is inverted. Note that unlike all other operators, `==` and `!=` can be used with nullable operands, because those operators check equality to `null` under the hood. The comparison `a == b` checks whether `a` isn't `null`, and, if it's not, calls `a.equals(b)` (see figure 7.4). Otherwise the result is `true` only if both arguments are `null` references.

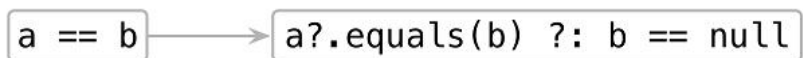


Figure 7.4 An equality check `==` is transformed into an '`equals()`' call and a '`null`' check.

For the `Point` class, the implementation of `equals()` is automatically generated by the compiler, because you've marked it as a `data` class (section 4.3.2 explained the details). But if you did implement it manually, here's what the code could look like:

```
class Point(val x: Int, val y: Int)
{
    override fun equals(obj: Any?): Boolean
    {
        if (obj === this) return true
        if (obj !is Point) return false
        return obj.x == x && obj.y == y
    }
}

>>> println(Point(10, 20) == Point(10, 20))
true
>>> println(Point(10, 20) != Point(5, 5))
true
>>> println(null == Point(1, 2))
false
```

- ❶ Overrides the method defined in `Any`
- ❷ Optimization: checks whether the parameter is the same object as "this"
- ❸ Checks the parameter type
- ❹ Here `obj` is smart-cast to `Point`.

Note how you use the *identity equals* operator (`===`) to check whether the parameter to `equals` is the same object as the one on which `equals` is called. The identity equals operator does exactly the same thing as the `==` operator in Java: it checks that both of its

arguments reference the same object (or have the same value, if they have a primitive type). Using this operator is a common optimization when implementing `equals`. Note that the `===` operator can't be overloaded.

The `equals` function is marked as `override`, because, unlike other conventions, the method implementing it is defined in the `Any` class (equality comparison is supported for all objects in Kotlin). That also explains why you don't need to mark it as `operator`: the base method in `Any` is marked as such, and the `operator` modifier on a method applies also to all methods that implement or override it. Also note that `equals` can't be implemented as an extension, because the implementation inherited from the `Any` class would always take precedence over the extension.

This example also shows that using the `!=` operator is translated into a call of the `equals` method. The compiler automatically negates the return value, so you don't need to do anything for this to work correctly.

What about other comparison operators?

7.2.2 Ordering operators: *compareTo*

In Java, classes can implement the `Comparable` interface in order to be used in algorithms that compare values, such as finding a maximum or sorting. The `compareTo` method defined in that interface is used to determine whether one object is larger than another. But in Java, there's no shorthand syntax for calling this method. Only values of primitive types can be compared using `<` and `>`; all other types require you to write `element1.compareTo(element2)` explicitly.

Kotlin supports the same `Comparable` interface. But the `compareTo` method defined in that interface can be called by convention, and uses of comparison operators (`<`, `>`, `<=`, and `>=`) are translated into calls of `compareTo`. The return type of `compareTo` has to be `Int`. The expression `p1 < p2` is equivalent to `p1.compareTo(p2) < 0`. Other comparison operators work exactly the same way.



Figure 7.5 Comparison of two objects is transformed into comparing the result of the `compareTo` call with zero.

Because there's no obviously right way to compare points with one another, let's use the good-old `Person` class to show how the method can be implemented. The implementation will use address book ordering (compare by last name, and then, if the last name is the same, compare by first name):

```
class Person(  
    val firstName: String, val lastName: String
```

```

) : Comparable<Person> {

    override fun compareTo(other: Person): Int
        { return compareValuesBy(this, other,
            Person::lastName, Person::firstName)
        }
}

>>> val p1 = Person("Alice", "Smith")
>>> val p2 = Person("Bob", "Johnson")
>>> println(p1 < p2)
false

```

1

- 1 Evaluates the given callbacks in order, and compares values

In this case, you implement the `Comparable` interface so that the `Person` objects can be compared not only by Kotlin code but also by Java functions, such as the functions used to sort collections. Just as with `equals`, the `operator` modifier is applied to the function in the base interface, so you don't need to repeat the keyword when you override the function.

Note how you can use the `compareValuesBy` function from the Kotlin standard library to implement the `compareTo` method easily and concisely. This function receives a list of callbacks that calculate values to be compared. The function calls each callback in order for both objects and compares the return values. If the values are different, it returns the result of the comparison. If they're the same, it proceeds to the next callback or returns 0 if there are no more callbacks to call. The callbacks can be passed as lambdas or, as you do here, as property references.

Note, however, that a direct implementation comparing fields by hand would be faster, although it would contain more code. As always, you should prefer the concise version and worry about performance only if you know the implementation will be called frequently.

All Java classes that implement the `Comparable` interface can be compared in Kotlin using the concise operator syntax:

```

>>> println("abc" < "bac")
true

```

You don't need to add any extensions to make that work.

7.3 Conventions used for collections and ranges

Some of the most common operations for working with collections are getting and setting elements by index, as well as checking whether an element belongs to a collection. All of these operations are supported via operator syntax: to get or set an element by index, you use the syntax `a[b]` (called the *index operator*). The `in` operator can be used to check whether an element is in a collection or range and also to iterate over a collection. You can add those operations for your own classes that act as collections. Let's now look at the conventions used to support those operations.

7.3.1 Accessing elements by index: get and set

You know already that in Kotlin, you can access the elements in a map similarly to how you access arrays in Java—via square brackets:

```
val value = map[key]
```

You can use the same operator to change the value for a key in a mutable map:

```
mutableMap[key] = newValue
```

Now it's time to see how this works. In Kotlin, the index operator is one more convention. Reading an element using the index operator is translated into a call of the `get` operator method, and writing an element becomes a call to `set`. The methods are already defined for the `Map` and `MutableMap` interfaces. Let's see how to add similar methods to your own class.

You'll allow the use of square brackets to reference the coordinates of the point: `p[0]` to access the X coordinate and `p[1]` to access the Y coordinate. Here's how to implement and use it:

```
operator fun Point.get(index: Int): Int
{
    return when(index) {
        0 -> x
        1 -> y
        else ->
            throw IndexOutOfBoundsException("Invalid coordinate $index")
    }
}

>>> val p = Point(10, 20)
>>> println(p[1])
20
```

- 1 Defines an operator function named "get"
- 2 Gets the coordinate corresponding to the given index

All you need to do is define a function named `get` and mark it as `operator`. Once you do that, expressions like `p[1]`, where `p` has type `Point`, will be translated into calls to the `get` method.

Note that the parameter of `get` can have any type, not just `Int`. For example, when you use the indexing operator on a map, the parameter type is the key type of the map, which can be an arbitrary type. You can also define a `get` method with multiple parameters. For example, if you're implementing a class to represent a two-dimensional array or matrix, you can define a method such as `operator fun get(rowIndex: Int, colIndex: Int)` and call it as `matrix[row, col]`. You can define multiple overloaded `get` methods with different parameter types, if your collection can be accessed with different key types.



Figure 7.6 Access via square brackets is transformed into a `get` function call.

In a similar way, you can define a function that lets you change the value at a given index using the bracket syntax. The `Point` class is immutable, so it doesn't make sense to define such a method for `Point`. Let's define another class to represent a mutable point and use that as an example:

```
data class MutablePoint(var x: Int, var y: Int)

operator fun MutablePoint.set(index: Int, value: Int) ❶
{ when(index) {
    0 -> x = value ❶
    1 -> y = value ❷
    else ->
        throw IndexOutOfBoundsException("Invalid coordinate $index")
}
}

>>> val p = MutablePoint(10, 20)
>>> p[1] = 42
>>> println(p)
MutablePoint(x=10, y=42)
```

- ❶ Defines an operator function named "set"
- ❷ Changes the coordinate corresponding to the specified index

This example is also simple: to allow the use of the index operator in assignments, you just need to define a function named `set`. The last argument to `set` receives the value used on the right side of the assignment, and the other arguments are taken from

the indices used inside the brackets, as you can see in figure 7.7.



Figure 7.7 Assignment though square brackets is transformed into a set function call.

7.3.2 The "in" convention

One other operator supported by collections is the `in` operator, which is used to check whether an object belongs to a collection. The corresponding function is called `contains`. Let's implement it so that you can use the `in` operator to check whether a point belongs to a rectangle:

```
data class Rectangle(val upperLeft: Point, val lowerRight: Point)

operator fun Rectangle.contains(p: Point): Boolean {
    return p.x in upperLeft.x until lowerRight.x &&
           p.y in upperLeft.y until lowerRight.y
}

>>> val rect = Rectangle(Point(10, 20), Point(50, 50))
>>> println(Point(20, 30) in rect)
true
>>> println(Point(5, 5) in rect)
false
```

- ❶ Builds a range, and checks that coordinate "x" belongs to this range
- ❷ Uses the "until" function to build an open range

The object on the right side of `in` becomes the object on which the `contains` method is called, and the object on the left side becomes the argument passed to the method (see figure 7.8).



Figure 7.8 The `in` operator is transformed into a 'contains' function call.

In the implementation of `Rectangle.contains`, you use the `until` standard library function to build an *open range* and then use the `in` operator on a range to check that a point belongs to it. An *open range* is a range that doesn't include its ending point. For example, if you build a regular (closed) range using `10..20`, this range includes all numbers from 10 to 20, including 20. An open range `10 until 20` includes numbers from 10 to 19 but doesn't include 20. A rectangle class is usually defined in such a way that its bottom and right coordinates aren't part of the rectangle, so the use of open ranges is appropriate here.

7.3.3 The *rangeTo* convention

To create a range, you use the `..` syntax: for instance, `1..10` enumerates all the numbers from 1 to 10. You met ranges in section 2.4.4, but now let's discuss the convention that helps create one. The `..` operator is actually a concise way to call the `rangeTo` function (see figure 7.9).



Figure 7.9 The `..` operator is transformed into a 'rangeTo' function call.

The `rangeTo` function returns a range. You can define this operator for your own class. But if your class implements the `Comparable` interface, you don't need that: you can create a range of any comparable elements by means of the Kotlin standard library. The library defines the `rangeTo` function that can be called on any comparable element:

```
operator fun <T: Comparable<T>> T.rangeTo(that: T): ClosedRange<T>
```

This function returns a range that allows you to check whether different elements belong to it.

As an example, let's build a range of dates using the `LocalDate` class (defined in the Java 8 standard library):

```
>>> val now = LocalDate.now()
>>> val vacation = now..now.plusDays(10)
>>> println(now.plusWeeks(1) in vacation)
true
```

- ❶ Creates a 10-day range starting from now
- ❷ Checks whether a specific date belongs to a range

The expression `now..now.plusDays(10)` is transformed into `now.rangeTo(now.plusDays(10))` by the compiler. The `rangeTo` function isn't a member of `LocalDate`, but rather is an extension function on `Comparable`, as shown earlier.

The `rangeTo` operator has lower priority than arithmetic operators. But it's better to use parentheses for its arguments to avoid confusion:

```
>>> val n = 9
>>> println(0..(n + 1))
0..10
```

❶

- ❶ You can write `0..n + 1`, but parentheses make it clearer.

Also note that the expression `0..n.forEach { }` won't compile, because you have to surround a range expression with parentheses to call a method on it:

```
>>> (0..n).forEach { print(it) }  
0123456789
```

❶

- ❶ Put a range in parentheses to call a method on it.

Now let's discuss how conventions allow you to iterate over a collection or a range.

7.3.4 The "iterator" convention for the "for" loop

As we discussed in chapter 2, `for` loops in Kotlin use the same `in` operator as range checks. But its meaning is different in this context: it's used to perform iteration. This means a statement such as `for (x in list) { ... }` will be translated into a call of `list.iterator()`, on which the `hasNext` and `next` methods are then repeatedly called, just like in Java.

Note that in Kotlin, it's also a convention, which means the `iterator` method can be defined as an extension. That explains why it's possible to iterate over a regular Java string: the standard library defines an extension function `iterator` on `CharSequence`, a superclass of `String`:

```
operator fun CharSequence.iterator(): CharIterator  
  
>>> for (c in "abc") { }
```

❶

- ❶ This library function makes it possible to iterate over a string.

You can define the `iterator` method for your own classes. For example, defining the following method makes it possible to iterate over dates:

```
operator fun ClosedRange<LocalDate>.iterator(): Iterator<LocalDate> =  
    object : Iterator<LocalDate> {  
        var current = start  
  
        override fun hasNext() =  
            current <= endInclusive  
  
        override fun next() = current.apply {  
            current = plusDays(1)  
        }  
    }
```

❶

❷

❸

❹

```
>>> val newYear = LocalDate.ofYearDay(2017, 1)
>>> val daysOff = newYear.minusDays(1)..newYear

>>> for (dayOff in daysOff) { println(dayOff) }
2016-12-31
2017-01-01
```

5

- ❶ This object implements an Iterator over LocalDate elements.
- ❷ Note the compareTo convention used for dates.
- ❸ Returns the current date as a result before changing it
- ❹ Increments the current date by one day
- ❺ Iterates over daysOff when the corresponding iterator function is available

Note how you define the `iterator` method on a custom range type: you use `LocalDate` as a type argument. The `rangeTo` library function, shown in the previous section, returns an instance of `ClosedRange`, so after providing the `iterator` extension on `ClosedRange<LocalDate>`, you can use an instance of the range in a `for` loop.

7.4 Destructuring declarations and component functions

When we discussed data classes in section 4.3.2, we mentioned that some of their features would be revealed later. Now that you're familiar with the principle of conventions, we can look at the final feature: *destructuring declarations*. This feature allows you to unpack a single composite value and store it in several separate variables.

Here's how it works:

```
>>> val p = Point(10, 20)

>>> val (x, y) = p
>>> println(x)
10
>>> println(y)
20
```

1

- ❶ Declares variables `x` and `y`, initialized with components of `p`

A destructuring declaration looks like a regular variable declaration, but it has multiple variables grouped in parentheses.

Under the hood, the destructuring declaration once again uses the principle of conventions. For each variable in a destructuring declaration, a function named `componentN` is called, where `N` is the position of the variable in the declaration. In other words, the previous example would be transformed as shown in figure 7.10.

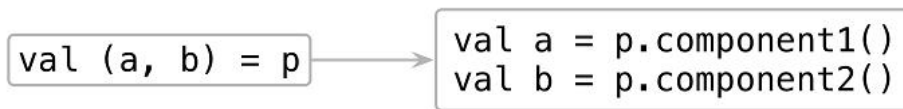


Figure 7.10 Destructuring declarations are transformed into `componentN()` function calls.

For a `data class`, the compiler generates a `componentN` function for every property declared in the primary constructor, as shown here:

```
class Point(val x: Int, val y: Int)
{ operator fun component1() = x
  operator fun component2() = y
}
```

You can declare such functions manually, as well.

One of the main use cases where destructuring declarations are helpful is returning multiple values from a function. If you need to do that, you can define a data class to hold the values you need to return and to use as the return type of the function. The destructuring declaration syntax makes it easy to unpack and use the values after you call the function. To demonstrate, let's write a simple function to split a filename into a name and an extension:

```
data class NameComponents(val name: String,
                          val extension: String)

fun splitFilename(fullName: String): NameComponents
{ val result = fullName.split('.', limit = 2)
  return NameComponents(result[0], result[1])
}

>>> val (name, ext) = splitFilename("example.kt")
>>> println(name)
example
>>> println(ext)
kt
```

- ❶ Declares a data class to hold the values
- ❷ Returns an instance of the data class from the method
- ❸ Uses the destructuring declaration syntax to unpack the class

You can improve this example even further if you note that `componentN()` functions are also defined on arrays and collections. This is useful when you're dealing with collections of a known size—and this is such a case, with `split()` returning a list of two elements:

```
data class NameComponents(val name: String,
                          val extension: String)
```

```
fun splitFilename(fullName: String): NameComponents {
    val (name, extension) = fullName.split('.', limit = 2)
    return NameComponents(name, extension)
}
```

Of course, it's not possible to define an infinite number of such `componentN()` functions so the syntax would work with an arbitrary number of items, but that wouldn't be useful, either. The standard library allows you to use this syntax to access the first five elements of a container (having more doesn't make much sense anyway).

A simpler way to return multiple values from a function is to use the `Pair` and `Triple` classes from the standard library. It's less expressive, because those classes don't make it clear what's contained in the returned object, but it requires less code because you don't need to define your own class.

7.4.1 Destructuring declarations and loops

Destructuring declarations work not only as top-level statements but also in other places where you can declare variables—for example, in loops. One good use for that is enumerating entries in a map. Here's a small example using this syntax to print all entries in a given map:

```
fun printEntries(map: Map<String, String>)
{ for ((key, value) in map) {
    println("$key -> $value")
}

>>> val map = mapOf("Oracle" to "Java", "JetBrains" to "Kotlin")
>>> printEntries(map)
Oracle -> Java
JetBrains -> Kotlin
```

❶ Multi-declaration in a loop

This simple example uses two Kotlin conventions: one to iterate over an object and another to destructure declarations. The Kotlin standard library contains an extension method `iterator` on a map that returns an iterator over map entries. Thus, unlike Java, you can iterate over a map directly. It also contains extension functions `component1` and `component2` on `Map.Entry`, returning its key and value, respectively. In effect, the previous loop is translated to the equivalent of the following code:

```
for (entry in map.entries) {
    val key = entry.component1()
    val value = entry.component2()
    // ...
}
```

This example again illustrates the importance of extension functions for conventions.

7.5 Reusing property accessor logic: delegated properties

To conclude this chapter, let's look at one more feature that relies on conventions and is one of the most unique and powerful in Kotlin: *delegated properties*. This feature lets you easily implement properties that work in a more complex way than storing values in backing fields, without duplicating the logic in each accessor. For example, properties can store their values in database tables, in a browser session, in a map, and so on.

The foundation for this feature is *delegation*: a design pattern where an object, instead of performing a task, delegates that task to another helper object. The helper object is called a *delegate*. Here this pattern is applied to a property, which can also delegate the logic of its accessors to a helper object. You can implement that by hand (you'll see examples in a moment) or use a better solution: Kotlin provides language support for this feature. We'll begin with a general explanation and then look at specific examples.

7.5.1 Delegated properties: the basics

The general syntax of a delegated property is as follows:

```
class Foo {  
    var p: Type by Delegate()  
}
```

The property `p` delegates the logic of its accessors to another object: in this case, a new instance of the `Delegate` class. The object is obtained by evaluating the expression following the `by` keyword, which can be anything that satisfies the rules of the convention for property delegates.

The compiler creates a hidden helper property, initialized with the instance of the delegate object, to which the initial property `p` delegates. For simplicity, let's call it `delegate`:

```
class Foo {  
    private val delegate = Delegate() ❶  
  
    var p: Type ❷  
        set(value: Type) = delegate.setValue(..., value)  
        get() = delegate.getValue(...)  
}
```

- ❶ This helper property is generated by the compiler.
- ❷ Generated accessors of the `p` property call the `getValue` and `setValue` methods on "delegate".

By convention, the `Delegate` class must have `getValue` and `setValue` methods (the

latter is required only for mutable properties). As usual, they can be members or extensions. To simplify the explanation, we omit their parameters; the exact signatures will be covered later in this chapter. In a simple form, the `Delegate` class might look like the following:

```
class Delegate {  
    operator fun getValue(...) { ... }  
  
    operator fun setValue(..., value: Type) { ... }  
}  
  
class Foo {  
    var p: Type by Delegate()  
}  
  
>>> val foo = Foo()  
>>> val oldValue = foo.p  
>>> foo.p = newValue
```

- ❶ The `getValue` method contains the logic for implementing a getter.
- ❷ The `setValue` method contains the logic for implementing a setter.
- ❸ The `"by"` keyword associates a property with a delegate object.
- ❹ Accessing a property `foo.p` calls `delegate.getValue(...)` under the hood.
- ❺ Changing a property value calls `delegate.setValue(..., newValue)`.

You use `foo.p` as a regular property, but under the hood the methods on the helper property of the `Delegate` type are called. To investigate how this mechanism is used in practice, we'll begin by looking at one example of the power of delegated properties: library support for lazy initialization. Afterward, we'll explore how you can define your own delegated properties and when this is useful.

7.5.2 Using delegated properties: lazy initialization and by lazy()

Lazy initialization is a common pattern that entails creating part of an object on demand, when it's accessed for the first time. This is helpful when the initialization process consumes significant resources and the data isn't always required when the object is used.

For example, consider a `Person` class that lets you access a list of the emails written by a person. The emails are stored in a database and take a long time to access. You want to load the emails on first access to the property and do so only once. Let's say you have the following function `loadEmails`, which retrieves the emails from the database:

```
class Email { /*...*/ }  
fun loadEmails(person: Person): List<Email> {
```

```
println("Load emails for ${person.name}")
return listOf(/*...*/)
}
```

Here's how you can implement lazy loading using an additional `_emails` property that stores `null` before anything is loaded and the list of emails afterward:

```
class Person(val name: String) {
    private var _emails: List<Email>? = null
    val emails: List<Email>
    get() {
        if (_emails == null) {
            _emails = loadEmails(this)
        }
        return _emails!!
    }
}
>>> val p = Person("Alice")
>>> p.emails
Load emails for Alice
>>> p.emails
```

- ❶ `"_emails"` property that stores the data and to which `"emails"` delegates
- ❷ Loads the data on access
- ❸ If the data was loaded before, returns it
- ❹ Emails are loaded on first access.

Here you use the so-called *backing property* technique. You have one property, `_emails`, which stores the value, and another, `emails`, which provides read access to it. You need to use two properties because the properties have different types: `_emails` is nullable, whereas `emails` is non-null. This technique can be used fairly often, so it's worth getting familiar with it.

But the code is somewhat cumbersome: imagine how much longer it would become if you had several lazy properties. What's more, it doesn't always work correctly: the implementation isn't thread-safe. Surely Kotlin provides a better solution.

The code becomes much simpler with the use of a delegated property, which can encapsulate both the backing property used to store the value and the logic ensuring that the value is initialized only once. The delegate you can use here is returned by the `lazy` standard library function:

```
class Person(val name: String) {
    val emails by lazy { loadEmails(this) }
}
```

The `lazy` function returns an object that has a method called `getValue` with the proper signature, so you can use it together with the `by` keyword to create a delegated property. The parameter of `lazy` is a lambda that it calls to initialize the value. The `lazy` function is thread-safe by default; and if you need to, you can specify additional options to tell it which lock to use or to bypass the synchronization entirely if the class is never used in a multithreaded environment.

In the next section, we'll dive into details of how the mechanism of delegated properties works and discuss the conventions in play here.

7.5.3 Implementing delegated properties

To see how delegated properties are implemented, let's take another example: the task of notifying listeners when a property of an object changes. This is useful in many different cases: for example, when objects are presented in a user interface and you want to automatically update the UI when the objects change. Java has a standard mechanism for such notifications: the `PropertyChangeSupport` and `PropertyChangeEvent` classes. Let's see how you can use them in Kotlin without using delegated properties first, and then refactor the code into a delegated property.

The `PropertyChangeSupport` class manages a list of listeners and dispatches `PropertyChangeEvent` events to them. To use it, you normally store an instance of this class as a field of the bean class and delegate property change processing to it.

To avoid adding this field to every class, you'll create a small helper class that will store a `PropertyChangeSupport` instance and keep track of the property change listeners. Later, your classes will extend this helper class to access `changeSupport`:

```
open class PropertyChangeAware {
    protected val changeSupport = PropertyChangeSupport(this)

    fun addPropertyChangeListener(listener: PropertyChangeListener) {
        changeSupport.addPropertyChangeListener(listener)
    }

    fun removePropertyChangeListener(listener: PropertyChangeListener) {
        changeSupport.removePropertyChangeListener(listener)
    }
}
```

Now let's write the `Person` class. You'll define a read-only property (the person's name, which typically doesn't change) and two writable properties: the age and the salary. The class will notify its listeners when either the age or the salary of the person is changed:

```
class Person(
    val name: String, age: Int, salary: Int
) : PropertyChangeAware() {
```

```

var age: Int = age
    set(newValue) {
        val oldValue = field
        field = newValue

        changeSupport.firePropertyChange(
            "age", oldValue, newValue)
    }

var salary: Int = salary
    set(newValue) {
        val oldValue = field
        field = newValue
        changeSupport.firePropertyChange( "sa
            lary", oldValue, newValue)
    }
}

>>> val p = Person("Dmitry", 34, 2000)

>>> p.addPropertyChangeListener(
...     PropertyChangeListener { event ->
...         println("Property ${event.propertyName} changed " +
...             "from ${event.oldValue} to ${event.newValue}")
...     }
... )
>>> p.age = 35
Property age changed from 34 to 35
>>> p.salary = 2100
Property salary changed from 2000 to 2100

```

- ❶ The "field" identifier lets access the property backing field.
- ❷ Notifies listeners about the property change
- ❸ Attaches a property change listener

Note how this code uses the `field` identifier to access the *backing field* of the `age` and `salary` properties, as we discussed in section XREF ID_backing_field.

There's quite a bit of repeated code in the setters. Let's try to extract a class that will store the value of the property and fire the necessary notification:

```

class ObservableProperty(
    val propName: String, var propValue: Int,
    val changeSupport: PropertyChangeSupport
) {
    fun getValue(): Int = propValue
    fun setValue(newValue: Int) {
        val oldValue = propValue
        propValue = newValue
        changeSupport.firePropertyChange(propName, oldValue, newValue)
    }
}

class Person(
    val name: String, age: Int, salary: Int
) : PropertyChangeAware() {

    val _age = ObservableProperty("age", age, changeSupport)
    var age: Int
        get() = _age.getValue()
        set(value) { _age.setValue(value) }
}

```

```

val _salary = ObservableProperty("salary", salary, changeSupport)
var salary: Int
    get() = _salary.getValue()
    set(value) { _salary.setValue(value) }
}

```

Now you're close to understanding how delegated properties work in Kotlin. You've created a class that stores the value of the property and automatically fires property change notifications when it's modified. You removed the duplication in the logic, but instead quite a bit of boilerplate is required to create the `ObservableProperty` instance for each property and to delegate the getter and setter to it. Kotlin's delegated property feature lets you get rid of that boilerplate. But before you can do that, you need to change the signatures of the `ObservableProperty` methods to match those required by Kotlin conventions:

```

class ObservableProperty(
    var propValue: Int, val changeSupport: PropertyChangeSupport
) {
    operator fun getValue(p: Person, prop: KProperty<*>): Int = propValue

    operator fun setValue(p: Person, prop: KProperty<*>, newValue: Int)
    { val oldValue = propValue
      propValue = newValue
      changeSupport.firePropertyChange(prop.name, oldValue, newValue)
    }
}

```

Compared to the previous version, this code has the following changes:

- The `getValue()` and `setValue()` functions are now marked as `operator`, as required for all functions used through conventions;
- You add two parameters to those functions: one to receive the instance for which the property is get or set, and the second to represent the property itself. The property is represented as an object of type `KProperty`. We'll look at it in more detail in section 10.2; for now, all you need to know is that you can access the name of the property as `KProperty.name`.
- You remove the `name` property from the primary constructor because you can now access the property name through `KProperty`.

You can finally use the magic of Kotlin's delegated properties. See how much shorter the code becomes?

```

class Person(
    val name: String, age: Int, salary: Int
) : PropertyChangeAware() {

    var age: Int by ObservableProperty(age, changeSupport)
    var salary: Int by ObservableProperty(salary, changeSupport)
}

```

Through the `by` keyword, the Kotlin compiler does automatically what you did manually in the previous version of the code. Compare this code to the previous version of the `Person` class: the generated code when you use delegated properties is very similar. The object to the right of `by` is called the *delegate*. Kotlin automatically stores the delegate in a hidden property and calls `getValue` and `setValue` on the delegate when you access or modify the main property.

Instead of implementing it by hand, you can use the observable property support in the Kotlin standard library. It turns out the standard library already contains a class similar to `ObservableProperty`. The standard library class isn't coupled to the `PropertyChangeSupport` class you're using here, so you need to pass it a lambda that tells it how to report the changes in the property value.

Here's how you can do that:

```
class Person(  
    val name: String, age: Int, salary: Int  
) : PropertyChangeAware() {  
  
    private val observer = {  
        prop: KProperty<*>, oldValue: Int, newValue: Int ->  
        changeSupport.firePropertyChange(prop.name, oldValue, newValue)  
    }  
  
    var age: Int by Delegates.observable(age, observer)  
    var salary: Int by Delegates.observable(salary, observer)  
}
```

The expression to the right of `by` doesn't have to be a new instance creation. It can also be a function call, another property, or any other expression, as long as the value of this expression is an object on which the compiler can call `getValue` and `setValue` with the correct parameter types. As with other conventions, `getValue` and `setValue` can be either methods declared on the object itself or extension functions.

Note that we've only shown you how to work with delegated properties of type `Int`, to keep the examples simple. The delegated-properties mechanism is fully generic and works with any other type, too.

7.5.4 Delegated-property translation rules

Let's summarize the rules for how delegated properties work. Suppose you have a class with a delegated property:

```
class Foo {  
    var c: Type by MyDelegate()  
}  
  
val foo = Foo()
```

The instance of `MyDelegate` will be stored in a hidden property, which we'll refer to

as `<delegate>`. The compiler will also use an object of type `KProperty` to represent the property. We'll refer to this object as `<property>`.

The compiler generates the following code:

```
class Foo {  
    private val <delegate> = MyDelegate()  
  
    var c: Type  
        set(value: Type) = <delegate>.setValue(c, <property>, value)  
        get() = <delegate>.getValue(c, <property>)  
}
```

Thus, inside every access to the property, the corresponding `getValue` and `setValue` methods are called, as shown in figure 7.11. As you can see, the mechanism is fairly simple, yet it enables many interesting scenarios.

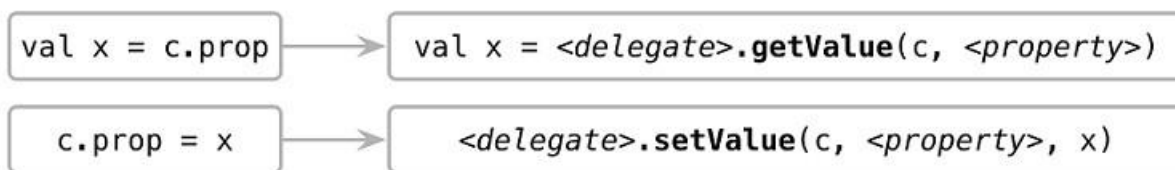


Figure 7.11 Instead of a property access, the `getValue` and `setValue` functions on `<delegate>` are called.

You can customize where the value of the property is stored (in a map, in a database table, or in the cookies of a user session) and also what happens when the property is accessed (to add validation, change notifications, and so on). All of this can be accomplished with compact code. Let's look at one more use for delegated properties in the standard library and then see how you can use them in your own frameworks.

7.5.5 Storing property values in a map

Another common pattern where delegated properties come into play is objects that have a dynamically defined set of attributes associated with them. Such objects are sometimes called *expando objects*. For example, consider a contact-management system that allows you to store arbitrary information about your contacts. Each person in the system has a few required properties (such as a name) that are handled in a special way, as well as any number of additional attributes that can be different for each person (youngest child's birthday, for example).

One way to implement such a system is to store all the attributes of a person in a map and provide properties for accessing the information that requires special handling. Here's an example:

```
class Person {  
    private val _attributes = hashMapOf<String, String>()
```

```

    fun setAttribute(attrName: String, value: String) {
        _attributes[attrName] = value
    }

    val name: String
        get() = _attributes["name"]!! ❶
}

>>> val p = Person()
>>> val data = mapOf("name" to "Dmitry", "company" to "JetBrains")
>>> for ((attrName, value) in data)
...     p.setAttribute(attrName, value)
>>> println(p.name)
Dmitry

```

❶ Retrieves the attribute from the map manually

Here you use a generic API to load the data into the object (in a real project, this could be JSON deserialization or something similar) and then a specific API to access the value of one property. Changing this to use a delegated property is trivial; you can put the map directly after the `by` keyword:

```

class Person {
    private val _attributes = hashMapOf<String, String>()

    fun setAttribute(attrName: String, value: String) {
        _attributes[attrName] = value
    }

    val name: String by _attributes ❶
}

```

❶ Uses the map as a delegated property

This works because the standard library defines `getValue` and `setValue` extension functions on the standard `Map` and `MutableMap` interfaces. The name of the property is automatically used as the key to store the value in the map. As in the previous example, `p.name` hides the call of `_attributes.getValue(p, prop)`, which in turn is implemented as `_attributes[prop.name]`.

7.5.6 Delegated properties in frameworks

Changing the way the properties of an object are stored and modified is extremely useful for framework developers. In section 1.3.1, you saw an example of a database framework using delegated properties. This section shows a similar example and explains how it works.

Let's say your database contains the table `Users` with two columns: `name` of string type and `age` of integer type. You can define the classes `Users` and `User` in Kotlin. Then all the user entities stored in the database can be loaded and changed in Kotlin code via

instances of the `User` class:

```
object Users : IdTable() {  
    val name = varchar("name", length = 50).index()  
    val age = integer("age")  
}  
  
class User(id: EntityID) : Entity(id)  
{  
    var name: String by Users.name  
    var age: Int by Users.age  
}
```

1

2

3

4

- 1 The object corresponds to a table in the database.
- 2 Properties correspond to columns in this table.
- 3 Each instance of `User` corresponds to a specific entity in the table.
- 4 The value of "name" is the value stored in the database for that user.

The `Users` object describes a database table; it's declared as an object because it describes the table as a whole, so you only need one instance of it. Properties of the object represent columns of the table.

The `Entity` class, the superclass of `User`, contains a mapping of database columns to their values for the entity. The properties for the specific `User` have the values `name` and `age` specified in the database for this user.

Using the framework is especially convenient because accessing the property automatically retrieves the corresponding value from the mapping in the `Entity` class, and modifying it marks the object as dirty so that it can be saved to the database when needed. You can write `user.age += 1` in your Kotlin code, and the corresponding entity in the database will be automatically updated.

Now you know enough to understand how a framework with such an API can be implemented. Each of the entity attributes (`name`, `age`) is implemented as a delegated property, using the column object (`Users.name`, `Users.age`) as the delegate:

```
class User(id: EntityID) : Entity(id)  
{  
    var name: String by Users.name  
    var age: Int by Users.age  
}
```

1

- 1 `Users.name` is a delegate for the "name" property.

Let's look at the explicitly specified types of columns:

```
object Users : IdTable() {
    val name: Column<String> = varchar("name", 50).index()
    val age: Column<Int> = integer("age")
}
```

For the `Column` class, the framework defines the `getValue` and `setValue` methods, satisfying the Kotlin convention for delegates:

```
operator fun <T> Column<T>.getValue(o: Entity, desc: KProperty<*>): T {
    // retrieve the value from the database
}
operator fun <T> Column<T>.setValue(o: Entity, desc: KProperty<*>, value: T) {
    // update the value in the database
}
```

You can use the `Column` property (`Users.name`) as a delegate for a delegated property (`name`). When you write `user.age += 1` in your code, the code will perform something similar to `user.ageDelegate.setValue(user.ageDelegate.getValue() + 1)` (omitting the parameters for the property and object instances). The `getValue` and `setValue` methods take care of retrieving and updating the information in the database.

The full implementation of the classes in this example can be found in the source code for the Exposed framework (<https://github.com/JetBrains/Exposed>). We'll return to this framework in chapter 11, to explore the DSL design techniques used there.

7.6 Summary

- Kotlin allows you to overload some of the standard operations by defining functions with the corresponding names, but you can't define your own operators.
- Comparison operators are mapped to calls of `equals` and `compareTo` methods.
- By defining functions named `get`, `set`, and `contains`, you can support the `[]` and `in` operators to make your class similar to Kotlin collections.
- Creating ranges and iterating over collections also work through conventions and arrays.
- Destructuring declarations let you initialize multiple variables by unpacking a single object, which is handy for returning multiple values from a function. They work with data classes automatically, and you can support them for your own classes by defining functions named `componentN()`.
- Delegated properties allow you to reuse logic controlling how property values are stored, initialized, accessed, and modified, which is a powerful tool for building frameworks.
- The `lazy` standard library function provides an easy way to implement lazily initialized properties.
- The `Delegates.observable` function lets you add an observer of property changes.
- Delegated properties can use any map as a property delegate, providing a flexible way to work with objects that have variable sets of attributes.

Higher-order functions: lambdas as parameters and return values



This chapter covers

- Function types
- Higher-order functions and their use for structuring code
- Inline functions
- Non-local returns and labels
- Anonymous functions

You were introduced to lambdas in chapter 5, where we explored the general concept and the standard library functions that use lambdas. Lambdas are a great tool for building abstractions, and of course their power isn't restricted to collections and other classes in the standard library. In this chapter, you'll learn how to create *higher-order functions*—your own functions that take lambdas as parameters or return them. You'll see how higher-order functions can help simplify your code, remove code duplication, and build nice abstractions. You'll also become acquainted with *inline functions*—a powerful Kotlin feature that removes the performance overhead associated with using lambdas and enables more flexible control flow within lambdas.

8.1 Declaring higher-order functions

The key new idea of this chapter is the concept of *higher-order functions*. By definition, a higher-order function is a function that takes another function as an argument or returns one. In Kotlin, functions can be represented as values using lambdas or function references. Therefore, a higher-order function is any function to which you can pass a lambda or a function reference as a parameter, or a function which returns one, or both. For example, the `filter` standard-library function takes a predicate function as a parameter and is therefore a higher-order function:

```
list.filter { x > 0 }
```

In chapter 5, you saw many other higher-order functions declared in the Kotlin standard library: `map`, `with`, and so on. Now you'll learn how you can declare such functions in your own code. To do this, you must first be introduced to *function types*.

8.1.1 Function types

In order to declare a function that takes a lambda as a parameter, you need to know how to declare the type of such a parameter. Before we get to this, let's look at a simpler case and store a lambda in a local variable. You already saw how you can do this without declaring the type, relying on Kotlin's type inference:

```
val sum = { x: Int, y: Int -> x + y }  
val action = { println(42) }
```

In this case, the compiler infers that both the `sum` and `action` variables have function types. Now let's see what an explicit type declaration for these variables looks like:

```
val sum: (Int, Int) -> Int = { x, y -> x + y }  
val action: () -> Unit = { println(42) }
```

1
2

- 1 Function that takes two `Int` parameters and returns an `Int` value
- 2 Function that takes no arguments and doesn't return a value

To declare a function type, you put the function parameter types in parentheses, followed by an arrow and the return type of the function (see figure 8.1).

parameter types return type

(Int, String) -> Unit

Figure 8.1 Function-type syntax in Kotlin

As you remember, the `Unit` type is used to specify that a function returns no meaningful value. The `Unit` return type can be omitted when you declare a regular function, but a function type declaration always requires an explicit return type, so you can't omit `Unit` in this context.

Note how you can omit the types of the parameters `x`, `y` in the lambda expression `{ x, y -> x + y }`. Because they're specified in the function type as part of the variable declaration, you don't need to repeat them in the lambda itself.

Just like with any other function, the return type of a function type can be marked as

nullable:

```
var canReturnNull: (Int, Int) -> Int? = { null }
```

You can also define a nullable variable of a function type. To specify that the variable itself, rather than the return type of the function, is nullable, you need to enclose the entire function type definition in parentheses and put the question mark after the parentheses:

```
var funOrNull: ((Int, Int) -> Int)? = null
```

Note the subtle difference between this example and the previous one. If you omit the parentheses, you'll declare a function type with a nullable return type, and not a nullable variable of a function type.

SIDEBAR

Parameter names of function types

You can specify names for parameters of a function type:

```
fun performRequest(  
    url: String,  
    callback: (code: Int, content: String) -> Unit  
) {  
    /*...*/  
}  
  
>>> val url = "http://kotl.in"  
>>> performRequest(url) { code, content -> /*...*/ }  
>>> performRequest(url) { code, page -> /*...*/ }
```

- 1 The function type now has named parameters.
- 2 You can use the names provided in the API as lambda argument names...
- 3 ...or you can change them.

Parameter names don't affect type matching. When you declare a lambda, you don't have to use the same parameter names as the ones used in the function type declaration. But the names improve readability of the code and can be used in the IDE for completion.

8.1.2 Calling functions passed as arguments

Now that you know how to declare a higher-order function, let's discuss how to implement one. The first example is as simple as possible and uses the same type declaration as the `sum` lambda you saw earlier. The function performs an arbitrary operation on two numbers, 2 and 3, and prints the result.

Listing 8.1 Need a listing caption here

```
fun twoAndThree(operation: (Int, Int) -> Int)
{
    val result = operation(2, 3)
    println("The result is $result")
}

>>> twoAndThree { a, b -> a + b }
The result is 5
>>> twoAndThree { a, b -> a * b }
The result is 6
```

- ❶ Declares a parameter of a function type
- ❷ Calls the parameter of a function type

The syntax for calling the function passed as an argument is the same as calling a regular function: you put the parentheses after the function name, and you put the parameters inside the parentheses.

As a more interesting example, let's reimplement one of the most commonly used standard library functions: the `filter` function. To keep things simple, you'll implement the `filter` function on `String`, but the generic version that works on a collection of any elements is similar. Its declaration is shown in figure 8.2.

The diagram shows the declaration `fun String.filter(predicate: (Char) -> Boolean): String` with labels pointing to its parts:
- **receiver type** points to `String`.
- **parameter name** points to `filter`.
- **parameter function type** points to the entire `(predicate: (Char) -> Boolean)` part.
- **parameter type of function passed as parameter** points to `(Char)`.
- **return type of function passed as parameter** points to `-> Boolean`.
- The final `: String` is the return type of the `filter` function.

Figure 8.2 Declaration of the `filter` function, taking a predicate as a parameter

The `filter` function takes a predicate as a parameter. The type of `predicate` is a function that takes a character parameter and returns a boolean result. The result is `true` if the character passed to the predicate needs to be present in the resulting string, or `false` otherwise.

Here's how the function can be implemented.

Listing 8.2 Need a listing caption here

```
fun String.filter(predicate: (Char) -> Boolean): String
{ val sb = StringBuilder()
  for (index in 0..length - 1)
    { val element = get(index)

      if (predicate(element)) sb.append(element)
    }
  return sb.toString()
}

>>> println("abc".filter { it in 'a'..'z' })
abc
```

- ❶ Calls the function passed as the "predicate" argument
- ❷ Passes a lambda as an argument for "predicate"

The `filter` function implementation is straightforward. It checks whether each element satisfies the predicate and, on success, adds it to the `StringBuilder` containing the result.

TIP

IntelliJ IDEA tip

IntelliJ IDEA supports smart stepping into lambda code in the debugger (for the cases when it's possible—when lambdas are inlined). If you step through the previous example, you'll see how execution moves between the body of the `filter` function and the lambda you pass through it, as the function processes each element in the input list.

8.1.3 Using function types from Java

Under the hood, function types are declared as regular interfaces. There are many of them, corresponding to different numbers of function arguments: `Function0<R>` (this function takes no arguments), `Function1<P1, R>` (this function takes one argument), and so on.

Kotlin functions that use function types can be called easily from Java. Java 8 lambdas are automatically converted to values of function types:

```
/* Kotlin declaration */
fun processTheAnswer(f: (Int) -> Int)
{ println(f(42))
}
```

```
/* Java */
>>> processTheAnswer(number -> number + 1);
43
```

In older Java versions, you can pass an instance of an anonymous class implementing the `invoke` method from the corresponding function interface:

```
/* Java */
>>> processTheAnswer(
...     new Function1<Integer, Integer>() {
...         @Override
...         public Integer invoke(Integer number)
...             { System.out.println(number);
...               return number + 1;
...             }
...     });
43
```

1

- 1 Uses the Kotlin function type from Java code (prior to Java 8)

In Java, you can easily use extension functions from the Kotlin standard library that expect lambdas as arguments. Note, however, that they don't look as nice as in Kotlin—you have to pass a receiver as a first argument explicitly:

```
/* Java */
>>> List<String> strings = new ArrayList();
>>> strings.add("42");
>>> CollectionsKt.forEach(strings, s -> {
...     System.out.println(s);
...     return Unit.INSTANCE;
... });
```

1

2

- 1 You can use a function from the Kotlin standard library in Java code.
- 2 You have to return a value of `Unit` type explicitly.

In Java, your function or lambda can return `Unit`. But because the `Unit` type has a value in Kotlin, you need to return it explicitly. You can't pass a lambda returning `void` as an argument of a function type that returns `Unit`, like `(String) Unit` in the previous example. Plans call for the requirement to return `Unit.INSTANCE` to be changed in future versions of Kotlin.

8.1.4 Default and null values for parameters with function types

When you declare a parameter of a function type, you can also specify its default value. To see where this can be useful, let's go back to the `joinToString` function that we discussed in chapter 3. Here's the implementation we ended up with.

Listing 8.3 Need a listing caption here

```
fun <T>
    Collection<T>.joinToString(
        separator: String = " "
```



```

        prefix: String = "",
        postfix: String = ""
    ): String {
        val result = StringBuilder(prefix)

        for ((index, element) in this.withIndex()) {
            if (index > 0) result.append(separator)
            result.append(element)
        }

        result.append(postfix)
        return result.toString()
    }

```

1

1 Converts the object to a string using the default toString method

This implementation is flexible, but it doesn't let you control one key aspect of the conversion: how individual values in the collection are converted to strings. The code uses `StringBuilder.append(o: Any?)`, which always converts the object to a string using the `toString` method. This is good in a lot of cases, but not always. You now know that you can pass a lambda to specify how values are converted into strings. But requiring all callers to pass that lambda would be cumbersome, because most of them are OK with the default behavior. To solve this, you can define a parameter of a function type and specify a default value for it as a lambda.

Listing 8.4 Need a listing caption here

```

fun <T>
    Collection<T>.joinToString(
        separator: String = ", ",
        prefix: String = "",
        postfix: String = "",
        transform: (T) -> String = { it.toString() }
    ): String {
        val result = StringBuilder(prefix)

        for ((index, element) in this.withIndex())
        { if (index > 0)
            result.append(separator)
            result.append(transform(element))
        }

        result.append(postfix)
        return result.toString()
    }

>>> val letters = listOf("Alpha", "Beta")
>>> println(letters.joinToString())
Alpha, Beta
>>> println(letters.joinToString { it.toLowerCase() })
alpha, beta
>>> println(letters.joinToString(separator = "! ", postfix = "! ",
...     transform = { it.toUpperCase() }))

```

1

1

2

2

5

- 1 Declares a parameter of a function type with a default value
- 2 Calls the function passed as an argument
- 3 Uses the default conversion function
- 4 Passes a lambda as a parameter
- 5 Uses the named argument syntax for passing a lambda parameter

Note that this function is generic: it has a type parameter `T` denoting the type of the element in a collection. The `transform` lambda will receive an argument of that type.

Declaring a default value of a function type requires no special syntax—you just put the value as a lambda after the `=` sign. The examples show different ways of calling the function: omitting the lambda entirely (so that the default `toString()` conversion is used), passing it outside of the parentheses, and passing it as a named argument.

An alternative approach is to declare a parameter of a nullable function type. Note that you can't call the function passed in such a parameter directly: Kotlin will refuse to compile such code, because it detects the possibility of null pointer exceptions in this case. One option is to check for `null` explicitly:

```
fun foo(callback: (() -> Unit)?) {  
    // ...  
    if (callback != null)  
        { callback()  
    }  
}
```

A shorter version makes use of the fact that a variable of a function type is an implementation of a `FunctionN` interface. The Kotlin standard library defines a series of interfaces (`Function0`, `Function1`, and so on), representing functions that have the corresponding number of arguments. Each interface defines a single `invoke` method, and calling it will execute the function. A variable of a function type is an instance of a class implementing the corresponding `FunctionN` interface, with the `invoke` method containing the body of the lambda. As a regular method, `invoke` can be called through the safe-call syntax: `callback?.invoke()`.

Here's how you can use this technique to rewrite the `joinToString()` function:

Listing 8.5 Need a listing caption here

```
fun <T>  
    Collection<T>.joinToString(  
        separator: String = ", ",  
        prefix: String = "",  
        postfix: String = "",  
        transform: ((T) -> String)? = null  
    ): String {  
        val result = StringBuilder(prefix)  
        1
```

```

for ((index, element) in this.withIndex())
{ if (index > 0)
  result.append(separator)
  val str = transform?.invoke(element)
    ?: element.toString()
  result.append(str)
}

result.append(postfix)
return result.toString()
}

```

- ❶ Declares a nullable parameter of a function type
- ❷ Uses the safe-call syntax to call the function
- ❸ Uses the Elvis operator to handle the case when a callback wasn't specified

Now you know how to write functions that take functions as arguments. Let's look next at the other kind of higher-order functions: functions that return other functions.

8.1.5 Returning functions from functions

The requirement to return a function from another function doesn't come up as often as passing functions to other functions, but it's still useful. For instance, imagine a piece of logic in a program that can vary depending on the state of the program or other conditions—for example, calculating the cost of shipping depending on the selected shipping method. You can define a function that chooses the appropriate logic variant and returns it as another function. Here's how this looks as code:

Listing 8.6 Need a listing caption here

```

enum class Delivery { STANDARD, EXPEDITED }

class Order(val itemCount: Int)

fun getShippingCostCalculator(
    delivery: Delivery): (Order) -> Double
{ if (delivery == Delivery.EXPEDITED) {
    return { order -> 6 + 2.1 * order.itemCount }
}

    return { order -> 1.2 * order.itemCount }
}

>>> val calculator =
...     getShippingCostCalculator(Delivery.EXPEDITED)
>>> println("Shipping costs ${calculator(Order(3))}")
Shipping costs 12.3

```

- ❶ Declares a function that returns a function
- ❷

- Returns lambdas from the function
- ③ Stores the returned function in a variable
- ④ Invokes the returned function

To declare a function that returns another function, you specify a function type as its return type. In listing 8.6, `getShippingCostCalculator` returns a function that takes an `Order` and returns a `Double`. To return a function, you write a `return` expression followed by a lambda, a method reference, or another expression of a function type, such as a local variable.

Let's see another example where returning functions from functions is useful. Suppose you're working on a GUI contact-management application, and you need to determine which contacts should be displayed, based on the state of the UI. Let's say the UI allows you to type a string and then shows only contacts with names starting with that string; it also lets you hide contacts that don't have a phone number specified. You'll use the `ContactListFilters` class to store the state of the options.

Listing 8.7 Need a listing caption here

```
class ContactListFilters
{
    var prefix: String =
        ""
    var onlyWithPhoneNumber: Boolean = false
}
```

When a user types `D` to see the contacts whose first or last name starts with `D`, the `prefix` value is updated. We've omitted the code that makes the necessary changes. (A full UI application would be too much code for the book, so we show a simplified example.)

To decouple the contact-list display logic from the filtering UI, you can define a function that creates a predicate used to filter the contact list. This predicate checks the `prefix` and also checks that the phone number is present if required:

Listing 8.8 Need a listing caption here

```
data class Person(
    val firstName: String,
    val lastName: String,
    val phoneNumber: String?
)

class ContactListFilters
{
    var prefix: String =
        ""
    var onlyWithPhoneNumber: Boolean = false

    fun getPredicate(): (Person) -> Boolean
    {
        val startsWithPrefix = { p: Person
            ->
```

```

    }
    if (!onlyWithPhoneNumber) {
        return startsWithPrefix
    }
    return { startsWithPrefix(it)
            && it.phoneNumber != null }
}

>>> val contacts = listOf(Person("Dmitry", "Jemerov", "123-4567"),
...                          Person("Svetlana", "Isakova", null))
>>> val contactListFilters = ContactListFilters()
>>> with (contactListFilters) {
>>>     prefix = "Dm"
>>>     onlyWithPhoneNumber = true
>>> }
>>> println(contacts.filter(
...     contactListFilters.getPredicate()))
[Person(firstName=Dmitry, lastName=Jemerov, phoneNumber=123-4567)]

```

- ❶ Declares a function that returns a function
- ❷ Returns a variable of a function type
- ❸ Return a lambda from this function
- ❹ Passes the function returned by `getPredicate` as parameter to "filter"

As you can see, the `getPredicate` method returns a function value that you pass to the `filter` function as a parameter. Kotlin function types allow you to do this just as easily as for values of other types, such as strings.

Higher-order functions give you an extremely powerful tool for improving the structure of your code and removing duplication. Let's see how lambdas can help extract repeated logic from your code.

8.1.6 Removing duplication through lambdas

Function types and lambda expressions together constitute a great tool to create reusable code. Many kinds of code duplication that previously could be avoided only through cumbersome constructions can now be eliminated by using succinct lambda expressions.

Let's look at an example that analyzes visits to a website. The class `SiteVisit` stores the path of each visit, its duration, and the user's OS. Various OSs are represented with an enum:

Listing 8.9 Need a listing caption here

```

data class
    SiteVisit( val
        path: String,
        val duration: Double,
        val os: OS
    )

enum class OS { WINDOWS, LINUX, MAC, IOS, ANDROID }

```

```
val log = listOf(
    SiteVisit("/", 34.0, OS.WINDOWS),
    SiteVisit("/", 22.0, OS.MAC),
    SiteVisit("/login", 12.0, OS.WINDOWS),
    SiteVisit("/signup", 8.0, OS.IOS),
    SiteVisit("/", 16.3, OS.ANDROID)
)
```

Imagine that you need to display the average duration of visits from Windows machines. You can solve the task using the `average` function.

Listing 8.10 Need a listing caption here

```
val averageWindowsDuration = log
    .filter { it.os == OS.WINDOWS }
    .map(SiteVisit::duration)
    .average()

>>> println(averageWindowsDuration)
23.0
```

Now, suppose you need to calculate the same statistics for Mac users. To avoid duplication, you can extract the platform as a parameter.

Listing 8.11 Need a listing caption here

```
fun List<SiteVisit>.averageDurationFor(os: OS) = ❶
    filter { it.os == os }.map(SiteVisit::duration).average()

>>> println(log.averageDurationFor(OS.WINDOWS))
23.0
>>> println(log.averageDurationFor(OS.MAC))
22.0
```

❶ Duplicated code extracted into the function

Note how making this function an extension improves readability. You can even declare this function as a local extension function if it makes sense only in the local context.

But it's not powerful enough. Imagine that you're interested in the average duration of visits from the mobile platforms (currently you recognize two of them: iOS and Android).

Listing 8.12 Need a listing caption here

```
val averageMobileDuration = log
    .filter { it.os in setOf(OS.IOS, OS.ANDROID) }
    .map(SiteVisit::duration)
    .average()
```

```
>>> println(averageMobileDuration)
12.15
```

Now a simple parameter representing the platform doesn't do the job. It's also likely that you'll want to query the log with more complex conditions, such as "What's the average duration of visits to the signup page from iOS?" Lambdas can help. You can use function types to extract the required condition into a parameter.

Listing 8.13 Need a listing caption here

```
fun List<SiteVisit>.averageDurationFor(predicate: (SiteVisit) -> Boolean) =
    filter(predicate).map(SiteVisit::duration).average()

>>> println(log.averageDurationFor {
...     it.os in setOf(OS.ANDROID, OS.IOS) })
12.15
>>> println(log.averageDurationFor {
...     it.os == OS.IOS && it.path == "/signup" })
8.0
```

As you can see, function types can help eliminate code duplication. If you're tempted to copy and paste a piece of the code, it's likely that the duplication can be avoided. With lambdas, you can extract not only the data that's repeated, but the behavior as well.

NOTE

Note

Some well-known design patterns can be simplified using function types and lambda expressions. Let's consider the Strategy pattern, for example. Without lambda expressions, it requires you to declare an interface with several implementations for each possible strategy. With function types in your language, you can use a general function type to describe the strategy, and pass different lambda expressions as different strategies.

We've discussed how to create higher-order functions. Next, let's look at their performance. Won't your code be slower if you begin using higher-order functions for everything, instead of writing good-old loops and conditions? The next section discusses why this isn't always the case and how the `inline` keyword helps.

8.2 Inline functions: removing the overhead of lambdas

You've probably noticed that the shorthand syntax for passing a lambda parameter to a function in Kotlin looks similar to the syntax of regular statements such as `if` and `for`. You saw this in chapter 5, when we discussed the `with` and `apply` functions. But what about performance? Aren't we creating unpleasant surprises by defining functions that look exactly like Java statements but run much more slowly?

In chapter 5, we explained that lambdas are normally compiled to anonymous classes. But that means every time you use a lambda expression, an extra class is created; and if

the lambda captures some variables, then a new object is created on every invocation. This introduces runtime overhead, causing an implementation that uses a lambda to be less efficient than a function that executes the same code directly.

This question arises: is it possible to tell the compiler to generate code that's as efficient as a Java statement and yet lets you extract the repeated logic into a library function? Indeed, the Kotlin compiler allows you to do that. If you mark a function with the `inline` keyword, the compiler won't generate a function call when this function is used and instead will replace every call to the function with the actual code implementing the function. Let's explore how that works in detail and look at specific examples.

8.2.1 How inlining works

When you declare a function as `inline`, its body is inlined—in other words, it's substituted directly instead of the function invocation. Let's look at an example to understand the resulting code.

The function in listing 8.14 can be used to ensure that a shared resource isn't accessed concurrently by multiple threads. The function locks a `Lock` object, executes the given block of code, and then releases the lock.

Listing 8.14 Need a listing caption here

```
inline fun <T> synchronized(lock: Lock, action: () -> T): T
{
    lock.lock()
    try {
        return action()
    }
    finally {
        lock.unlock()
    }
}

val l = Lock()
synchronized(l) {
    // ...
}
```

The syntax for calling this function looks exactly like using the `synchronized` statement in Java. The difference is that the Java `synchronized` statement can be used with any object, whereas this function requires to pass a `Lock` instance. The definition shown here is just an example; the Kotlin standard library defines a different version of `synchronized` that accepts any object as an argument.

But using explicit locks for synchronization provides for more reliable and maintainable code. In section 8.2.5, we'll introduce the `withLock` function from the Kotlin standard library, which you should prefer for executing the given action under the lock.

Because you've declared the `synchronized` function as `inline`, the code generated

for every call to it is the same as for a `synchronized` statement in Java. The following call

```
fun foo(l: Lock)
{ println("Before
sync") synchronized(l)
{
    println("Action")
}
println("After sync")
}
```

will be compiled to the same bytecode as the code shown in figure 8.3.

```
fun __foo__(l: Lock) {
    println("Before sync")
    l.lock()
    try {
        println("Action")
    } finally {
        l.unlock()
    }
    println("After sync")
}
```

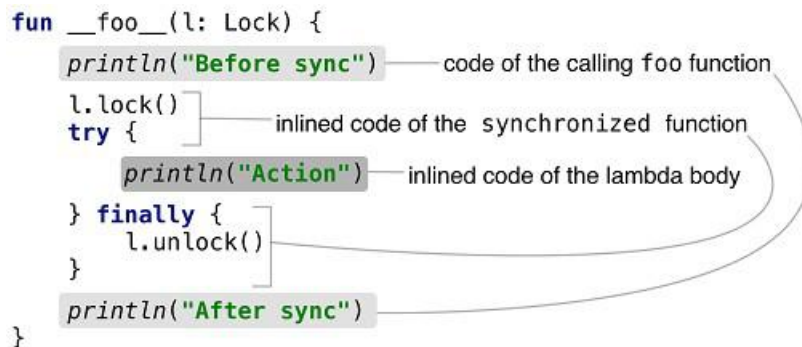


Figure 8.3 The compiled version of the foo function

Note that the inlining is applied to the lambda expression as well as the implementation of the `synchronized` function. The bytecode generated from the lambda becomes part of the definition of the calling function and isn't wrapped in an anonymous class implementing a function interface.

Note that it's also possible to call an inline function and pass the parameter of a function type from a variable:

```
class LockOwner(val lock: Lock) {
    fun runUnderLock(body: () -> Unit)
    { synchronized(lock, body)
    }
}
```

In this case, the lambda's code isn't available at the site where the inline function is called, and therefore it isn't inlined. Only the body of the `synchronized` function is inlined; the lambda is called as usual.

If you have two uses of an inline function in different locations with different lambdas, then every call site will be inlined independently. The code of the inline function will be copied to both locations where you use it, with different lambdas substituted into it.

8.2.2 Restrictions on inline functions

Due to the way inlining is performed, not every function that uses lambdas can be inlined. When the function is inlined, the body of the lambda expression that's passed as an argument is substituted directly into the resulting code. That restricts the possible uses of the corresponding parameter in the function body. If this parameter is called, such code can be easily inlined. But if the parameter is stored somewhere for further use, the code of the lambda expression can't be inlined, because there must be an object that contains this code.

Generally, the parameter can be inlined if it's called directly or passed as an argument to another `inline` function. Otherwise, the compiler will prohibit the inlining of the parameter with an error message that says "Illegal usage of inline-parameter."

For example, various functions that work on sequences return instances of classes that represent the corresponding sequence operation and receive the lambda as a constructor parameter. Here's how the `Sequence.map` function is defined:

```
fun <T, R> Sequence<T>.map(transform: (T) -> R): Sequence<R>
    { return TransformingSequence(this, transform)
    }
```

The `map` function doesn't call the function passed as the `transform` parameter directly. Instead, it passes this function to the constructor of a class that stores it in a property. To support that, the lambda passed as the `transform` argument needs to be compiled into the standard non-inline representation, as an anonymous class implementing a function interface.

If you have a function that takes two or more lambdas as parameters, you may choose to inline only some of them. This makes sense when one of the lambdas is expected to contain a lot of code or is used in a way that doesn't allow inlining. You can mark the parameters that accept such non-inlineable lambdas with the `noinline` modifier:

```
inline fun foo(inlined: () -> Unit, noinline notInlined: () -> Unit) {
    // ...
}
```

Later in the book, in section 9.2.4, you'll see another case where it makes sense to use `noinline`.

8.2.3 Inlining collection operations

Let's consider the performance of Kotlin standard library functions that work on collections. Most of the collection functions in the standard library take lambda expressions as arguments. Would it be more efficient to implement these operations directly, instead of using the standard library functions?

For example, let's compare the ways you can filter a list of people, shown in listings 8.15 and 8.16.

Listing 8.15 Need a listing caption here

```
data class Person(val name: String, val age: Int)

val people = listOf(Person("Alice", 29), Person("Bob", 31))
```

Listing 8.16 Need a listing caption here

```
>>> println(people.filter { it.age < 30 })
[Person(name=Alice, age=29)]
```

The previous code can be rewritten without lambda expressions, as shown next.

Listing 8.17 Need a listing caption here

```
>>> val result = mutableListOf<Person>()
>>> for (person in people) {
>>>     if (person.age < 30) result.add(person)
>>> }
>>> println(result)
[Person(name=Alice, age=29)]
```

In Kotlin, the `filter` function is declared as `inline`. It means the bytecode of the `filter` function, together with the bytecode of the lambda passed to it, will be inlined where `filter` is called. As a result, the bytecode generated for the first version that uses `filter` is roughly the same as the bytecode generated for the second version. You can safely use idiomatic operations on collections, and Kotlin's support for inline functions ensures that you don't need to worry about performance.

Imagine now that you apply two operations `filter` and `map` in a chain.

Listing 8.18 Need a listing caption here

```
>>> println(people.filter { it.age > 30 }
...         .map(Person::name))
[Bob]
```

This example uses a lambda expression and a member reference. Once again, both `filter` and `map` are declared as `inline`, so their bodies are inlined, and no extra classes or objects are created. But the code creates an intermediate collection to store the result of filtering the list. The code generated from the `filter` function adds elements to that collection, and the code generated from `map` reads from it.

If the number of elements to process is large, and the overhead of an intermediate

collection becomes a concern, you can use a sequence instead, by adding an `asSequence` call to the chain. But as you saw in the previous section, lambdas used to process a sequence aren't inlined. Each intermediate sequence is represented as an object storing a lambda in its field, and the terminal operation causes a chain of calls through each intermediate sequence to be performed. Therefore, even though operations on sequences are lazy, you shouldn't strive to insert an `asSequence` call into every chain of collection operations in your code. This helps only for large collections; smaller ones can be processed nicely with regular collection operations.

8.2.4 *Deciding when to declare functions as inline*

Now that you've learned about the benefits of the `inline` keyword, you might want to start using it throughout your codebase, trying to make it run faster. As it turns out, this isn't a good idea. Using the `inline` keyword can improve performance only with functions that take lambdas as parameters.¹²

Footnote 12 All other cases require additional measuring and investigation.

For regular function calls, the Java virtual machine already provides powerful inlining support. It analyzes the execution of your code and inlines calls whenever doing so provides the most benefit. This happens automatically and at the machine-code level. In bytecode, the implementation of each function is repeated only once and doesn't need to be copied every place where the function is called, as with Kotlin's `inline` functions. What's more, the stacktrace is clearer if the function is called directly.

On the other hand, inlining functions with lambda parameters is beneficial. First, the overhead you avoid through inlining is more significant. You save not only on the call, but also on the creation of the extra class for each lambda and an object for the lambda instance. Second, the JVM currently isn't smart enough to always perform inlining through the call and the lambda. Finally, inlining lets you use features that are impossible to make work with regular lambdas, such as non-local returns, which we'll discuss later in this chapter.

But you should still pay attention to the code size when deciding whether to use the `inline` modifier. If the function you want to inline is large, copying its bytecode into every call site could be expensive in terms of code size. In that case, you should try to extract the code not related to the lambda arguments into a separate non-inline function. You can verify for yourself that the `inline` functions in the Kotlin standard library are always small.

Next, let's see how higher-order functions can help you improve your code.

8.2.5 Using inlined lambdas for resource management

One common pattern where lambdas can remove duplicate code is resource management: acquiring a resource before an operation and releasing it afterward. *Resource* here can mean many different things: a file, a lock, a database transaction, and so on. The standard way to implement such a pattern is to use a `try / finally` statement in which the resource is acquired before the `try` block and released in the `finally` block.

Earlier in this section, you saw an example of how you can encapsulate the logic of the `try / finally` statement in a function and pass the code using the resource as a lambda to that function. The example showed the `synchronized` function, which has the same syntax as the `synchronized` statement in Java: it takes the lock object as a parameter. The Kotlin standard library defines another function called `withLock`, which has a more idiomatic API for the same task: it's an extension method on the `Lock` interface. Here's how it can be used:

```
val l: Lock = ...  
l.withLock {  
    // access the resource protected by this lock  
}
```

- 1 Executes the given action under the lock

Here's how the `withLock` function is defined in the Kotlin library:

```
fun <T> Lock.withLock(action: () -> T): T  
{  
    lock()  
    try {  
        return action()  
    } finally {  
        unlock()  
    }  
}
```

- 1 The idiom of working with locks is extracted into a separate function.

Files are another common type of resource where this pattern is used. Java 7 has even introduced special syntax for this pattern: the *try-with-resources* statement. The following listing shows a Java method that uses this statement to read the first line from a file.

Listing 8.19 Need a listing caption here

```
/* Java */  
static String readFirstLineFromFile(String path) throws IOException {
```

```

try (BufferedReader br =
    new BufferedReader(new FileReader(path)))
    { return br.readLine();
    }
}

```

Kotlin doesn't have equivalent syntax, because the same task can be accomplished almost as seamlessly through a function with a lambda parameter. The function is called `use` and is included in the Kotlin standard library. Here's how you can use this function to rewrite listing 8.19 in Kotlin.

Listing 8.20 Need a listing caption here

```

fun readFirstLineFromFile(path: String): String
{
    1  BufferedReader(FileReader(path)).use { br -
    >
    2      return br.readLine()
    }
}

```

- ❶ Creates the `BufferedReader`, calls the "use" function, and passes a lambda to execute the operation on the file
- ❷ Returns the line from the function

The `use` function is an extension function called on a closable resource; it receives a lambda as a parameter. The function calls the lambda and ensures that the resource is closed, regardless of whether the lambda completes normally or throws an exception. Of course, the `use` function is inlined, so its use doesn't incur any performance overhead.

Note that in the body of the lambda, you use a non-local `return` to return a value from the `readFirstLineFromFile` function. Let's discuss the use of `return` expressions in lambdas in detail.

8.3 Control flow in higher-order functions

When you start using lambdas to replace imperative code constructs such as loops, you quickly run into the issue of `return` expressions. Putting a `return` statement in the middle of a loop is a no-brainer. But what if you convert the loop into the use of a function such as `filter`? How does `return` work in that case? Let's look at some examples.

8.3.1 Return statements in lambdas: return from an enclosing function

We'll compare two different ways of iterating over a collection. In listing 8.21, it's clear that if the person's name is Alice, you return from the function `lookForAlice`.

Listing 8.21 Need a listing caption here

```

fun lookForAlice(people: List<Person>)
{
    for (person in people) {
        if (person.name == "Alice")
        {
            println("Found!")
            return
        }
    }
    println("Alice is not found")
}

```

❶

```

>>> lookForAlice(people)
Found!

```

❶ This line is printed if there's no Alice among "people".

Is it safe to rewrite this code using `forEach` iteration? Will the `return` statement mean the same thing? Yes, it's safe to use the `forEach` function instead, as shown next.

Listing 8.22 Need a listing caption here

```

fun lookForAlice(people: List<Person>)
{
    people.forEach {
        if (it.name == "Alice")
        {
            println("Found!")
            return
        }
    }
    println("Alice is not found")
}

```

❶

❶ Returns from a function as in the previous example

If you use the `return` keyword in a lambda, it *returns from the function in which you called the lambda*, not just from the lambda itself. Such a `return` statement is called a *non-local return*, because it returns from a larger block than the block containing the `return` statement.

To understand the logic behind the rule, think about using a `return` keyword in a `for` loop or a `synchronized` block in a Java method. It's obvious that it returns from the method and not from the loop or block. Kotlin allows you to preserve the same behavior when you switch from language features to functions that take lambdas as arguments.

Note that the return from the outer function is possible *only if the function that takes the lambda as an argument is inlined*. In the previous example, the body of the `forEach` function is inlined together with the body of the lambda, so it's easy to compile the `return` expression so that it returns from the enclosing function. Using the `return` expression in lambdas passed to non-inline functions isn't allowed. A non-inline function can save the lambda passed to it in a variable and execute it later, when the function has

already returned, so it's too late for the lambda to affect when the surrounding function returns.

8.3.2 Returning from lambdas: return with a label

You can write a *local* return from a lambda expression as well. A local return in a lambda is similar to a `break` expression in a `for` loop. It stops the execution of the lambda and continues execution of the code from which the lambda was invoked. To distinguish a local return from a non-local one, you use *labels*. You can label a lambda expression from which you want to return, and then refer to this label after the `return` keyword.

Listing 8.23 Need a listing caption here

```
fun lookForAlice(people: List<Person>)
{
    people.forEach label@{
        if (it.name == "Alice") return@label
    }
    println("Alice might be somewhere")
}

>>> lookForAlice(people)
Alice might be somewhere
```

- ❶ Labels the lambda expression
- ❷ `return@label` refers to this label.
- ❸ This line is always printed.

To label a lambda expression, put the label name (which can be any identifier), followed by the `@` character, before the opening curly brace of the lambda. To return from a lambda, put the `@` character followed by the label name after the `return` keyword. This is illustrated in figure 8.4.

```
people.forEach label@{
    if (it.name == "Alice") return@label
}
```

Figure 8.4 Returns from a lambda use the '@' character to mark a label.

Alternatively, the name of the function that takes this lambda as an argument can be used as a label.

Listing 8.24 Need a listing caption here

```
fun lookForAlice(people: List<Person>)
{
    people.forEach {
```



```

        if (it.name == "Alice") return@forEach
    }
    println("Alice might be somewhere")
}

```

- 1 `return@forEach` returns from the lambda expression.

Note that if you specify the label of the lambda expression explicitly, labeling using the function name doesn't work. A lambda expression can't have more than one label.

SIDEBAR

Labeled "this" expression

The same rules apply to the labels of `this` expressions. In chapter 5, we discussed lambdas with receivers—lambdas that contain an implicit context object that can be accessed via a `this` reference in a lambda. If you specify the label of a lambda with a receiver, you can access its implicit receiver using the corresponding labeled `this` expression:

```

>>> println(StringBuilder().apply sb@{
...     listOf(1, 2, 3).apply {
...         this@sb.append(this.toString())
...     }
... })
[1, 2, 3]

```

- 1 This lambda's implicit receiver is accessed by `this@sb`.
- 2 "this" refers to the closest implicit receiver in the scope.
- 3 All implicit receivers can be accessed, the outer ones via explicit labels.

As with labels for `return` expressions, you can specify the label of the lambda expression explicitly or use the function name instead.

The non-local return syntax is fairly verbose and becomes cumbersome if a lambda contains multiple return expressions. As a solution, you can use an alternate syntax to pass around blocks of code: *anonymous functions*.

8.3.3 Anonymous functions: local returns by default

An anonymous function is a different way to write a block of code passed to a function. Let's start with an example.

Listing 8.25 Need a listing caption here

```

fun lookForAlice(people: List<Person>)
{ people.forEach(fun (person) {

```

```

        if (person.name == "Alice") return
        println("${person.name} is not Alice")
    })
}

>>> lookForAlice(people)
Bob is not Alice

```

- ❶ Uses an anonymous function instead of a lambda expression
- ❷ "return" refers to the closest function: an anonymous function.

You can see that an anonymous function looks similar to a regular function, except that its name and parameter types are omitted. Here's another example.

Listing 8.26 Need a listing caption here

```

people.filter(fun (person): Boolean
    { return person.age < 30
})

```

Anonymous functions follow the same rules as regular functions for specifying the return type. Anonymous functions with a block body, such as the one in listing 8.26, require the return type to be specified explicitly. If you use an expression body, you can omit the return type.

Listing 8.27 Need a listing caption here

```

people.filter(fun (person) = person.age < 30)

```

Inside an anonymous function, a `return` expression without a label returns from the anonymous function, not from the enclosing one. The rule is simple: *return returns from the closest function declared using the `fun` keyword*. Lambda expressions don't use the `fun` keyword, so a `return` in a lambda returns from the outer function. Anonymous functions do use `fun`; therefore, in the previous example, the anonymous function is the closest matching function. Consequently, the `return` expression returns from the anonymous function, not from the enclosing one. The difference is illustrated in figure 8.5.

```

fun lookForAlice(people: List<Person>) {
    people.forEach(fun(person) {
        if (person.name == "Alice") return
    })
}

fun lookForAlice(people: List<Person>) {
    people.forEach {
        if (it.name == "Alice") return
    }
}

```

Figure 8.5 The return expression returns from the function declared using the fun keyword.

Note that despite the fact that an anonymous function looks similar to a regular function declaration, it's another syntactic form of a lambda expression. The discussion of how lambda expressions are implemented and how they're inlined for inline functions applies to anonymous functions as well.

8.4 Summary

- Function types allow you to declare a variable, parameter, or function return value that holds a reference to a function.
- Higher-order functions take other functions as arguments or return them. You can create such functions by using a function type as the type of a function parameter or return value.
- When an inline function is compiled, its bytecode along with the bytecode of a lambda passed to it is inserted directly into the code of the calling function, which ensures that the call happens with no overhead compared to similar code written directly.
- Higher-order functions facilitate code reuse within the parts of a single component and let you build powerful generic libraries.
- Inline functions allow you to use *non-local returns*—return expressions placed in a lambda that return from the enclosing function.
- Anonymous functions provide an alternative syntax to lambda expressions with different rules for resolving the `return` expressions. You can use them if you need to write a block of code with multiple exit points.

9 Generics

This chapter covers

- Declaring generic functions and classes
- Type erasure and reified type parameters
- Declaration-site and use-site variance

You've seen a few code examples that use generics in this book already. The basic concepts of declaring and using generic classes and functions in Kotlin are similar to Java, so the earlier examples should have been clear without a detailed explanation. In this chapter, we'll return to some of the examples and look at them in more detail.

We'll then go deeper into the topic of generics and explore new concepts introduced in Kotlin, such as reified type parameters and declaration-site variance. These concepts may be novel to you, but don't worry; the chapter covers them thoroughly.

Reified type parameters allow you to refer at runtime to the specific types used as type arguments in an inline function call. (For normal classes or functions, this isn't possible, because type arguments are erased at runtime.)

Declaration-site variance lets you specify whether a generic type with a type argument is a subtype or a supertype of another generic type with the same base type and a different type of argument. For example, it regulates whether it's possible to pass arguments of type `List<Int>` to functions expecting `List<Any>`. *Use-site variance* achieves the same goal for a specific use of a generic type and therefore accomplishes the same task as Java's wildcards.

9.1 Generic type parameters

Generics allow you to define types that have *type parameters*. When an instance of such a type is created, type parameters are substituted with specific types called *type arguments*. For example, if you have a variable of type `List`, it's useful to know what kind of things are stored in that list. The type parameter lets you specify exactly that—instead of "This variable holds a list," you can say something like "This variable holds a list of strings." Kotlin's syntax for saying "a list of strings" looks the same as in Java: `List<String>`. You can also declare multiple type parameters for a class. For example, the `Map` class has type parameters for the key type and the value type: `Map<String, Person>`. So far, everything looks exactly as it does in Java.

Just as with types in general, type arguments can often be inferred by the Kotlin compiler:

```
val authors = listOf("Dmitry", "Svetlana")
```

Because the two values passed to the `listOf()` function are both strings, the compiler infers that you're creating a `List<String>`. On the other hand, if you need to create an empty list, there's nothing from which to infer the type parameter, so you need to specify it explicitly. In the case of creating a list, you have a choice between specifying the type as part of the variable declaration and specifying a type argument for the function that creates a list. The following example shows how this is done:

```
val readers: MutableList<String> = mutableListOf()
val readers = mutableListOf<String>()
```

These declarations are equivalent. All the collection-creation functions are covered in Chapter 6.

NOTE

Note

Unlike Java, Kotlin always requires type arguments to be either specified explicitly or inferred by the compiler. Because generics were added to Java only in version 1.5, it had to maintain compatibility with code written for older versions, so it allows you to use a generic type without type arguments—a so-called *raw type*. For example, in Java, you can declare a variable of type `List` without specifying what kind of things it contains. Because Kotlin has had generics from the beginning, it doesn't support raw types, and the type arguments must always be defined.

9.1.1 Generic functions and properties

If you're going to write a function that works with a list, and you want it to work with any list (a generic one), not a list of elements of a specific type, you need to write a generic function. A generic function has type parameters of its own. These type parameters must be replaced with the specific type arguments on each function invocation.

Most of the library functions working with collections are generic. For example, let's look at the `slice` function declaration, shown in figure 9.1. This function returns a list containing only elements at indices in the specified range.

```
type parameter declaration
fun <T> List<T>.slice(indices: IntRange): List<T>
type parameter is used in receiver and return types
```

Figure 9.1 The generic function `slice` has the type parameter `T`.

The function's type parameter `T` is used in the receiver type and in the return type; both of them are `List<T>`. When you call such a function on a specific list, you can specify the type argument explicitly. But in almost all cases you don't need to, because the compiler infers it:

Listing 9.1 Need a caption here

```
>>> val letters = ('a'..'z').toList()
>>> println(letters.slice<Char>(0..2))
[a, b, c]
>>> println(letters.slice(10..13))
[k, l, m, n]
```

- ❶ Specifies the type argument explicitly
- ❷ The compiler infers that `T` is `Char` here.

The result type of both of these calls is `List<Char>`. The compiler substitutes the inferred type `Char` for `T` in the function return type `List<T>`.

In chapter 8, you saw the declaration of the `filter` function, which takes a parameter of the function type `(T) -> Boolean`. Let's see how you can apply it to the `readers` and `authors` variables from the previous examples.

Listing 9.2 Need a caption here

```
val authors = listOf("Dmitry", "Svetlana")
```

```
val readers = mutableListOf<String>(/* ... */)

fun <T> List<T>.filter(predicate: (T) -> Boolean): List<T>

>>> readers.filter { it !in authors }
```

The type of the autogenerated lambda parameter `it` is `String` in this case. The compiler has to infer that: after all, in the declaration of the function, the lambda parameter has a generic type `T` (it's the type of the function argument in `(T) -> Boolean`). The compiler understands that `T` is `String`, because it knows the function should be called on `List<T>`, and the actual type of its receiver, `readers`, is `List<String>`.

You can declare type parameters on methods of classes, top-level functions, and extension functions. In the last case, the type parameter can be used in the types of the receiver and the arguments, as in listings 9.1 and 9.2: the type parameter `T` is part of the receiver `List<T>`, and it's used in the argument function type `(T) -> Boolean` as well.

You can also declare generic extension properties using the same syntax. For example, here's an extension property that returns the element before the last one in a list:

```
val <T> List<T>.penultimate: T
    get() = this[size - 2]

>>> println(listOf(1, 2, 3, 4).penultimate)
3
```

❶

❷

- ❶ This generic extension property can be called on a list of any kind.
- ❷ The type parameter `T` is inferred to be `Int` in this invocation.

SIDEBAR

You can't declare a generic non-extension property

Regular (non-extension) properties can't have type parameters. It's not possible to store multiple values of different types in a property of a class, and therefore declaring a generic non-extension property doesn't make sense. If you try to do that, the compiler reports an error:

```
>>> val <T> x: T = TODO()
ERROR: type parameter of a property must be used in its receiver type
```

Now let's recap how you can declare generic classes.

9.1.2 Declaring generic classes

Just as in Java, you declare a Kotlin generic class or interface by putting angle brackets after the class name and the type parameters in the angle brackets. Once you do that, you can use the type parameters in the body of the class, just like any other types. Let's look at how the standard Java interface `List` can be declared in Kotlin. To simplify it, we've omitted the majority of the methods:

```
interface List<T> {  
    operator fun get(index: Int): T  
    // ...  
}
```

- 1 The `List` interface defines a type parameter `T`.
- 2 `T` can be used as a regular type in an interface or a class.

Later in this chapter, when we get to the topic of variance, you'll improve on this example and see how `List` is declared in the Kotlin standard library.

If your class extends a generic class (or implements a generic interface), you have to provide a type argument for the generic parameter of the base type. It can be either a specific type or another type parameter:

```
class StringList: List<String> {  
    override fun get(index: Int): String = ...  
}  
  
class ArrayList<T> : List<T> {  
    override fun get(index: Int): T = ...  
}
```

- 1 This class implements `List`, providing a specific type argument: `String`.
- 2 Note how `String` is used instead of `T`.
- 3 Now generic type parameter `T` of `ArrayList` is a type argument for `List`.

The `StringList` class is declared to contain only `String` elements, so it uses `String` as the type argument of the base type. Any function from the subclass substitutes this proper type instead of `T`, so you have a signature `fun get(Int): String` in `StringList`, rather than `fun get(Int): T`.

The `ArrayList` class defines its own type parameter `T` and specifies that as a type argument of the superclass. Note that `T` in `ArrayList<T>` *is not the same* as in `List<T>`—it's a new type parameter, and it doesn't need to have the same name.

A class can even refer to itself as a type argument. Classes implementing the `Comparable` interface are the classical example of this pattern. Any comparable element must define how to compare it with objects of the same type:

```
interface Comparable<T> {  
    fun compareTo(other: T): Int  
}  
  
class String : Comparable<String> {  
    override fun compareTo(other: String): Int = /* ... */  
}
```

The `String` class implements the generic `Comparable` interface, providing the type `String` for the type parameter `T`.

So far, generics look similar to those in Java. We'll talk about the differences later in the chapter, in sections 9.X and 9.X.

Now let's discuss another concept that works similar to Java: the one that allows you to write useful functions for working with comparable items.

9.1.3 Type parameter constraints

Type parameter constraints let you restrict the types that can be used as type arguments for a class or function. For example, consider a function that calculates the sum of elements in a list. It can be used on a `List<Int>` or a `List<Double>`, but not, for example, a `List<String>`. To express this, you can define a type parameter constraint that specifies that the type parameter of `sum` must be a number.

When you specify a type as a constraint for a type parameter of a generic type (also referred to as an *upper bound*), the corresponding type arguments in specific instantiations of the generic type must be either the specified type or its subtypes. (For now, you can think of *subtype* as a synonym for *subclass*. Section 9.x.x will highlight the difference.)

To specify a constraint, you put a colon after the type parameter name, followed by the type that's the upper bound for the type parameter; see figure 9.2. In Java, you use the keyword `extends` to express the same concept: `<T extends Number> T sum(List<T> list)`.

```
fun <T : Number> List<T>.sum(): T
```

type parameter upper bound

Figure 9.2 Constraints are defined by following a type parameter with its upper bound

The actual type argument (`Int` in the following example) should extend `Number` to allow this function invocation:

```
>>> println(listOf(1, 2, 3).sum())
6
```

Once you've specified a bound for a type parameter `T`, you can use values of type `T` as values of its upper bound. For example, you can invoke methods defined in the class used as the bound:

```
fun <T : Number> oneHalf(value: T): Double
    { return value.toDouble() / 2.0
    }

>>> println(oneHalf(3))
1.5
```

1
2

- 1 Specifies `Number` as the type parameter bound
- 2 Invokes a method defined in the `Number` class

Now let's write a generic function that finds the maximum of two items. Because it's only possible to find a maximum of items that can be compared to each other, you need to specify that in the signature of the function. Here's how you do that.

Listing 9.3 Need a caption here

```
fun <T: Comparable<T>> max(first: T, second: T): T
    { return if (first > second) first else second
    }

>>> println(max("kotlin", "java"))
kotlin
```

1

2

- 1 The arguments of this function must be comparable elements.
- 2 The strings are compared alphabetically.

When you try to call `max` on incomparable items, the code won't compile:

```
>>> println(max("kotlin", 42))
ERROR: Type parameter bound for `T` is not satisfied:
inferred type `Any` is not a subtype of `Comparable<Any>`
```

The upper bound for `T` is a generic type `Comparable<T>`. As you saw earlier, the `String` class extends `Comparable<String>`, which makes `String` a valid type argument for the `max` function.

Remember, the short form `first > second` is compiled to

`first.compareTo(second) > 0`, according to Kotlin conventions. This comparison is possible because the type of `first`, which is `T`, extends from `Comparable<T>`, and thus you can compare `first` to another element of type `T`.

In the rare case when you need to specify multiple constraints on a type parameter, you use a slightly different syntax. For example, the following listing is a generic way to ensure that the given `CharSequence` has a period at the end. It works with both the standard `StringBuilder` class and the `java.nio.CharBuffer` class.

Listing 9.4 Need a caption here

```
fun <T> ensureTrailingPeriod(seq: T)
    where T : CharSequence, T : Appendable
{ if (!seq.endsWith('.')) {
    seq.append('.')
} }

>>> val helloWorld = StringBuilder("Hello World")
>>> ensureTrailingPeriod(helloWorld)
>>> println(helloWorld)
Hello World.
```

- ❶ List of type parameter constraints
- ❷ Calls an extension function defined for the `CharSequence` interface
- ❸ Calls the method from the `Appendable` interface

In this case, you specify that the type used as a type parameter must implement both the `CharSequence` and `Appendable` interfaces. This means both the operations accessing the data (`endsWith`) as well as the operation modifying it (`append`) can be used with values of that type.

Next, we'll discuss another case when type parameter constraints are common: when you want to declare a non-`null` type parameter.

9.1.4 Making type parameters non-null

If you declare a generic class or function, any types, including nullable ones, can be substituted for its type parameters. Consider the following example:

```
class Processor<T> {
    fun process(value: T) {
        value?.hashCode()
    }
}
```

- ❶ "value" is nullable, so you have to use safe access.

In the `process` function, the parameter `value` is nullable, even though `T` isn't marked with a question mark. This is the case because specific instantiations of the `Processor` class can use a nullable type for `T`:

```
val nullableStringProcessor = Processor<String?>()
nullableStringProcessor.process(null)
```

1
2

- 1 `String?`, which is a nullable type, is substituted for `T`.
- 2 This code compiles fine, having "null" as the "value" argument.

If you want to guarantee that a non-`null` type will always be substituted for a type parameter, you can achieve this by specifying a constraint:

```
class Processor<T : Any>
{ fun process(value: T)
  {
    value.hashCode()
  }
}
```

1
2

- 1 Specifying a non-"null" upper bound...
- 2 ...makes a "value" of type `T` non-"null".

The `<T : Any>` constraint ensures that the `T` type will always be a non-nullable type. The code `Processor<String?>` won't be accepted by the compiler, because the type argument `String?` isn't a subtype of `Any` (it's a subtype of `Any?`, which is a less specific type):

```
>>> val nullableStringProcessor = Processor<String?>()
Error: Type argument is not within its bounds: should be subtype of 'Any'
```

Note that you can make a type parameter non-`null` by specifying any non-`null` type as an upper bound, not only the type `Any`.

So far, we've covered the basics of generics—the topics that are most similar to Java. Now let's discuss another concept that may be somewhat familiar if you're a Java developer: how generics behave at runtime.

9.2 Generics at runtime: erased and reified type parameters

As you probably know, generics on the JVM are normally implemented through *type erasure*, meaning the type arguments of an instance of a generic class aren't preserved at runtime. In this section, we'll discuss the practical implications of type erasure for Kotlin, and how you can get around its limitations by declaring a function as `inline`. You can declare an `inline` function such that its type arguments aren't erased (or, in Kotlin terms, are reified). We'll discuss reified type parameters in detail and look at examples when they're useful.

9.2.1 Generics at runtime: type checks and casts

Just as in Java, Kotlin's generics are *erased* at runtime. This means an instance of a generic class doesn't carry information about the type arguments used to create that instance. For example, if you create a `List<String>` and put a bunch of strings into it, at runtime you'll only be able to see that it's a `List`. It's not possible to identify which type of elements the list was intended to contain. (Of course, you can get an element and check its type, but that won't give you any guarantees, because other elements may have slightly different types.)

Consider what happens with these two lists when you run the code; see figure 9.3.

```
val list1: List<String> = listOf("a", "b")
val list2: List<Int> = listOf(1, 2, 3)
```

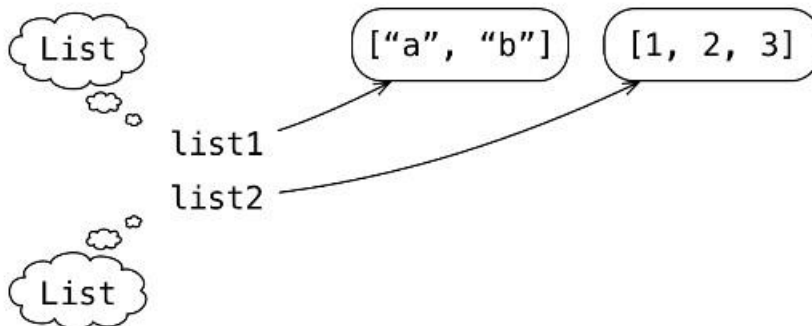


Figure 9.3 At runtime, you don't know whether `list1` and `list2` were declared as lists of strings or ints. Each of them is just `List`.

Even though the compiler sees two distinct types for the lists, at execution time they look exactly the same. Despite that, you can normally be sure that a `List<String>` contains only strings and a `List<Int>` contains only integers, because the compiler knows the type arguments and ensures that only elements of the correct type are stored in each list. (You can deceive the compiler through type casts or by using Java raw types to access the list, but you need to make a special effort to do that.)

Let's talk next about the constraints that go with erasing the type information. Because type arguments aren't stored, you can't check them—for example, you can't check whether a list contains strings rather than other objects. As a general rule, it's not possible to use types with type parameters in `is` checks. The following code won't compile:

```
>>> if (value is List<String>) { ... }  
ERROR: Cannot check for instance of erased type
```

Even though it's perfectly possible to find out at runtime that `value` is a `List`, you can't tell whether it's a list of strings, persons, or something else: that information has been erased. Note that erasing generic type information has its benefits: the overall amount of memory used by your application is smaller, because less type information needs to be saved in memory.

As we stated earlier, Kotlin doesn't let you use a type without specifying type parameters. Thus you may wonder how to check that the value is a list, not a set or another object. You can do that by using the special *star projection* syntax:

```
if (value is List<*>) { ... }
```

Effectively, you need to include a `*` for every type parameter the type has. We'll discuss the star projection in detail (including why it's called a *projection*) later in the chapter; for now, you can think of it as a type with unknown arguments (or an analogue of Java's `List<?>`). In the previous example, you check whether a `value` is a `List`, and you don't get any information about its element type.

Note that you can still use normal generic types in `as` and `as?` casts. But the cast won't fail if the class has the correct base type and a wrong type argument, because the type argument isn't known at runtime when the cast is performed. Because of that, the compiler will emit an "unchecked cast" warning on such a cast. It's only a warning, so you can later use the value as having the necessary type, as shown next.

Listing 9.5 Need a caption here

```
fun printSum(c: Collection<*>)
{
    val intList = c as?
    List<Int>
    ?: throw IllegalArgumentException("List is expected")
    println(intList.sum())
}

>>> printSum(listOf(1, 2, 3))
```

- Warning here. Unchecked cast: List<*> to List<Int>
- 2 Everything works as expected.

Everything compiles fine: the compiler only issues a warning, which means this code is legitimate. If you call the `printSum` function on a list of ints or a set, it works as expected: it prints a sum in the first case and throws an `IllegalArgumentException` in the second case. But if you pass in a value of a wrong type, you'll get a `ClassCastException` at runtime:

```
>>> printSum(setOf(1, 2, 3))  
IllegalArgumentException: List is expected  
  
>>> printSum(listOf("a", "b", "c"))  
ClassCastException: String cannot be cast to Number
```

- 1 Set isn't a list, so an exception is thrown.
- 2 The cast succeeds, and another exception is thrown later.

Let's discuss the exception that's thrown if you call the `printSum` function on a list of strings. You don't get an `IllegalArgumentException`, because you can't check whether the argument is a `List<Int>`. Therefore the cast succeeds, and the function `sum` is called on such a list anyway. Although it's executed, an exception is thrown. This happens because the function tries to get `Number` values from the list and add them together. An attempt to use a `String` as a `Number` results in a `ClassCastException` at runtime.

Note that the Kotlin compiler is smart enough to allow `is` checks when the corresponding type information is already known at compile time.

Listing 9.6 Need a caption here

```
fun printSum(c: Collection<Int>)  
    { if (c is List<Int>) {  
        println(c.sum())  
    }  
}  
  
>>> printSum(listOf(1, 2, 3))  
6
```

- 1 This check is legitimate.

In listing 9.5, the check whether `c` has type `List<Int>` is possible because you know at compile time that this collection (no matter whether it's a list or another kind of

collection) contains integer numbers.

Generally, the Kotlin compiler takes care of letting you know which checks are dangerous (forbidding `is` checks and emitting warnings for `as` casts) and which are possible. You just have to know the meaning of those warnings and understand which operations are safe.

As we already mentioned, Kotlin does have a special construct that allows you to use specific type arguments in the body of a function, but that's only possible for `inline` functions. Let's look at this feature.

9.2.2 Declaring functions with reified type parameters

As we discussed earlier, Kotlin generics are erased at runtime, which means if you have an instance of a generic class, you can't find out the type arguments used when the instance was created. The same holds for type arguments of a function. When you call a generic function, in its body you can't determine the type arguments it was invoked with:

```
>>> fun <T> isA(value: Any) = value is T
Error: Cannot check for instance of erased type: T
```

This is true in general, but there's one case where this limitation can be avoided: `inline` functions. Type parameters of `inline` functions can be *reified*, which means you can refer to actual type arguments at runtime.

We discussed `inline` function in detail in chapter 8. As a reminder, if you mark a function with the `inline` keyword, the compiler will replace every call to the function with the actual code implementing the function. Making the function `inline` may improve performance if this function uses lambdas as arguments: the lambda code may be inlined as well, so no anonymous class will be created. This section shows another case when `inline` functions are helpful: their type parameters can be reified.

If you declare the previous `isA` function as `inline` and mark the type parameter as reified, you can check the value to see whether it's an instance of `T`:

```
inline fun <reified T> isA(value: Any) = value is T
>>> println(isA<String>("abc"))
true
>>> println(isA<String>(123))
false
```

❶ Now this code compiles.

Let's look at some less-trivial examples of the use of reified type parameters. One of the simplest examples where reified type parameters come into play is the

`filterIsInstance` standard library function. The function takes a collection, selects instances of the specified class, and returns only those instances. Here's how it can be used.

Listing 9.7 Need a caption here

```
>>> val items = listOf("one", 2, "three")
>>> println(items.filterIsInstance<String>())
[one, three]
```

You say that you're interested in strings only, by specifying `<String>` as a type parameter for the function. The return type of the function will therefore be `List<String>`. In this case, *the type argument is known at runtime*, and `filterIsInstance()` uses it to check which values in the list are instances of the class specified as the type argument.

Here's a simplified version of the declaration of `filterIsInstance` from the Kotlin standard library:

Listing 9.8 Need a caption here

```
inline fun <reified T>
    Iterable<*>.filterIsInstance(): List<T>
{
    val destination = mutableListOf<T>()
    for (element in this) {
        if (element is T)
        {
            destination.add(element)
        }
    }
    return destination
}
```

- ❶ "reified" declares that this type parameter shouldn't be erased.
- ❷ You can check whether the element is an instance of the class specified as a type parameter.

SIDEBAR

Why reification works for inline functions only

How does this work? Why are you allowed to write `element is T` in `inline` function but not in a regular class or function?

As we discussed in section 8.2, the compiler inserts the bytecode implementing the inline function into every place where it's called. Every time you call the function with a reified type parameter, the compiler knows the exact type used as the type argument in that particular call. Therefore, the compiler can generate the bytecode that references the specific class used as a type argument. In effect, for the `filterIsInstance<String>` call shown in listing 9.7, the generated code will be equivalent to the following:

```
for (element in this) {  
    if (element is String) ❶  
        { destination.add(element)  
        }  
}
```

❶ Reference a specific class.

Because the generated bytecode references a specific class, not a type parameter, it isn't affected by the type-parameter erasure that happens at runtime.

Note that `inline` function with `reified` type parameters can't be called from Java code. Kotlin code doesn't call them either—instead, they're inlined directly at the call site, so they're compiled in a special way, not as regular methods. Because Java doesn't support inlining, such functions are inaccessible to it.

Kotlin `inline` functions without `reified` type parameters can be called from Java, but clearly they aren't inlined there.

An inline function can have multiple reified type parameters, and it can also have non-reified type parameters in addition to the reified ones. Note that the `filterIsInstance()` function is marked as `inline` even though it doesn't have any lambda parameters. In section 8.2.4, we discussed that marking a function as `inline` only has performance benefits when the function has lambda parameters and the lambdas are inlined together with the function. But in this case, you aren't marking the function as `inline` for performance reasons; instead, you're doing it to enable the use of reified type parameters.

To ensure good performance, you still need to keep track of the size of the function marked as `inline`. If the function becomes large, it's better to extract the code that doesn't depend on the reified type parameters into separate non-inline functions.

9.2.3 Replacing class references with reified type parameters

One common use case for reified type parameters is building adapters for APIs that take parameters of type `java.lang.Class`. An example of such an API is `ServiceLoader` from the JDK, which takes a `java.lang.Class` representing an interface or an abstract class and returns an instance of a service class implementing that interface. Let's look at how you can use reified type parameters to make those APIs simpler to call.

To load a service using the standard Java API of `ServiceLoader`, you use the following call:

```
val serviceImpl = ServiceLoader.load(Service::class.java)
```

The `::class.java` syntax shows how you can get a `java.lang.Class` corresponding to a Kotlin class. This is an exact equivalent of `Service.class` in Java. We'll cover this in much more detail in chapter 10, in our discussion of reflection.

Now let's rewrite this example using a function with a reified type parameter:

```
val serviceImpl = loadService<Service>()
```

Much shorter, isn't it? As you can see, the class of the service to load is now specified as a type parameter to the `loadService` function. Specifying a class as a type parameter is easier to read because it's shorter than the `::class.java` syntax you need to use otherwise.

Next, let's see how this `loadService` function can be defined:

```
inline fun <reified T> loadService()
{ return
    ServiceLoader.load(T::class.java)
}
```

1
2

- 1 The type parameter is marked as "reified".
- 2 Accesses the class of the type parameter as `T::class`

You can use the same `::class.java` syntax on reified type parameters that you can use on regular classes. Using this syntax gives you the `java.lang.Class` corresponding to the class specified as the type parameter, which you can then use normally.

SIDEBAR

Simplifying the `startActivity` function on Android

If you're an Android developer, you may find another example to be more familiar: showing activities. Instead of passing the class of the activity as a `java.lang.Class`, you can also use a reified type parameter:

```
inline fun <reified T : Activity>
    Context.startActivity() {
        val intent = Intent(this, T::class.java)
        startActivity(intent)
    }

startActivity<DetailActivity>()
```

- ❶ The type parameter is marked as "reified".
- ❷ Accesses the class of the type parameter as `T::class`
- ❸ Invokes the method to show an activity

9.2.4 Restrictions on reified type parameters

Even though reified type parameters are a handy tool, they have certain restrictions. Some are inherent to the concept, and others are determined by the current implementation and may be relaxed in future versions of Kotlin.

More specifically, here's how you can use a reified type parameter:

- In type checks and casts (`is`, `!is`, `as`, `as?`)
- To use the Kotlin reflection APIs, as we'll discuss in chapter 10 (`::class`)
- To get the corresponding `java.lang.Class` (`::class.java`)
- As a type parameter to call other functions

You *can't* do the following:

- Create new instances of the class specified as a type parameter
- Call methods on the companion object of the type parameter class
- Use a non-reified type parameter as a type argument when calling a function with a reified type parameter
- Mark type parameters of classes, properties, or non-inline functions as `reified`

The last constraint leads to an interesting consequence: because reified type parameters can only be used in inline functions, using a reified type parameter means the function along with all the lambdas passed to it are inlined. If the lambdas can't be

inlined because of the way the inline function uses them, or if you don't want them to be inlined for performance reasons, you can use the `noinline` modifier introduced in section 8.2.2 to mark them as non-inlineable.

Now that we've discussed how generics work as a language feature, let's take a more detailed look at the most common generic types that come up in every Kotlin program: collections and their subclasses. We'll use them as a starting point for exploring the concepts of subtyping and variance.

9.3 Variance: generics and subtyping

The concept of *variance* describes how types with the same base type and different type arguments relate to each other: for example, `List<String>` and `List<Any>`. First we'll discuss why this relation is important in general, and then we'll look at how it's expressed in Kotlin. Understanding variance is essential when you write your own generic classes or functions: it helps you create APIs that don't restrict users in inconvenient ways and don't break their type-safety expectations.

9.3.1 Why variance exists: passing an argument to a function

Imagine that you have a function that takes a `List<Any>` as an argument. Is it safe to pass a variable of type `List<String>` to this function? It's definitely safe to pass a string to a function expecting `Any`, because the `String` class extends `Any`. But when `Any` and `String` become type arguments of the `List` interface, it's not so clear any more.

For example, let's consider a function that prints the contents of the list.

Listing 9.9 Need a caption here

```
fun printContents(list: List<Any>)
{ println(list.joinToString())
}

>>> printContents(listOf("abc", "bac"))
abc, bac
```

It looks like a list of strings works fine here. The function treats each element as `Any`, and because every string is `Any`, it's totally safe.

Now let's look at another function, which modifies the list (and therefore takes `MutableList` as a parameter).

Listing 9.10 Need a caption here

```
fun addAnswer(list: MutableList<Any>)
{ list.add(42)
}
```

Can anything bad happen if you pass a list of strings to this function?

Listing 9.11 Need a caption here

```
>>> val strings = mutableListOf("abc", "bac")
>>> addAnswer(strings)
>>> println(strings.maxBy { it.length })
ClassCastException: Integer cannot be cast to String
```

- ❶ If this line compiled...
- ❷ ...you'd get an exception at runtime.

You declare a variable `strings` of type `MutableList<String>`. Then you try to pass it to the function. If the compiler accepted it, you'd be able to add an integer to a list of strings, which would then lead to a runtime exception when you tried to access the contents of the list as strings. Because of that, this call doesn't compile. This example shows that it's not safe to pass a `MutableList<String>` as an argument when a `MutableList<Any>` is expected; the Kotlin compiler correctly forbids that.

Now you can answer the question of whether it's safe to pass a list of strings to a function that expects a list of `Any` objects. It's not safe if the function adds or replaces elements in the list, because this creates the possibility of type inconsistencies. It's safe otherwise (we'll discuss why in more detail later in the chapter). In Kotlin, this can be easily controlled by choosing the right interface, depending on whether the list is mutable. If a function accepts a read-only list, you can pass a `List` with a more specific element type. If the list is mutable, you can't do that.

Later in this chapter, we'll generalize the same question for any generic class, not only `List`. You'll also see why two interfaces `List` and `MutableList` are different with regard to their type argument. But before that, we need to discuss the concepts of *type* and *subtype*.

9.3.2 Classes, types, and subtyping

As we discussed in section 6.1.2, the type of a variable specifies the possible values for this variable. We've sometimes used the terms *type* and *class* as equivalent, but they aren't, and now is the time to look at the difference.

In the simplest case, with a non-generic class, the name of the class can be used directly as a type. For example, if you write `var x: String`, you declare a variable that can hold instances of the `String` class. But note that the same class name can also be used to declare a nullable type: `var x: String?`. This means each Kotlin class can be used to construct at least two types.

The story becomes even more complicated with generic classes. To get a valid type,

you have to substitute a specific type for the class's type parameter. `List` isn't a type (it's a class), but all of the following substitutions are valid types: `List<Int>`, `List<String?>`, `List<List<String>>`, and so on. Each generic class produces a potentially infinite number of types.

In order for us to discuss the relation between types, you need to be familiar with the term *subtype*. A type `B` is a subtype of a type `A` if you can use the value of the type `B` whenever a value of the type `A` is required. For instance, `Int` is a subtype of `Number`, but `Int` isn't a subtype of `String`. Figure 9.4 illustrates this.

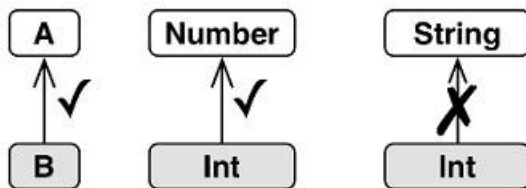


Figure 9.4 `B` is a subtype of `A` if you can use it when `A` is expected.

For example, passing an expression to a function is allowed only when the type of the expression is a subtype of the function parameter type. Also, storing a value in a variable is allowed only when the value type is a subtype of the variable type. Consider the following listing.

Listing 9.12 Need a caption here

```
fun test(i: Int)
{ val n: Number =
  i
  fun f(s: String) { /*...*/ }
  f(i)
}
```

- ❶ Compiles, because `Int` is a subtype of `Number`
- ❷ Doesn't compile, because `Int` isn't a subtype of `String`

The term *supertype* is the opposite of *subtype*: if `A` is a subtype of `B`, then `B` is a supertype of `A`.

In simple cases, *subtype* means essentially the same thing as *subclass*. For example, the `Int` class is a subclass of `Number`, and therefore the `Int` type is a subtype of the `Number` type. If a class implements an interface, its type is a subtype of the interface type: `String` is a subtype of `CharSequence`.

Nullable types provide an example of when *subtype* isn't the same as *subclass*; see figure 9.5. A non-`null` type is a subtype of its nullable version, but they both correspond

to one class. You can always store the value of a `non-null` type in a variable of a nullable type, but not vice versa (`null` isn't an acceptable value for a variable of a `non-null` type):

```
val s: String = "abc"
val t: String? = s
```

❶

❶ This assignment is legal because `String` is a subtype of `String?`.

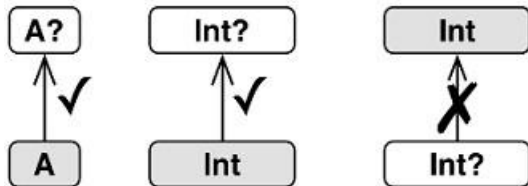


Figure 9.5 A non-null type `A` is a subtype of nullable `A?`, but not vice versa.

The difference between subclasses and subtypes becomes especially important when we start talking about generic types. The question from the previous section of whether it's safe to pass a variable of type `List<String>` to a function expecting `List<Any>` now can be reformulated in terms of subtyping: is `List<String>` a subtype of `List<Any>`? You've seen why it's not safe to treat `MutableList<String>` as a subtype of `MutableList<Any>`. Clearly, `MutableList<Any>` also isn't a subtype of `MutableList<String>`.

A generic class—for instance, `MutableList`—is called *invariant* on the type parameter if, for any two different types `A` and `B`, `MutableList<A>` isn't a subtype or a supertype of `MutableList`. In Java, all classes are invariant (even though specific uses of those classes can be marked as non-invariant, as you'll see soon).

In the previous section, you saw a class for which the subtyping rules are different: `List`. The `List` interface in Kotlin represents a read-only collection. If `A` is a subtype of `B`, then `List<A>` is a subtype of `List`. Such classes or interfaces are called *covariant*. The next section discusses the concept of covariance in detail and explains when it's possible to declare a class or interface as covariant.

9.3.3 Covariance: preserved subtyping relation

A covariant class is a generic class (we'll use `Producer<T>` as an example) for which the following holds: `Producer<A>` is a subtype of `Producer` if `A` is a subtype of `B`. We say that *the subtyping is preserved*. For example, `Producer<Cat>` is a subtype of `Producer<Animal>` because `Cat` is a subtype of `Animal`.

In Kotlin, to declare the class to be covariant on a certain type parameter, you put the

out keyword before the name of the type parameter:

```
interface Producer<out T>
{ fun produce(): T
}
```

❶

❶ This class is declared as covariant on T.

Marking a type parameter of a class as covariant makes it possible to pass values of that class as function parameters and return values when *the type arguments don't exactly match* the ones in the function definition. For example, imagine a function that takes care of feeding a group of animals, represented by the `Herd` class. The type parameter of the `Herd` class identifies the type of the animal in the herd.

Listing 9.13 Need a caption here

```
open class Animal
{ fun feed()
  { ... }
}

class Herd<T : Animal> {
  val size: Int get() = ...
  operator fun get(i: Int): T { ... }
}

fun feedAll(animals: Herd<Animal>)
{ for (i in 0 until animals.size)
  {
    animals[i].feed()
  }
}
```

❶

❶ The type parameter isn't declared as covariant.

Suppose that a user of your code has a herd of cats and needs to take care of them.

Listing 9.14 Need a caption here

```
class Cat : Animal() {
  fun cleanLitter() { ... }
}

fun takeCareOfCats(cats: Herd<Cat>)
{ for (i in 0 until cats.size) {
  cats[i].cleanLitter()

  // feedAll(cats)
}
}
```

❶

❷

❶ A Cat is an Animal.

❷ Error: inferred type is Herd<Cat>, but Herd<Animal> was expected

Unfortunately, the cats will remain hungry: if you tried to pass the herd to the `feedAll` method, you'd get a type-mismatch error during compilation. Because you don't use any variance annotation on the `T` type parameter in the `Herd` class, the herd of cats isn't a subclass of the herd of animals. You could use an explicit cast to work around the problem, but that approach is verbose, error-prone, and almost never a correct way to deal with a type-mismatch problem.

Because the `Herd` class has an API similar to `List` and doesn't allow its clients to add or change the animals in the herd, you can make it covariant and change the calling code accordingly.

Listing 9.15 Need a caption here

```
class Herd<out T : Animal> { ❶
    ...
}

fun takeCareOfCats(cats: Herd<Cat>)
{ for (i in 0 until cats.size) {
    cats[i].cleanLitter()
}

    feedAll(cats) ❷
}
```

❶ The `T` parameter is now covariant.

❷ You don't need a cast.

You can't make any class covariant: it would be unsafe. Making the class covariant on a certain type parameter constrains the possible uses of this type parameter in the class. To guarantee type safety, it can be used only in so-called *out* positions, meaning the class can give out values of type `T` but not take them in.

You differentiate *in* and *out* positions of type parameter. Let's consider a class that declares a type parameter `T` and contains a function that uses `T`. We say that if `T` is used as the return type of a function, it's in *out* position. In this case, the function *produces* (outputs) values of type `T`. If `T` is used as the type of a function parameter, it's in *in* position. Such a function *consumes* values of type `T`. Figure 9.6 illustrates.

```
interface Transformer<T> {
    fun transform(t: T): T
}
```

in position out position

Figure 9.6 The function parameter type is called in position, and the function return type

is called out position.

The `out` keyword on a type parameter of the class requires that all methods using `T` have `T` only in `out` position and not in `in` position. This keyword constrains possible use of `T`, which guarantees safety of the corresponding subtype relation.

As an example, consider the `Herd` class. It uses the type parameter `T` in only one place: in the return value of the `get` method.

Listing 9.16 Need a caption here

```
class Herd<out T : Animal>
{
    val size: Int get()
    = ...
    operator fun get(i: Int): T { ... }
}
```

1

1 Uses `T` as the return type

This is `out` position, which makes it safe to declare the class as covariant. Any code calling `get` on a `Herd<Animal>` will work perfectly if the method returns a `Cat`, because `Cat` is a subtype of `Animal`.

To reiterate, the `out` keyword on the type parameter `T` means two things:

- The subtyping is preserved (`Producer<Cat>` is a subtype of `Producer<Animal>`).
- `T` can be used only in `out` positions.

Now let's look at the `List<T>` interface. `List` is read-only in Kotlin, so it has a method `get` that returns an element of type `T` but doesn't define any methods that store a value of type `T` in the list. Therefore, it's also covariant:

```
interface List<out T> : Collection<T>
{
    operator fun get(index: Int): T
    // ...
}
```

1

1 Read-only interface that defines only methods that return `T` (so `T` is in `out` position)

Note that the type parameter can be used not only as an argument type or return type directly, but also as a type argument of another type. For example, the `List` interface contains a method `subList` that returns `List<T>`.

Listing 9.17 Need a caption here

```
interface List<out T> : Collection<T> {
```

```
fun subList(fromIndex: Int, toIndex: Int): List<T>
// ...
}
```

1

1 Here T is in "out" position as well.

In this case, T in the function `subList` is used in `out` position. We won't go deep into detail here; if you're interested in the exact algorithm that determines which position is `out` and which is `in`, you can find this information in the Kotlin language documentation.

Note that you can't declare `MutableList<T>` as covariant on its type parameter, because it contains methods that take values of type T as parameters and returning such values (therefore, T appears in both `in` and `out` positions).

Listing 9.18 Need a caption here

```
interface MutableList<T>
    : List<T>, MutableCollection<T> {
    override fun add(element: T): Boolean
}
```

1

2

1 `MutableList` can't be declared as covariant on T...

2 ...because T is used in "in" position.

The compiler enforces this restriction. It would report an error if the class was declared as covariant: Type parameter T is declared as 'out' but occurs in 'in' position.

Note that constructor parameters are in neither the `in` nor `out` position. Even if a type parameter is declared as `out`, you can still use it in a constructor parameter declaration:

```
class Herd<out T: Animal>(vararg animals: T) { ... }
```

The variance protects the class instance from misuse if you're working with it as an instance of a more generic type: you just can't call the potentially dangerous methods. The constructor isn't a method that can be called later (after an instance creation), and therefore it can't be potentially dangerous.

If you use the `val` or `var` keyword with a constructor parameter, however, you also declare a getter and a setter (if the property is mutable). Therefore, the type parameter is used `in` and `out` position for a read-only property and in both `out` and `in` positions for a mutable property:

```
class Herd<T: Animal>(var leadAnimal: T, vararg animals: T) { ... }
```

In this case, `T` can't be marked as `out`, because the class contains a setter for the `leadAnimal` property that uses `T` in `in` position.

Also note that the position rules cover only the externally visible (public and protected) API of a class. Parameters of private methods are in neither `in` nor `out` position. The variance rules protect a class from misuse by external clients and don't come into play in the implementation of the class itself:

```
class Herd<out T: Animal>(private var leadAnimal: T, vararg animals: T) { ... }
```

Now it's safe to make `Herd` covariant on `T`, because the `leadAnimal` property has been made private.

You may ask what happens with classes or interfaces where the type parameter is used only in an `in` position. In that case, the reverse relation holds. The next section presents the details.

9.3.4 Contravariance: reversed subtyping relation

The concept of *contravariance* is dual to covariance: for a contravariant class, the subtyping relation is the opposite of the subtyping relations of classes used as its type arguments. Let's start with an example: the `Comparator` interface. This interface defines one method, `compare`, which compares two given objects:

```
interface Comparator<in T> {  
    fun compare(e1: T, e2: T): Int { ... }  
}
```

1

1 Uses `T` in "in" positions

You can see that the method of this interface only consumes values of type `T`. That means `T` is used only in `in` positions, and therefore its declaration can be preceded by the `in` keyword.

A comparator defined for values of a certain type can, of course, compare the values of any subtype of that type. For example, if you have a `Comparator<Any>`, you can use it to compare values of any specific type.

Listing 9.19 Need a caption here

```
>>> val anyComparator = Comparator<Any> {  
...     e1, e2 -> e1.hashCode() - e2.hashCode()
```

```
... }
>>> val strings: List<String> = ...
>>> strings.sortedWith(anyComparator)
```

1

- 1 You can use the comparator for any objects to compare specific objects, such as strings.

The `sortedWith` function expects a `Comparator<String>` (a comparator that can compare strings), and it's safe to pass one that can compare more general types. If you need to perform comparisons on objects of a certain type, you can use a comparator that handles either that type or any of its supertypes. This means `Comparator<Any>` is a *subtype* of `Comparator<String>`, where `Any` is a *supertype* of `String`. The subtyping relation between comparators for two different types goes in the opposite direction of the subtyping relation between those types.

Now you're ready for the full definition of contravariance. A class that is *contravariant* on the type parameter is a generic class (let's consider `Consumer<T>` as an example) for which the following holds: `Consumer<A>` is a subtype of `Consumer` if `A` is a supertype of `B`. The type arguments `A` and `B` changed places, so we say the subtyping is reversed. For example, `Consumer<Animal>` is a subtype of `Consumer<Cat>`.

Figure 9.7 shows the difference between the subtyping relation for classes that are covariant and contravariant on a type parameter. You can see that for the `Producer` class, the subtyping relation replicates the subtyping relation for its type arguments, whereas for the `Consumer` class, the relation is reversed.

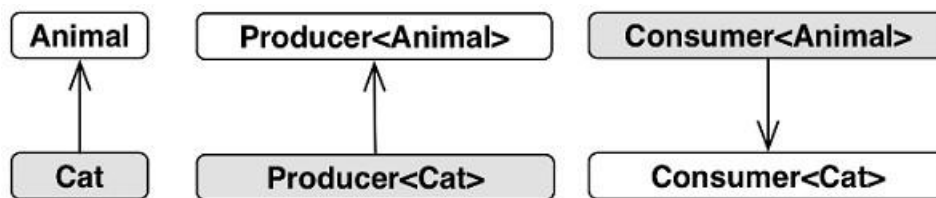


Figure 9.7 For covariant type `Producer<T>`, the subtyping is preserved, but for the contravariant type `Consumer<T>`, the subtyping is reversed.

The `in` keyword means values of the corresponding type are *passed in* to methods of this class and consumed by those methods. Similar to the covariant case, constraining use of the type parameter leads to the specific subtyping relation. The `in` keyword on the type parameter `T` means the subtyping is reversed and `T` can be used only in `in` positions. Table 9.1 summarizes the differences between the possible variance choices.

Table 9.1 Covariant, contravariant, and invariant classes

Covariant	Contravariant	Invariant
<code>Producer<out T></code>	<code>Consumer<in T></code>	<code>MutableList<T></code>
Subtyping for the class is preserved: <code>Producer<Cat></code> is a subtype of <code>Producer<Animal></code> .	Subtyping is reversed: <code>Consumer<Animal></code> is a subtype of <code>Consumer<Cat></code> .	No subtyping.
<code>T</code> only in <code>out</code> positions	<code>T</code> only in <code>in</code> positions	<code>T</code> in any position

A class or interface can be covariant on one type parameter and contravariant on another. The classic example is the `Function` interface. The following declaration of a functional interface takes one parameter:

```
interface Function1<in P, out R>
{ operator fun invoke(p: P): R
}
```

The Kotlin notation `(P) -> R` is another, more readable form to express `Function1<P, R>`. You can see that `P` (the parameter type) is used only in `in` position and is marked with the `in` keyword, whereas `R` (the return type) is used only in `out` position and is marked with the `out` keyword. That means the subtyping for the function type is reversed for its first type argument and preserved for the second. For example, if you have a higher-order function that tries to enumerate your cats, you can pass a lambda enumerating any animals.

Listing 9.20 Need a caption here

```
fun enumerateCats(f: (Cat) -> Number) { ... }
fun Animal.getIndex(): Int = ...

>>> enumerateCats(Animal::getIndex)
```

- ❶ This code is legal in Kotlin. `Animal` is a supertype of `Cat`, and `Int` is a subtype of `Number`.

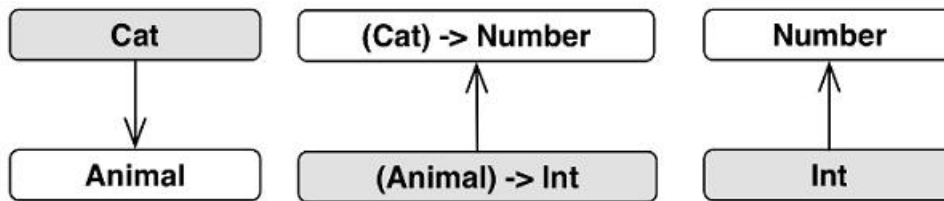


Figure 9.8 The function $(T) \rightarrow R$ is contravariant on its argument and covariant on its return type.

Note that in all the examples so far, the variance of a class is specified directly in its declaration and applies to all places where the class is used. Java doesn't support that and instead uses wildcards to specify the variance for specific uses of a class. Let's look at the difference between the two approaches and see how you can use the second approach in Kotlin.

9.3.5 Use-site variance: specifying variance for type occurrences

The ability to specify variance annotations on class declarations is convenient because the annotations apply to all places where the class is used. This is called *declaration-site variance*. If you're familiar with Java's wildcard types (`? extends` and `? super`), you'll realize that Java handles variance differently. In Java, every time you use a type with a type parameter, you can also specify whether this type parameter can be replaced with its subtypes or supertypes. This is called *use-site variance*.

SIDEBAR

Declaration-site variance in Kotlin vs. Java wildcards

Declaration-site variance allows for more concise code, because you specify the variance annotations once, and clients of your class don't have to think about them. In Java, to create APIs that behave according to users' expectations, the library writer has to use wildcards all the time: `Function<? super T, ? extends R>`. If you examine the source code of the Java 8 standard library, you'll find wildcards on every usage of the `Function` interface. For example, here's how the `Stream.map` method is declared:

```

/* Java */
public interface Stream<T> {
    <R> Stream<R> map(Function<? super T, ? extends R> mapper);
}
  
```

Specifying the variance once on the declaration makes the code much more concise and elegant.

Kotlin supports use-site variance too, allowing you to specify the variance for a specific occurrence of a type parameter even when it can't be declared as covariant or contravariant in the class declaration. Let's see how that works.

You've seen that many interfaces, like `MutableList`, aren't covariant or

contravariant in a general case, because they can both produce and consume values of types specified by their type parameters. But it's common for a variable of that type in a particular function to be used in only one of those roles: either as a producer or as a consumer. For example, consider this simple function.

Listing 9.21 Need a caption here

```
fun <T> copyData(source: MutableList<T>,
                destination: MutableList<T>)
    { for (item in source) {
      destination.add(item)
    }
}
```

This function copies elements from one collection to another. Even though both collections have an invariant type, the source collection is only used for reading, and the destination collection is only used for writing. In this situation, the element types of the collections don't need to match exactly. For example, it's perfectly valid to copy a collection of strings into a collection that can contain any objects.

To make this function work with lists of different types, you can introduce the second generic parameter.

Listing 9.22 Need a caption here

```
fun <T: R, R> copyData(source: MutableList<T>,
                      destination: MutableList<R>)
    { for (item in source) {
      destination.add(item)
    }
}
>>> val ints = mutableListOf(1, 2, 3)
>>> val anyItems = mutableListOf<Any>()
>>> copyData(ints, anyItems)
```

- ❶ Source's element type should be a subtype of the destination's element type
- ❷ You can call this function, because Int is a subtype of Any.

You declare two generic parameters representing the element types in the source and destination lists. To be able to copy elements from one list to the other, the source element type should be a subtype of elements in the destination list, like Int is a subtype of Any in listing 9.21.

But Kotlin provides a more elegant way to express this. When the implementation of a function only calls methods that have the type parameter in the out (or only in the in) position, you can take advantage of it and add variance annotations to the particular usages of the type parameter in the function definition.

Listing 9.23 Need a caption here

```
fun <T> copyData(source: MutableList<out T>,  
                destination: MutableList<T>)  
    { for (item in source) {  
        destination.add(item)  
    }  
}  
>>> val ints = mutableListOf(1, 2, 3)  
>>> val anyItems = mutableListOf<Any>()  
>>> copyData(ints, anyItems)
```

1

- ❶ You can add the "out" keyword to the type usage: no methods with T in in position are used.

You can specify a variance annotation on any usage of a type parameter in a type declaration: for a parameter type (as in listing 9.22), local variable type, function return type, and so on. What happens here is called *type projection*: we say that `source` isn't a `MutableList`, but a *projected* (restricted) one. You can only call methods that return the generic type parameter or, strictly speaking, use it in `out` position only. The compiler prohibits calling methods where this type parameter is used as an argument (in the `in` position):

```
>>> val list: MutableList<out Number> = ...  
>>> list.add(42)  
Error: Out-projected type 'MutableList<out Number>' prohibits  
the use of 'fun add(element: E): Boolean'
```

Don't be surprised that you can't call some of the methods if you're using a projected type. If you need to call them, you need to use a regular type instead of a projection. This may require you to declare a second type parameter that depends on the one that was originally a projection, as in listing 9.23.

Of course, the right way to implement the function `copyData` would be to use `List<T>` as a type of the `source` argument, because we're only using the methods declared in `List`, not in `MutableList`, and the variance of the `List` type parameter is specified in its declaration. But this example is still important for illustrating the concept, especially keeping in mind that most classes don't have a separate covariant read interface and an invariant read/write interface, such as `List` and `MutableList`.

There is no sense to get an `out` projection of a type parameter that already has `out` variance, such as `List<out T>`. That would mean the same as `List<T>`, because `List` is declared as `class List<out T>`. The Kotlin compiler will warn that such a projection is redundant.

In a similar way, you can use the `in` annotation on a usage of a type parameter to

indicate that in this particular location the corresponding value acts as a consumer, and the type parameter can be substituted with any of its supertypes. Here's how you can rewrite listing 9.23 using an `in`-projection.

Listing 9.24 Need a caption here

```
fun <T> copyData(source: MutableList<T>,
                destination: MutableList<in T>)
{ for (item in source) {
    destination.add(item)
  }
}
```

1

- 1 Allows the destination element type to be a supertype of the source element type

NOTE

Note

Use-site variance declarations in Kotlin correspond directly to Java wildcards. `MutableList<out T>` in Kotlin means the same as `MutableList<? extends T>` in Java. The `in`-projected `MutableList<in T>` corresponds to Java's `MutableList<? super T>`.

Use-site projections can help to widen the range of acceptable types. Now let's discuss the extreme case: when types with all possible type arguments become acceptable.

9.3.6 Star projection: using `*` instead of a type parameter

While talking about type checks and casts earlier in this chapter, we mentioned the special *star-projection* syntax you can use to indicate that you have *no information about a generic argument*. For example, a list of elements of an unknown type is expressed using that syntax as `List<*>`. Let's explore the semantics of star projections in detail.

First, note that `MutableList<*>` isn't the same as `MutableList<Any?>` (it's important here that `MutableList<T>` is invariant on `T`). A `MutableList<Any?>` is a list that you know can contain elements of any type. On the other hand, a `MutableList<*>` is a list that contains elements of a specific type, but you don't know what type it is. The list was created as a list of elements of a specific type, such as `String` (you can't create a new `ArrayList<*>`), and the code that created it expects that it will only contain elements of that type. Because you don't know what the type is, you can't put anything into the list, because any value you put there might violate the expectations of the calling code. But it's possible to get the elements from the list, because you know for sure that all values stored there will match the type `Any?`, which is the supertype of all Kotlin types:

```

>>> val list: MutableList<Any?> = mutableListOf('a', 1, "qwe")
>>> val chars = mutableListOf('a', 'b', 'c')

>>> val unknownElements: MutableList<*> =
...     if (Random().nextBoolean()) list else chars

>>> unknownElements.add(42)
Error: Out-projected type 'MutableList<*>' prohibits
the use of 'fun add(element: E): Boolean'

>>> println(unknownElements.first())
a

```

- ❶ `MutableList<*>` isn't the same as `MutableList<Any?>`.
- ❷ The compiler forbids you to call this method.
- ❸ It's safe to get elements: `first()` returns an element of the `Any?` type.

Why does the compiler refers to `MutableList<*>` as an "out-projected" type? In this context, `MutableList<*>` acts as `MutableList<out Any?>`: when you know nothing about the type of the element, it's safe to get elements of `Any?` type, but it's not safe to put elements into the list. Speaking about Java wildcards, `MyType<*>` in Kotlin corresponds to Java's `MyType<?>`.

For contravariant type parameters such as `Consumer<in T>`, a star projection is equivalent to `<in Nothing>`. In effect, you can't call any methods that have `T` in the signature on such a star projection. If the type parameter is contravariant, it acts only as a consumer, and, as we discussed earlier, you don't know exactly what it can consume. Therefore, you can't give it anything to consume.

You can use the star-projection syntax when the information about type arguments isn't important: you don't use any methods that refer to the type parameter in the signature, or you only read the data and you don't care about its specific type. For instance, you can implement the `printFirst` function taking `List<*>` as a parameter:

```

fun printFirst(list: List<*>)
{
    if (list.isNotEmpty()) {
        println(list.first())
    }
}

>>> printFirst(listOf("Svetlana", "Dmitry"))
Svetlana

```

- ❶ Every list is a possible argument.
- ❷ `isNotEmpty()` doesn't use the generic type parameter.
- ❸ `first()` now returns `Any?`, but in this case that's enough.

As in the case with use-site variance, you have an alternative—to introduce a generic type parameter:

```
fun <T> printFirst(list: List<T>)
    { if (list.isNotEmpty()) {
        println(list.first())
    }
}
```

- ❶ Again, every list is a possible argument.
- ❷ `first()` now returns a value of `T`.

The syntax with star projection is more concise, but it works only if you aren't interested in the exact value of the generic type parameter: you use only methods that produce values, and you're OK with working with these values because they had `Any?` type.

Now let's look at another example of using a type with a star projection and common traps you may fall into while working with it. Let's say you need to validate user input, and you declare an interface `FieldValidator`. It contains its type parameter in `in` position only, so it can be declared as contravariant. And, indeed, it's correct to use the validator that can validate any elements when a validator of strings is expected (that's what declaring it as contravariant lets you do). You also declare two validators that handle `String` and `Int` inputs.

Listing 9.25 Need a caption here

```
interface FieldValidator<in T>
    { fun validate(input: T):
        Boolean
    }

object DefaultStringValidator : FieldValidator<String>
    { override fun validate(input: String) =
        input.isNotEmpty()
    }

object DefaultIntValidator : FieldValidator<Int>
    { override fun validate(input: Int) = input >=
```

- ❶ Interface declared as contravariant on `T`
- ❷ `T` is used only in "in" position (this method consumes a value of `T`).

Now imagine that you want to store all validators in the same container and get the right validator according to the type of input. Your first attempt might use a map to store them. You need to store validators for any types, so you declare a map from `KClass`

(which represents a Kotlin class—chapter 10 will cover `KClass` in detail) to `FieldValidator<*>` (which may refer to a validator of any type):

```
>>> val validators = mutableMapOf<KClass<*>, FieldValidator<*>>()
>>> validators[String::class] = DefaultStringValidator
>>> validators[Int::class] = DefaultIntValidator
```

Once you do that, you may have difficulties when trying to use the validators. You can't validate a string with a validator of the type `FieldValidator<*>`. It's unsafe, because the compiler doesn't know what kind of validator it is:

```
>>> validators[String::class]!!.validate("")
Error: Out-projected type 'FieldValidator<*>' prohibits
the use of 'fun validate(input: T): Boolean'
```

❶ the value stored in the map has the type `FieldValidator<*>`.

You saw this error earlier when you tried to put an element into `MutableList<*>`. In this case, this error means it's unsafe to give a value of a specific type to a validator for an unknown type. One of the ways to fix that is to cast a validator explicitly to the type you need. It's not safe and isn't recommended, but we show it here as a fast trick to make your code compile so that you can refactor it afterward:

Listing 9.26 Need a caption here

```
>>> val stringValidator = validators[String::class]
                                as FieldValidator<String>
>>> println(stringValidator.validate(""))
false
```

❶ Warning: unchecked cast

The compiler emits a warning about the unchecked cast. Note, however, that this code will fail on validation only, not when you make the cast, because at runtime all the generic type information is erased:

Listing 9.27 Need a caption here

```
>>> val stringValidator = validators[Int::class]
                                as FieldValidator<String>
>>> stringValidator.validate("")
java.lang.ClassCastException:
  java.lang.String cannot be cast to java.lang.Number
  at DefaultIntValidator.validate
```

- ❶ You get an incorrect validator (may be by mistake), but this code compiles.
- ❷ It's only a warning.
- ❸ The real error is hidden until you use the validator.

This incorrect code and listing 9.26 are similar in a sense that in both cases, only a warning is emitted. It becomes your responsibility to cast only values of the correct type.

This solution isn't type-safe and is error-prone. So, let's investigate what other options you have if you want to store validators for different types in one place.

The solution in listing 9.28 uses the same `validators` map but encapsulates all the access to it into two generic methods responsible for having only correct validators registered and returned. This code also emits a warning about the unchecked cast (the same one), but here the object `Validators` controls all access to the map, which guarantees that no one will change the map incorrectly.

Listing 9.28 Need a caption here

```
object Validators {  
    private val validators =  
        mutableMapOf<KClass<*>, FieldValidator<*>>()  
  
    fun <T: Any> registerValidator(  
        kClass: KClass<T>, fieldValidator: FieldValidator<T>) {  
        validators[kClass] = fieldValidator  
  
        @Suppress("UNCHECKED_CAST")  
        operator fun <T: Any> get(kClass: KClass<T>): FieldValidator<T> =  
            validators[kClass] as? FieldValidator<T>  
                ?: throw IllegalArgumentException(  
                    "No validator for ${kClass.simpleName}")  
    }  
  
    >>> Validators.registerValidator(String::class, DefaultStringValidator)  
    >>> Validators.registerValidator(Int::class, DefaultIntValidator)  
  
    >>> println(Validators[String::class].validate("Kotlin"))  
    true  
    >>> println(Validators[Int::class].validate(42))  
    true
```

- ❶ Uses the same map as before, but now you can't access it outside
- ❷ Puts into the map only the correct key-value pairs, when a validator corresponds to a class
- ❸ Suppresses the warning about the unchecked cast to `FieldValidator<T>`

Now you have a type-safe API. All the unsafe logic is hidden in the body of the class; and by localizing it, you guarantee that it can't be used incorrectly. The compiler forbids

you to use an incorrect validator, because the `Validators` object always gives you the correct validator implementation:

```
>>> println(Validators[String::class].validate(42))  
Error: The integer literal does not conform to the expected type String
```

1

1 Now the "get" method returns an instance of `FieldValidator<String>`.

Note that this pattern can be easily extended to store any custom generic classes. Localizing unsafe code in a separate place prevents misuse and makes uses of a container safe.

You should now have a better understanding of star-projected types and ways to deal with them safely. Note that the pattern described here isn't specific to Kotlin; you can use the same approach in Java as well.

Java generics and variance are generally considered the trickiest part of the language. In Kotlin, we've tried hard to come up with a design that is easier to understand and easier to work with, while remaining interoperable with Java.

9.4 Summary

- Kotlin's generics are fairly similar to those in Java: you declare a generic function or class in the same way.
- As in Java, type arguments for generic types only exist at compile time.
- You can't use types with type arguments together with the `is` operator, because type arguments are erased at runtime.
- Type parameters of inline functions can be marked as reified, which allows you to use them at runtime to perform `is` checks and obtain `java.lang.Class` instances.
- Variance is a way to specify whether the type parameter of a type can be substituted for its subclass or superclass.
- You can declare a class as covariant on a type parameter if the parameter used only in `out` positions.
- The opposite is true for contravariant cases: you can declare a class as contravariant on a type parameter if it's used only in `in` positions.
- The read-only interface `List` in Kotlin is declared as covariant, which means `List<String>` is a subtype of `List<Any>`.
- The function interface is declared as contravariant on its first type parameter and covariant on its second, which makes `(Animal) -> Int` a subtype of `(Cat) -> Number`.
- Kotlin lets you specify variance both for a generic class as a whole (*declaration-site variance*) and for a specific use of a generic type (*use-site variance*).
- The star-projection syntax can be used when the exact type arguments are unknown or unimportant.

Annotations and Reflection

This chapter covers:

- Applying and defining annotations
- Using reflection to introspect classes at runtime
- A real example of a Kotlin project

Up to this point, we've seen many features for working with classes and methods, but they all require you to specify the exact names of classes and methods you're using as part of the program source code. In order to call a method, you needed to know the class in which it was defined, as well as its name and parameter types. *Annotations* and *reflection* give you the power to go beyond that, and to write code that deals with arbitrary classes, not known in advance. You can use annotations to assign library-specific semantics to those classes, and reflection allows you to analyze the structure of those classes at runtime.

Applying annotations is straightforward. However, writing your own annotations, and especially writing the code that handles them, is less trivial. The syntax for using annotations is exactly the same as in Java, while the syntax for declaring your own annotations classes is a bit different. The general structure of the reflection APIs is also similar to Java, but the details differ.

As a demonstration of the use of annotations and reflection, we're going to build a real-life project: a JSON serialization and deserialization library called JKid. We will use reflection to access properties of arbitrary Kotlin objects at runtime, and also to create objects based on data provided in JSON files. Annotations will allow us to customize how specific classes and properties are serialized and deserialized by the library.

10.1 Declaring and applying annotations

Most modern Java frameworks use annotations extensively, so you've surely encountered them when working on your Java applications. The core concept in Kotlin is the same. An annotation allows you to associate additional *metadata* with a declaration. The metadata can then be accessed by tools which work with source code, compiled class files, or at runtime, depending on how the annotation is configured.

10.1.1 Applying annotations

You use annotations in Kotlin in the same way as in Java. To apply an annotation, you put its name, prefixed with the `@` character, in the beginning of the declaration you're annotating. You can annotate different code elements, such as methods or classes.

For instance, if you're using the JUnit framework ¹³, you can mark a test method with the `@Test` annotation:

Footnote 13 <http://junit.org/junit4/>

```
import org.junit.*

class MyTest {
    @Test fun testTrue()
        { Assert.assertTrue(tru
          e)
    }
}
```

1

1 The `@Test` annotation instructs the JUnit framework to invoke this method as a test

As a more interesting example, let's look at the `@Deprecated` annotation. Its meaning in Kotlin is the same as in Java, but Kotlin enhances it with the `replaceWith` parameter, which lets you provide a replacement pattern to support smooth transition to a new version of the API. The example below shows how you can provide arguments for the annotation: a deprecation message and a replacement pattern.

```
@Deprecated("Use removeAt(index) instead.", ReplaceWith("removeAt(index)"))
fun remove(index: Int) { ... }
```

The arguments are passed in parentheses, just as in a regular function call.

With this declaration, if someone uses the function `remove`, IntelliJ IDEA will not only show what function should be used instead (`removeAt` in the example above), but also offer a quick fix to replace it automatically.

Annotations can have parameters of the following types only: primitive types, strings, enums, class references, other annotation classes and arrays thereof. The syntax for specifying annotation arguments is slightly different from Java:

- To specify a class as an annotation argument, put `::class` after the class name, as in `@MyAnnotation(MyClass::class)`.
- To specify another annotation as an argument, do not put the `@` character before the annotation name. For instance, `ReplaceWith` in the example above is an annotation, but you don't use `@` when you specify it as an argument of the `Deprecated` annotation.
- To specify an array as an argument, use the `arrayOf` function: `@RequestMapping(path = arrayOf("/foo", "/bar"))`. If the annotation class is declared in Java, the parameter named `value` is automatically converted to a vararg parameter if necessary, so the arguments can be provided without using the `arrayOf` function.

Annotation arguments need to be known at compile time, and it means that you can't refer to arbitrary properties as arguments. To use a property as an annotation argument, you need to mark it with a `const` modifier, which tells the compiler that the property is a *compile-time constant*. Here's an example of JUnit's `@Test` annotation where we specify the timeout for the test, in milliseconds, using the `timeout` parameter:

```
const val TEST_TIMEOUT = 100L

@Test(timeout = TEST_TIMEOUT) fun testMethod() { ... }
```

As we discussed in section 3.3.1, properties annotated with `const` need to be declared at the top level of a file or inside an `object`, and must be initialized with values of primitive types or `String`. If you try to use a regular property as an annotation parameter, you'll get an error "only 'const val' can be used in constant expressions".

10.1.2 Annotation targets

In many cases a single declaration in the Kotlin source code corresponds to multiple Java declarations, and each of them can carry annotations. For example, a Kotlin property corresponds to a Java field, getter, and possibly a setter, as well as the parameters of the accessors. A property declared in the primary constructor has one more corresponding element: the constructor parameter. Therefore, it may be necessary to specify which of these elements needs to be annotated.

You specify the element to be annotated with a *use-site target* declaration. The use-site target is placed between the `@` sign and the annotation name and is separated from the name with a colon. The word `get` in the diagram below causes the annotation `@Rule` to be applied to the property getter.

```
use-site target  annotation name
   |             |
   v             v
@get:Rule
```

Figure 10.1 The syntax for specifying use-site targets

Let's look at an example of using this annotation. In JUnit you can specify a rule to be executed before each test method. For instance, the standard `TemporaryFolder` rule is used to create files and folders that are deleted when the test method finishes.

To specify a rule, in Java you declare a `public` field or method annotated with `@Rule`. However, if you just annotate the property `folder` in your Kotlin test class with `@Rule`, you'll get a JUnit exception "The `@Rule` 'folder' must be public". It happens because `@Rule` gets applied to the field, which is private by default. To apply it to the getter, you need to write that explicitly: `@get:Rule`.

```
class HasTempFolder {  
    @get:Rule  
    val folder = TemporaryFolder()  
  
    @Test  
    fun testUsingTempFolder() {  
        val createdFile = folder.newFile("myfile.txt")  
        val createdFolder = folder.newFolder("subfolder")  
        // ...  
    }  
}
```

❶ The getter is annotated, not the property

If you annotate a property with an annotation declared in Java, it's applied to the corresponding field by default. Kotlin also allows to declare annotations that can be directly applied to properties.

The full list of supported use-site targets is:

- `property` (Java annotations can't be applied with this use-target);
- `field` (the field generated for the property);
- `get` (property getter);
- `set` (property setter);
- `receiver` (receiver parameter of an extension function or property);
- `param` (constructor parameter);
- `setparam` (property setter parameter);
- `delegate` (the field storing the delegate instance for a delegated property);
- `file` (the class containing top-level functions and properties declared in the file).

Any annotation with the `file` target needs to be placed at the top level of the file, before the `package` directive. One of the annotations commonly applied to files is `@JvmName`, which changes the name of the corresponding class. Section 3.2.3 showed us an example: `@file:JvmName("StringFunctions")`.

Note that unlike Java, Kotlin allows you to apply annotations to arbitrary expressions, and not only to class and method declarations or types. The most common example is the

`@Suppress` annotation, which allows you to suppress a specific compiler warning in the context of the annotated expression. Here's an example where we're annotating a local variable declaration to suppress an unchecked cast warning:

```
fun test(list: List<*>) {
    @Suppress("UNCHECKED_CAST")
    val strings = list as List<String>
    // ...
}
```

Note that IntelliJ IDEA will insert this annotation for you when you press Alt-Enter on a compiler warning and select "Suppress" from the intention options menu.

NOTE

Controlling the Java API with annotations

Kotlin provides a variety of annotations to control how exactly declarations written in Kotlin are compiled to Java bytecode and exposed to Java callers. Some of those annotations replace the corresponding keywords of the Java language - for example, the `@Volatile` and `@Strictfp` annotations serve as direct replacements for Java's `volatile` and `strictfp` keywords. Others are used to change how Kotlin's declarations are visible to Java callers, for example:

- `@JvmName` changes the name of a Java method or field generated from a Kotlin declarations;
- `@JvmStatic` can be applied to methods of an object declaration or a companion object to expose them as static Java methods;
- `@JvmOverloads`, already mentioned in section 3.2.2, instructs the Kotlin compiler to generate overloads for a method which has default parameter values;
- `@JvmField` can be applied to a property to expose that property as a public Java field with no getters or setters.

You can find more details on the use of those annotations in their documentation comments and in the Java interop section of the online documentation.

10.1.3 Using annotations to customize JSON serialization

One of the classic use cases for annotations is customizing object serialization.

Serialization is a process of converting an object to a binary or text representation, which can be then stored or sent over the network. The reverse process, *deserialization*, allows to convert such a representation back to an object. One of the most common formats used for serialization is JSON. There are many widely used libraries for serializing Java objects to JSON, including Jackson ¹⁴ and GSON ¹⁵. Just like any other Java library, they're fully compatible with Kotlin.

Footnote 14 <https://github.com/FasterXML/jackson>

Footnote 15 <https://github.com/google/gson>

Over the course of this chapter, we'll implement our own library for the same purpose. The library is called JKid, and unlike the libraries mentioned above, it's fully written in Kotlin. It is small enough for you to read all its source code easily, and we encourage you to do that while reading this chapter.

NOTE

The JKid library source code and exercises

The full implementation is available as part of the book source code, as well as online at <http://github.com/yole/jkid>. The library is not as full-featured or flexible as GSON or Jackson, however, it's performant enough for real use, and you're welcome to use it in your projects if it suits your needs.

The JKid project has a series of exercises, which you can solve to ensure you understand the concepts. You can find the description of the exercises in the project's `README.md` file or read it at the project page at GitHub.

Let's start with the simplest example to test our library: serializing and deserializing an instance of the `Person` class. You pass the instance to the `serialize` function, and it returns a string containing its JSON representation:

```
data class Person(val name: String, val age: Int)

>>> val person = Person("Alice", 29)
>>> println(serialize(person))
{"age": 29, "name": "Alice"}
```

You see that the JSON representation of an object consists of *key/value pairs* - pairs of property names and their values for the specific instance, like `"age": 29`.

To get an object back from the JSON representation, you call the `deserialize` function:

```
>>> val json = """"{"name": "Alice", "age": 29}""""
>>> println(deserialize<Person>(json))
Person(name=Alice, age=29)
```

When you create an instance from JSON data, you must specify the class explicitly as a type argument, because JSON does not store object types. In this case you pass the `Person` class.

The following figure illustrates the equivalence between an object and its JSON representation:

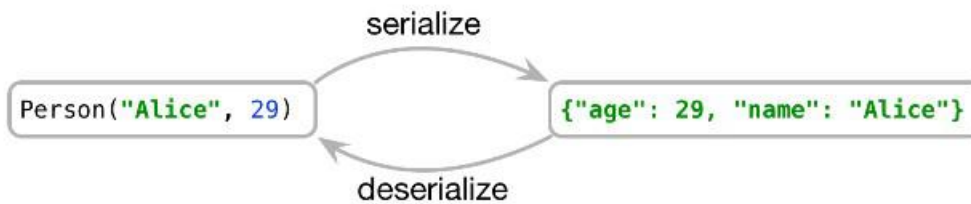


Figure 10.2 Serialization and deserialization of the `Person` instance

Note that the serialized class can contain not only values of primitive types or strings, but also collections and instances of other value object classes.

You can use annotations to customize the way objects are serialized and deserialized. When serializing an object to JSON, by default the library tries to serialize all the properties and uses the property names as keys. The annotations allow you to change the defaults. In this section we'll discuss two annotations, `@JsonExclude` and `@JsonName`, and we'll see their implementation later in the chapter.

- The `@JsonExclude` annotation is used to mark a property which should be excluded from serialization and deserialization.
- The `@JsonName` annotation lets you specify that the key in the key/value pair representing the property should be the given string, not the name of the property.

Consider the following example:

```
data class Person(
    @JsonName("alias") val firstName: String,
    @JsonExclude val age: Int? = null
)
```

You annotate the property `firstName` to change the key used to represent it in JSON. You annotate the property `age` to exclude it from serialization and deserialization. Note that you must specify the default value of the property `age`. Otherwise you would not be able to deserialize it back from the data which doesn't provide a value for that property.

You can see how the representation of an instance of the `Person` class changes:

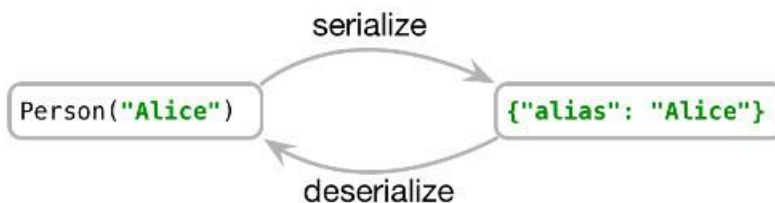


Figure 10.3 Serialization and deserialization of the `Person` instance with annotations applied

We've seen most of the features available in JKid: `serialize()`, `deserialize()`, `@JsonName`, and `@JsonExclude`. Now let's start our investigation of its implementation,

starting with the annotation declarations.

10.1.4 Declaring annotations

Now that we know how JKid works, let's look at how we can declare annotations, using the annotations from JKid as an example.

The `@JsonExclude` annotation has the simplest form, because it doesn't have any parameters:

```
annotation class JsonExclude
```

The syntax looks like a regular class declaration, with the added `annotation` modifier before the `class` keyword. Since annotation classes are only used to define the structure of metadata associated with declarations and expressions, they cannot contain any code. Therefore, the compiler prohibits specifying a body for an annotation class.

For annotations that have parameters, the parameters are declared in the primary constructor of the class:

```
annotation class JsonName(val name: String)
```

You're using the regular primary constructor declaration syntax. The `val` keyword is mandatory for all parameters of an annotation class.

For comparison, here's how we would declare the same annotation in Java:

```
/* Java */
public @interface JsonName
{ String value();
}
```

Note how the Java annotation has a method called `value()`, whereas the Kotlin one has `name`. The `value()` method is special in Java: when you apply an annotation, you need to provide explicit names for all attributes that you're specifying, except for the one called `value`. In Kotlin, on the other hand, applying an annotation is a regular constructor call. You can use the named argument syntax to make the argument names explicit, or you can omit them: `@JsonName(name = "first_name")` means the same as `@JsonName("first_name")`. If you need to apply an annotation declared in Java to a Kotlin element, however, you're required to use the named argument syntax for all arguments except for `value`, which Kotlin also recognizes as special.

Now let's discuss how to control the annotation usage, and also how you can apply annotations to other annotations.

10.1.5 Meta-annotations: controlling how an annotation is processed

Just like in Java, a Kotlin annotation class can itself be annotated. The annotations which can be applied to annotation classes are called *meta-annotations*. The standard library defines several of them, and they control how the compiler processes the annotations. Other frameworks use meta-annotations as well - for example, many dependency injection libraries use meta-annotations to mark annotations used to identify different injectable objects of the same type.

Of the meta-annotations defined in the standard library, the most common one is `@Target`. The declarations of `JsonExclude` and `JsonName` in `JKid` use it to specify the valid targets for those annotations. Here's how it is applied:

```
@Target (AnnotationTarget.PROPERTY)
annotation class JsonExclude
```

The `@Target` meta-annotation specifies the types of elements to which the annotation can be applied. If you don't use it, the annotation will be applicable to all declarations. That wouldn't make sense for `JKid` because the library processes only property annotations.

The list of values of the `AnnotationTarget` enum gives the full range of possible targets for an annotation. It includes classes, files, functions, properties, property accessors, types, all expressions, etc. To declare your own meta-annotation, use `ANNOTATION_CLASS` as its target:

```
@Target (AnnotationTarget.ANNOTATION_CLASS)
annotation class Target (vararg val allowedTargets: AnnotationTarget)
```

Note that you can't use annotations with 'property' target from Java code; to make such an annotation usable from Java you can add the second target `AnnotationTarget.FIELD`. In this case the annotation will be applied to properties in Kotlin, and to fields in Java.

NOTE

The `@Retention` annotation

In Java you've probably seen another important meta-annotation, `@Retention`. You use it to specify whether the annotation you declare will be stored in the `.class` file, and whether it will be accessible at runtime through reflection. Java by default retains annotations in `.class` files but does not make them accessible at runtime. Most annotations do need to be present at runtime, so in Kotlin the default is different: annotations have `RUNTIME` retention. Therefore, we didn't need to specify the retention for `JKid` annotations explicitly.

10.1.6 Classes as annotation parameters

You've seen how to define an annotation that holds static data as its arguments, but sometimes you need something different: the possibility to refer to a *class* as declaration metadata. You can do so by declaring an annotation class that has a class reference as a parameter. In the JKid library, this comes up in the `@DeserializeInterface` annotation, which allows you to control the deserialization of properties that have an interface type. You can't create an instance of an interface directly, so you need to specify which class is used as the implementation created during deserialization.

Here's a simple example showing how this annotation is used:

```
interface Company
{ val name:
  String
}

data class CompanyImpl(override val name: String) : Company

data class Person(
  val name: String,
  @DeserializeInterface(CompanyImpl::class) val company: Company
)
```

Whenever JKid reads a nested `company` object for a `Person` instance, it will create and deserialize an instance of `CompanyImpl` and store it in the `company` property. To specify this, you have used `CompanyImpl::class` as an argument of the `@DeserializeInterface` annotation. In general, to refer to a class, you use its name followed by the `::class` keyword.

Now let's see how the annotation is declared. Its single argument is a class reference, like in `@DeserializeInterface(CompanyImpl::class)`.

```
annotation class DeserializeInterface(val targetClass: KClass<out Any>)
```

The `KClass` type is Kotlin's counterpart to Java's `java.lang.Class` type. It is used to hold references to Kotlin classes, and you'll see what it allows you to do with those classes in the "Reflection" section later in this chapter.

The type parameter of `KClass` specifies which Kotlin classes can be referred to by this reference. For instance, `CompanyImpl::class` has a type `KClass<CompanyImpl>`, which is a subtype of the annotation parameter type.

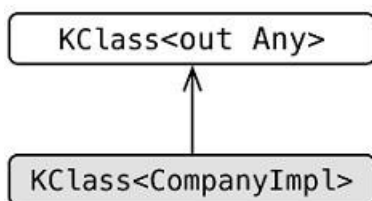


Figure 10.4 The type of annotation argument `CompanyImpl::class` (`KClass<CompanyImpl>`) is a subtype of annotation parameter type (`KClass<out Any>`).

If you wrote `KClass<Any>` without the `out` modifier, you wouldn't be able to pass `CompanyImpl::class` as an argument: the only allowed argument would be `Any::class`. The `out` keyword specifies that you're allowed to refer to classes which extend `Any`, and not just to `Any` itself.

The next section shows one more annotation that takes a reference to generic class as a parameter.

10.1.7 Generic classes as annotation parameters

By default `JKid` serializes properties of non-primitive types as nested objects. However, you can change this behaviour and provide your own serialization logic for some values.

The `@CustomSerializer` annotation takes a reference to your custom serializer class as an argument. The serializer class should implement the `ValueSerializer` interface:

```
interface ValueSerializer<T> {
    fun toJsonValue(value: T): Any?
    fun fromJsonValue(jsonValue: Any?): T
}
```

Suppose that you need to support serialization of dates, and you have created your own `DateSerializer` class for that, implementing the `ValueSerializer<Date>` interface. (This class is actually provided as an example in the `JKid` source code ¹⁶). Here's how you would apply it to our `Person` class:

Footnote 16 https://github.com/yole/jkid/blob/master/src/test/kotlin/examples/_6DateSerializerExample.kt

```
data class
    Person( val name:
        String,
        @CustomSerializer(DateSerializer::class) val birthDate: Date
    )
```

Now let's see how the `@CustomSerializer` annotation is declared. The `ValueSerializer` class is generic and defines a type parameter, so you need to provide a type argument value whenever you refer to the type. Since you know nothing about the types of properties with which this annotation will be used, you can use a *star projection* (discussed in section 9.3.6) as the argument:

```
annotation class CustomSerializer(
    val serializerClass: KClass<out ValueSerializer<*>>
)
```

The next figure takes apart the type of `serializerClass` parameter and explains the

different parts of it.

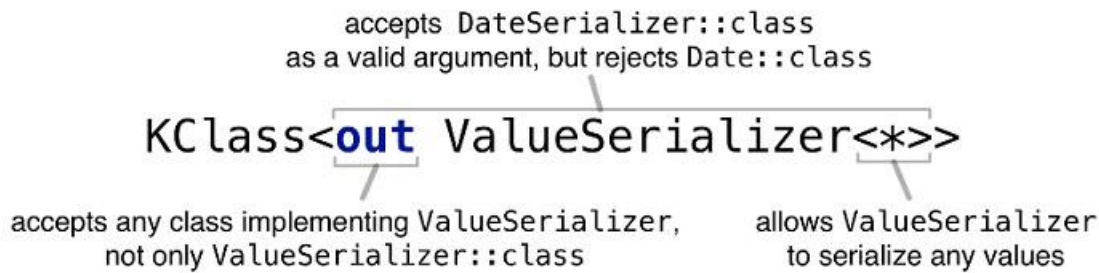


Figure 10.5 The type of the `serializerClass` annotation parameter. Only class references to classes that extend `ValueSerializer` will be valid annotation arguments.

You need to ensure that the annotation can only refer to classes that implement the `ValueSerializer` interface. For instance, writing `@CustomSerializer(Date::class)` should be prohibited, because `Date` doesn't implement the `ValueSerializer` interface.

Tricky, isn't it? The good news is that you can apply exactly the same pattern every time you need to use a class as an annotation argument. You can simply write `KClass<out YourClassName>`, and if `YourClassName` has its own type arguments, replace them with `*`.

We've now seen all the important aspects of declaring and applying annotations in Kotlin. The next step is to find out how to access the data stored in the annotations. For this, we need to use *reflection*, and now is the time to look into what this is and how to use it.

10.2 Reflection: Introspecting Kotlin objects at runtime

Reflection is, simply put, a way to access properties and methods of objects *dynamically* at runtime, without knowing in advance what those properties are. Normally, when you access a method or a property of an object, the source code of your program references a specific declaration, and the compiler *statically* resolves the reference and ensures that the declaration exists. However, sometimes you need to write code which can work with objects of any type, or where the names of methods and properties to be accessed are only known at runtime. The JSON serialization library is a great example of such code: it needs to be able to serialize any object to JSON, so it can't reference specific classes and properties. This is where reflection comes into play.

When working with reflection in Kotlin, you deal with two different reflection APIs. The first one is the standard Java reflection, defined in the `java.lang.reflect` package. Since Kotlin classes are compiled to regular Java bytecode, the Java reflection API supports them perfectly well. In particular, this means that Java libraries that use the reflection API are fully compatible with Kotlin code.

The second API is the Kotlin reflection API, defined in the `kotlin.reflect`

package. It gives you access to concepts which don't exist in the Java world, such as properties or nullable types. However, at this time it does not provide a comprehensive replacement for the Java reflection API, and, as we'll see later, there are cases where you need to fall back to Java reflection. An important note is that the Kotlin reflection API isn't restricted to Kotlin classes: you can use the same API for accessing classes written in any JVM language.

NOTE

The Kotlin Reflection Library

To reduce the runtime library size on platforms where it matters, such as Android, the Kotlin reflection API is packaged into a separate .jar file, `kotlin-reflect.jar`, which is not added to the dependencies of new projects by default. If you're using the Kotlin reflection API, you need to make sure that the library is added as a dependency. IntelliJ IDEA is able to detect the missing dependency and to assist you with adding it. The Maven group/artifact ID for the library is `org.jetbrains.kotlin:kotlin-reflect`.

In this section we'll see how we can use the reflection API to implement our JSON library. We'll implement the serialization part first, because it's more straightforward and easy to explain, and then proceed to JSON parsing and deserialization. But first let's take a close look at the reflection features we'll later use.

10.2.1 The Kotlin reflection API: *KClass*, *KCallable*, *KFunction*, *KProperty*

The main entry point of the Kotlin reflection API is `KClass`, which represents a class. `KClass` is the counterpart of `java.lang.Class`, and you can use it to enumerate and access all the declarations contained in the class, its superclasses, and so on. You get an instance of `KClass` by writing `MyClass::class`. To get the class of an object at runtime, first you obtain its Java class using the `javaClass` property, which is a direct equivalent to Java's `java.lang.Object.getClass()`. Then you access the `.kotlin` extension property to move from Java to Kotlin reflection API.

```
class Person(val name: String, val age: Int)

>>> val person = Person("Alice", 29)
>>> val kClass = person.javaClass.kotlin
>>> println(kClass.simpleName)
Person
>>> kClass.memberProperties.forEach { println(it.name) }
age
name
```

❶ Returns an instance of `KClass<Person>`

In this simple example you print the name of the class and the names of its properties.

The `.memberProperties` returns all non-extension properties defined in the class, as well as in all of its superclasses.

If you browse the declaration of `KClass`, you'll see that it contains a bunch of useful methods for accessing the contents of the class:

```
interface KClass<T : Any>
{
    val simpleName: String?
    val qualifiedName: String?
    val members: Collection<KCallable<*>>
    val constructors: Collection<KFunction<T>>
    val nestedClasses: Collection<KClass<*>>
    ...
}
```

Many other useful features of `KClass`, including `memberProperties` used above, are declared as extensions. You can see the full list of methods and extensions on `KClass` in the standard library reference ¹⁷.

Footnote 17 <https://kotlinlang.org/api/latest/jvm/stdlib/kotlin.reflect/-k-class/index.html>

You might have noticed that the list of all members of a class is a collection of `KCallable` instances. `KCallable` is a superclass for functions and properties. It declares the `call` method, which allows you to call the corresponding function or the getter of the property:

```
interface KCallable<out R> {
    fun call(vararg args: Any?): R
    ...
}
```

You provide the function arguments in a `vararg` list. The following code demonstrates how you can use `call` to call a function through reflection:

```
fun foo(x: Int) = println(x)
>>> val kFunction = ::foo
>>> kFunction.call(42)
42
```

You've already seen the `::foo` syntax in section 5.1.5, and now you can discover that the value of this expression is an instance of the `KFunction` class from the reflection API. To call the referenced function, you use the `KCallable.call` method. In this case, you need to provide a single argument, 42. If you try to call the function with a wrong number of arguments, e.g. `kFunction.call()`, you'll get a runtime exception `"IllegalArgumentException: Callable expects 1 arguments, but 0 were provided."`

In this case, however, you can use a more specific method to call the function. The type of the `::foo` expression is `KFunction1<Int, Unit>`, which contains information

about parameter and return types. The 1 digit denotes that this function takes one parameter. To call the function through this interface, you use the `invoke` method. It accepts a fixed number of parameters (1 in this case), and their types correspond to the type parameters of the `KFunction1` interface. You can also call `kFunction` directly ¹⁸:

Footnote 18 The section 11.3 will explain the details why it's possible to call `kFunction` without explicit `invoke`.

```
fun sum(x: Int, y: Int) = x + y
>>> val kFunction: KFunction2<Int, Int, Int> = ::sum
>>> println(kFunction.invoke(1, 2) + kFunction(3, 4))
10
>>> kFunction(1)
ERROR: No value passed for parameter p2
```

Now you can't call the `invoke` method on `kFunction` with a wrong number of arguments: it simply won't compile. Therefore, if you have a `KFunction` of a specific type, with known parameters and return type, it's preferable to use its `invoke` method. The `call` method is a generic way that works for all types of functions, but doesn't provide type safety.

NOTE

How and where are `KFunctionN` interfaces defined?

The types such as `KFunction1` represent functions with different numbers of parameters. Each type extends `KFunction` and adds one additional member `invoke` with the appropriate number of parameters. For example, `KFunction2` declares `operator fun invoke(p1: P1, p2: P2): R`, where `P1` and `P2` represent the function parameter types and `R` represents the return type.

These function types are *synthetic compiler-generated types*, and you won't find their declarations in the `kotlin.reflect` package. That means you can use an interface for a function with any number of parameters. The synthetic types approach reduces the size of `kotlin-runtime.jar` and avoids artificial restrictions on the possible number of function type parameters.

You can invoke the `call` method on a `KProperty` instance as well, and it will call the getter of the property. However, the property interface gives you a better way to obtain the property value, the `get` method.

To access the `get` method, you need to use the correct interface for the property, depending on how it's declared. Top-level properties are represented by instances of the `KProperty0` interface, which has a no-argument `get()` method:

```
var counter = 0
>>> val kProperty = ::counter
```

```

>>> kProperty.setter.call(21)
>>> println(kProperty.get())
21

```

- ❶ Calls a setter through reflection, passing 21 as an argument
- ❷ Obtains a property value by calling 'get'

A *member property* is represented by an instance of `KProperty1`, which has a one-argument `get` method. In order to access its value, you need to provide the object instance for which you need the value. In the example below, you store a reference to the property in a `memberProperty` variable, then you call `memberProperty.get(person)` to obtain the value of this property for the specific `person` instance. So if a `memberProperty` refers to the `age` property of the `Person` class, `memberProperty.get(person)` is a way to dynamically get the value of `person.age`.

```

class Person(val name: String, val age: Int)

>>> val person = Person("Alice", 29)
>>> val memberProperty = Person::age
>>> println(memberProperty.get(person))
29

```

Note that `KProperty1` is actually a generic class, and `memberProperty` variable has the type `KProperty<Person, Int>`, where the first type parameter denotes the type of the receiver, and the second type parameter stands for the property type. Thus you can call its `get` method only with a receiver of the right type; the call `memberProperty.get("Alice")` won't compile.

The following picture shows a hierarchy of interfaces that you can use to access source code elements at runtime.

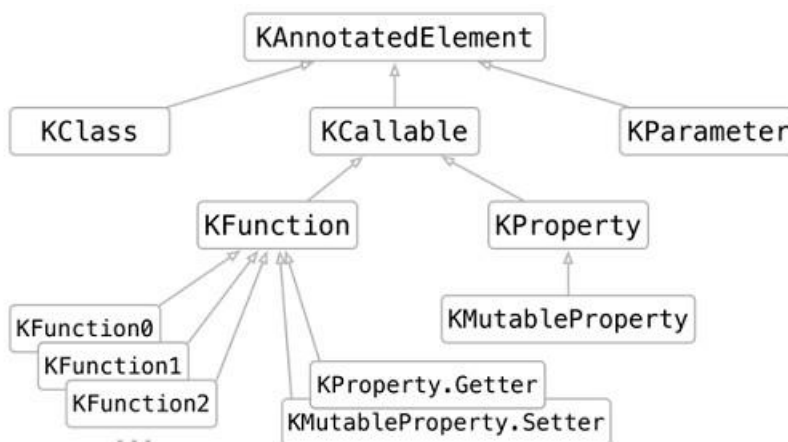


Figure 10.6 Hierarchy of interfaces in the Kotlin reflection API

Since all declarations can be annotated, the interfaces that represent declaration at runtime, like `KClass`, `KFunction`, or `KParameter`, all extend `KAnnotatedElement`. `KClass` is used to represent both classes and objects. `KProperty` can represent any property, while its subclass, `KMutableProperty`, represents a mutable property, which you declare with `var`. You can use special interfaces `Getter` and `Setter` declared inside `Property` and `KMutableProperty` accordingly to work with property accessors as functions - for example, if you need to retrieve their annotations. Both interfaces for accessors extend `KFunction`. For simplicity we omit the specific interfaces for properties like `KProperty0` from the diagram.

Now that you've become acquainted with the basics of the Kotlin reflection API, let's investigate how the `JKid` library is implemented.

10.2.2 Implementing object serialization using reflection

First of all, let's recall the declaration of the function we want to implement:

```
fun serialize(obj: Any): String
```

This function takes an object and returns its JSON representation as a string.

We'll build up the resulting JSON in a `StringBuilder` instance. As we serialize object properties and their values, we'll append them to this `StringBuilder` object. To make the `append` calls more concise, let's put our implementation in an extension function to `StringBuilder`. That way we can conveniently call the `append` method without a qualifier:

```
private fun StringBuilder.serializeObject(x: Any)
    { append(...)
  }
```

Passing a value as a receiver of an extension function, instead of a regular function parameter, is a very common pattern in Kotlin code. Note that this function doesn't really extend the `StringBuilder` API. It performs operations that make no sense outside of this particular context, so we ensure that it can't be used elsewhere by making the function `private`. The reason why it's declared as an extension is to emphasize a particular object as primary for this code block, and to make it easier to work with that object.

Consequently, the `serialize()` function delegates all the work to `serializeObject`:

```
fun serialize(obj: Any): String = buildString { serializeObject(obj) }
```

As we saw in section 5.5.1, `buildString` creates a `StringBuilder` and lets us fill it with content in a lambda. In this case, the content is provided by the call to `serializeObject(obj)`.

Now let's discuss the behavior of the serialization function that we're going to implement. By default, it will serialize all properties of the object. Primitive types and strings will be serialized as JSON number, boolean and string values, as appropriate. Collections will be serialized as JSON arrays. Properties of other types will be serialized as nested objects. As we discussed in the previous section, this behavior can be customized through annotations.

Let's look at the implementation of `serializeObject`, where we can observe the reflection API in a real scenario.

```
private fun StringBuilder.serializeObject(obj: Any)
{
    val kClass = obj.javaClass.kotlin
    val properties = kClass.memberProperties

    properties.joinToStringBuilder(
        this, prefix = "{", postfix = "}" { prop ->
            serializeString(prop.name)
            append(": ")
            serializePropertyValue(prop.get(obj))
        }
    )
}
```

- ❶ Gets the 'KClass' for the object
- ❷ Gets all properties of the class
- ❸ Gets the property name
- ❹ Gets the property value

The implementation of this method should be clear: you serialize each property of the class, one after another. The resulting JSON will look like this: `{ prop1: value1, prop2: value2 }`. The `joinToStringBuilder` function ensures that properties are separated with commas. The `serializeString` function escapes special characters as required by the JSON format. The `serializePropertyValue` function checks whether a value is a primitive value, string, collection, or nested object, and serializes its content accordingly.

In the previous section we already discussed a way to obtain the value of the `KProperty` instance: the `get` method. That time we worked with the member reference `Person::age` of the type `KProperty1<Person, Int>`, which lets the compiler know the exact types of the receiver and the property value. In this example, however, the exact types are unknown, because we enumerate all the properties of an object's class.

Therefore, the `prop` variable has the type `KProperty1<Any, *>`, and `prop.get(obj)` returns a value of `Any` type. We don't get any compile-time checks for the receiver type, but, since we're passing the same object from which we obtained the list of properties, the receiver type will be correct.

Now let's see how we can implement annotations that tune up serialization.

10.2.3 Customizing serialization with annotations

Earlier in this chapter you've seen examples of annotations that let you customize the process of JSON serialization. In particular, we've discussed `@JsonExclude`, `@JsonName` and `@CustomSerializer` annotations. Now it's time to see how these annotations can be handled by our `serializeObject` function.

Let's start with `@JsonExclude`. This annotation allows you to exclude some properties from serialization. Let's investigate how you should change the implementation of the `serializeObject` function to support that.

As you remember, to get all member properties of the class, you used the extension property `memberProperties` on the `KClass` instance. But now you have to do more: you have to filter out properties annotated with `@JsonExclude`. Let's see how this is done.

The `KAnnotatedElement` interface defines the property annotations, a collection of instances of all annotations (with runtime retention) applied to the element in the source code. As `KProperty` extends `KAnnotatedElement`, you can access all annotations for a property by simply saying `property.annotations`.

However, we are not interested in all annotations. Our filtering is based on a specific annotation. The helper function `findAnnotation` does the job:

```
inline fun <reified T> KAnnotatedElement.findAnnotation(): T?
    = annotations.filterIsInstance<T>().firstOrNull()
```

The `findAnnotation()` function returns an annotation of a type specified as an argument if such an annotation is present. It uses the pattern we've discussed in the section 9.2.3 and makes the type parameter `reified` in order to pass the class we're interested in as the type argument.

Now you can filter out the properties annotated with `@JsonExclude`:

```
val properties = kClass.memberProperties
    .filter { it.findAnnotation<JsonExclude>() == null }
```

You use the `findAnnotation` function together with the `filter` standard library function to exclude from processing the properties which have the `@JsonExclude` annotation. You handle the remaining properties as before.

Now let's pay attention to the next annotation, `@JsonName`. To remind you, we repeat its declaration and the example of its usage below:

```
annotation class JsonName(val name: String)

data class Person(
    @JsonName("alias") val firstName: String,
    val age: Int
)
```

For this one you're not only interested in its presence, but also in its argument, the name that should be used for the annotated property in JSON. Fortunately, the `findAnnotation` function still helps you here:

```
val jsonNameAnn = prop.findAnnotation<JsonName>()
val propertyName = jsonNameAnn?.name ?: prop.name
```

1
2

- 1 Gets an instance of `@JsonName` annotation if it's present
- 2 Gets its 'name' argument or uses 'prop.name' as a fallback

If a property is not annotated with `@JsonName`, then `jsonNameAnn` will be `null`, and you'll still use `prop.name` as the name for the property in JSON. If the property is annotated, you'll use the specified name instead.

Let's follow the serialization of an instance of the `Person` class declared above. During the serialization of the `firstName` property, `jsonNameAnn` will contain the corresponding instance of the annotation class `JsonName`. Thus `jsonNameAnn?.name` will return the non-null value `"alias"`, which will be used as a key in JSON. When the `age` property is serialized, the annotation is not found, so the property name `age` will be used as a key.

Let's combine the changes discussed so far and look at the resulting implementation of the serialization logic:

```
private fun StringBuilder.serializeObject(obj: Any)
{
    obj.javaClass.kotlin.memberProperties
        .filter { it.findAnnotation<JsonExclude>() == null }
        .joinToStringBuilder(this, prefix = "{", postfix = "}")
        { serializeProperty(it, obj)
        }
}
```

Now we're filtering out properties annotated with `@JsonExclude`. We've also extracted the logic responsible for property serialization into a separate `serializeProperty` function:

```
private fun
    StringBuilder.serializeProperty( pro
        p: KProperty1<Any, *>, obj: Any
    ) {
        val name = prop.findAnnotation<JsonName>()?.name ?: prop.name
        serializeString(name)
        append(": ")

        serializePropertyValue(prop.get(obj))
    }
```

The property name is now processed considering the annotation `@JsonName` as we discussed earlier.

Now let's implement the remaining annotation, `@CustomSerializer`. For this, we'll define a function `getSerializer()`, which will return the `ValueSerializer` instance registered via the `@CustomSerializer` annotation. For example, if we declare the `Person` class as shown below, and call `getSerializer()` when serializing the `birthDate` property, it will return an instance of `DateSerializer`.

```
data class
    Person( val name:
        String,
        @CustomSerializer(DateSerializer::class) val birthDate: Date
    )
```

Let's recall how the `@CustomSerializer` annotation is declared, in order to better understand the implementation of `getSerializer()`:

```
annotation class CustomSerializer(
    val serializerClass: KClass<out ValueSerializer<*>>
)
```

Now you can see how the `getSerializer` function is implemented:

```
fun KProperty<*>.getSerializer(): ValueSerializer<Any?>? {
    val customSerializerAnn = findAnnotation<CustomSerializer>() ?: return null
    val serializerClass = customSerializerAnn.serializerClass

    val valueSerializer = serializerClass.objectInstance
        ?: serializerClass.createInstance()
    @Suppress("UNCHECKED_CAST")
    return valueSerializer as ValueSerializer<Any?>
}
```

It's an extension function to `KProperty`, because the property is the primary object handled by the method. At the beginning we again use the `findAnnotation` function to get an instance of the `@CustomSerializer` annotation if it's present. Then we obtain its argument, `serializerClass`, the class for which we need to obtain an instance next.

The most interesting part here is how we handle both classes and objects (Kotlin's singletons) as values of the `@CustomSerializer` annotation. They're both represented

by the `KClass` class. The difference is that objects have a non-null value of the `objectInstance` property, which can be used to access the singleton instance created for the object. For example, `DateSerializer` is declared as an object, so its `objectInstance` property will store the singleton `DateSerializer` instance. We will use that instance for serializing all objects, and `createInstance` won't be called.

If the `KClass` represents a regular class, we create a new instance by calling `createInstance`. This function is similar to `java.lang.Class.newInstance`.

Finally, we can make use of `getSerializer` in the implementation of `serializeProperty`. Here's the final version of the function:

```
private fun
    StringBuilder.serializeProperty( prop
    p: KProperty1<Any, *>, obj: Any
) {
    val name = prop.findAnnotation<JsonName>()?.name ?: prop.name
    serializeString(name)
    append(": ")

    val value = prop.get(obj)
    val jsonValue =
        prop.getSerializer()?.toJsonValue(value)
        ?: value
    serializePropertyValue(jsonValue)
}
```

- ❶ Use custom serializer for the property if it's present
- ❷ Otherwise use the property value as before

Now `serializeProperty` uses the serializer to convert the property value to a JSON-compatible format by calling `toJsonValue`. If the property doesn't have a custom serializer, it uses the property value.

Now you've seen the implementation of the JSON serialization part of the library, so we can move to the parsing and deserialization. The deserialization part requires quite a bit more code, so we won't examine all of it, but we'll look at the structure of the implementation and see how reflection is used to deserialize objects.

10.2.4 JSON parsing and object deserialization

Now let's start with the second part of the story: implementing the deserialization logic. First of all, let's recall the API. Just as the one for serialization, it consists of a single function:

```
inline fun <reified T: Any> deserialize(json: String): T
```

Here's an example of its use:

```
data class Author(val name: String)
data class Book(val title: String, val author: Author)

>>> val json = ""{"title": "Catch-22", "author": {"name": "J. Heller"}}""
>>> val book = deserialize<Book>(json)
>>> println(book)
Book(title=Catch-22, author=Author(name=J. Heller))
```

You pass the type of object to be deserialized as a reified type parameter to the `deserialize` function and get a new object instance back.

Deserializing JSON is a more difficult task than serializing, because it involves parsing the JSON string input in addition to the use of reflection to access object internals. The JSON deserializer in JKid is implemented in a fairly conventional way and consists of three main stages: lexical analyzer (usually referred to as *lexer*), syntax analyzer or *parser*, and the deserialization component itself.

The lexical analysis splits an input string consisting of characters into a list of tokens. There are two kinds of tokens: *character tokens*, which represent characters with special meanings in the JSON syntax (comma, colon, braces and brackets), and *value tokens*, which correspond to string, number, boolean or `null` constants. A left brace `{`, a string value `"Catch-22"` or an integer value `42` are examples of different tokens.

The parser is generally responsible for converting a plain list of tokens into a structured representation. Its task in JKid is to understand the higher level structure of JSON and to convert individual tokens into semantic elements supported in JSON: key-value pairs, objects and arrays.

The `JsonObject` interface keeps track of the object or array currently being deserialized. The parser calls the corresponding methods when it discovers new properties of the current object: simple values, composite properties or arrays.

```
interface JsonObject {
    fun setSimpleProperty(propertyName: String, value: Any?)

    fun createObject(propertyName: String): JsonObject

    fun createArray(propertyName: String): JsonObject
}
```

The `propertyName` parameter in these methods receives the JSON key. Thus, when the parser encounters a property `author` with an object as its value, the method `createObject("author")` will be called. Simple value properties are reported as calls to `setSimpleProperty`, with the actual token value passed as the `value` argument. The `JsonObject` implementations are responsible for creating new objects for properties and storing references to them in the outer object.

The following diagram shows the input and output of each stage for lexical and syntactic analyses when deserializing a sample string.



Figure 10.7 JSON Parsing: Lexer, parser and deserializer

Once again, the lexical analysis divides an input string into a list of tokens, then the syntactic analysis (the parser) processes this list of tokens and invokes an appropriate method of `JsonObject` on every new meaningful element.

The deserializer then provides an implementation for `JsonObject` that gradually builds a new instance of the corresponding type. It needs to find the correspondence between class properties and JSON keys (`title`, `author`, `name` in the example above), build nested object values (an instance of `Author`), and only after that it can create a new instance of the required class (`Book`).

The `JKid` library is intended to be used with data classes, and as such, it passes all the name-value pairs loaded from the JSON file as parameters to the constructor of the class being deserialized. It does not support setting properties on object instances after they have been created. This means that we need to store the data somewhere while we're reading it from JSON, and before we can construct the object.

The requirement to save the components before creating the object looks similar to the traditional builder pattern, with the difference that builders are generally tailored to creating a specific kind of object, and our solution needs to be completely generic. To avoid being boring, we use the term *seed* for our implementation. In JSON we need to build different types of composite structures: objects, collections and maps. The classes `ObjectSeed`, `ObjectListSeed` and `ValueListSeed` are responsible for building objects and lists of composite objects or simple values appropriately. The construction of maps is left as an exercise for the reader.

The basic interface `Seed` extends `JsonObject` and provides an additional method `spawn` to get the resulting instance after the building process is finished. It also declares

the `createCompositeProperty` method which is used to create both nested objects and nested lists (they use the same underlying logic to create instances through seeds).

```
interface Seed: JsonObject
{ fun spawn(): Any?

    fun
        createCompositeProperty(
            propertyName: String,
            isList: Boolean
        ): JsonObject

    override fun createObject(propertyName: String) =
        createCompositeProperty(propertyName, false)

    override fun createArray(propertyName: String) =
        createCompositeProperty(propertyName, true)

    // ...
}
```

You may think of `spawn` as an analogue of `build` - a method that returns you the result value. It will return the constructed object for `ObjectSeed`, and the resulting list for `ObjectListSeed` or `ValueListSeed`. We won't discuss in detail how lists are deserialized. We'll focus our attention on creating objects, which is more complicated and serves to demonstrate the general idea.

But before that let's study the main `deserialize` method that does all the work of deserializing a value:

```
fun <T: Any> deserialize(json: Reader, targetClass: KClass<T>): T
{ val seed = ObjectSeed(targetClass, ClassInfoCache())
  Parser(json, seed).parse()
  return seed.spawn()
}
```

To start the parsing, we create an `ObjectSeed` to store the properties of the object being deserialized, and then invoke the parser and pass the input stream reader `json` to it. Once we reach the end of the input data, we call the `spawn` function to build the resulting object.

Now let's focus on the implementation of `ObjectSeed`, which stores the state of an object being constructed. The `ObjectSeed` takes a reference to the resulting class, and an object `classInfoCache` containing cached information about the properties of the class. This cached information will be later used to create instances of that class. `ClassInfoCache` and `ClassInfo` are helper classes which we are going to discuss in the next section.

The `ObjectSeed` builds a map from constructor parameters to their values. Two mutable maps are used for that: `valueArguments` for simple value properties and `seedArguments` for composite properties. While building the result, new arguments are

added to the `valueArguments` map by calling `setSimpleProperty` and to the `seedArguments` map by calling `createCompositeProperty`. New composite seeds are added in an empty state, and are filled with data as we proceed to read the input stream. Finally, the `spawn` method builds all nested seeds recursively by calling `spawn` on each.

```
class ObjectSeed<out T> {
    Any? (targetClass:
        KClass<T>,
        val classInfoCache: ClassInfoCache
    ) : Seed {

        1
        private val classInfo: ClassInfo<T> =
            classInfoCache[targetClass]

        private val valueArguments = mutableMapOf<KParameter, Any?>()
        private val seedArguments = mutableMapOf<KParameter, Seed>()

        1
        private val arguments: Map<KParameter, Any?>
        get() = valueArguments +
            seedArguments.mapValues { it.value.spawn() }

        override fun setSimpleProperty(propertyName: String, value: Any?) {
            { val param = classInfo.getConstructorParameter(
                2
                propertyName)
                valueArguments[param] =
                    classInfo.deserializeConstructorArgument(param, value)
            }

            override fun
                createCompositeProperty( propertyName
                    : String, isList: Boolean
            ): Seed {
                val param = classInfo.getConstructorParameter(propertyName)

                val deserializeAs =
                    classInfo.getDeserializeClass(propertyName)

                5
                val seed = createSeedForType(
                    deserializeAs ?: param.type.javaType, isList)

                6
                return seed.apply { seedArguments[param] = this }

                7
            }

            override fun spawn(): T =
                classInfo.createInstance(arguments)
        }
    }
}
```

- ❶ Caches the information needed for creating an instance of `targetClass`
- ❷ Builds a map from constructor parameters to their values
- ❸ Records a value for constructor parameter, if it's a simple value
- ❹ Loads the value of `DeserializeInterface` annotation for the property, if any
- ❺ Creates an `ObjectSeed` or `CollectionSeed` according to the parameter type...
- ❻ ...and records it in the `seedArguments` map
- ❼ Creates the resulting instance of `targetClass` passing an arguments map

Note how calling `arguments` in the body of the `spawn` method launches the recursive

building of composite (seed) arguments: in the custom getter of `arguments` we call the `spawn` methods on each of the `seedArguments`.

The function `createSeedForType` analyses the type of the parameter and creates either `ObjectSeed`, `ObjectListSeed` or `ValueListSeed` depending on whether the parameter is some kind of collection or not. We'll leave the investigation of how it's implemented to the reader. Next, let's see how exactly we create an instance of the `targetClass` in the `ClassInfo.createInstance` function.

10.2.5 Final deserialization step: `callBy()` and creating objects using reflection

The last part we need to understand is the class `ClassInfo` that builds the resulting instance and caches information about constructor parameters. We used it in `ObjectSeed`. But before we dive into the implementation details, let's look at the APIs that we use to create objects through reflection.

We've already seen the `KCallable.call` method that calls a function or a constructor by taking a list of arguments. This method works great for many cases, but it has a restriction: it does not support default parameter values. In our case, if a user is trying to deserialize an object with a constructor which has default parameter values, we definitely do not want to require specifying those arguments in the JSON. Therefore, we need to use another method, which does support default argument values:

`KCallable.callBy`.

Here's how the `callBy` method is declared:

```
interface KCallable<out R> {
    fun callBy(args: Map<KParameter, Any?>): R
    ...
}
```

The method takes a map of parameters to their corresponding values that will be passed as arguments. If a parameter is missing from the map, its default value will be used if possible. It's also nice that we don't have to put the parameters in the right order. We can just read the name-value pairs from JSON, find the parameter corresponding to each argument name and put its value in the map.

One thing that we do need to take care of is getting the types right. The type of the value in the `args` map needs to match the constructor parameter type, otherwise you get an `IllegalArgumentException`. This is particularly important for numeric types: we need to know whether the parameter takes an `Int`, a `Long`, a `Double` or another primitive type, and to convert the numeric value coming from JSON to the correct type. In order to do that, we use the `KParameter.type` property.

To implement the actual type conversions, we use the same `ValueSerializer`

interface as for custom serialization. If a property does not have a `@CustomSerializer` annotation, we retrieve a standard implementation based on its type:

```
fun serializerForType(type: Type): ValueSerializer<out Any??> =
    when(type) {
        Byte::class.java -> ByteSerializer
        Int::class.java -> IntSerializer
        Boolean::class.java -> BooleanSerializer
        // ...
        else -> null
    }
```

The corresponding `ValueSerializer` implementations simply perform the necessary type checking or conversion:

```
object BooleanSerializer : ValueSerializer<Boolean>
{
    override fun fromJsonValue(jsonValue: Any?): Boolean
    {
        if (jsonValue !is Boolean) throw JKidException("Boolean expected")
        return jsonValue
    }

    override fun toJsonValue(value: Boolean) = value
}
```

The `callBy` method gives you a way to invoke the primary constructor of an object passing a map of parameters and corresponding values, and the `ValueSerializer` mechanism allows you to ensure that the values in the map have the right types. Now let's see how you're actually invoking the API.

The `ClassInfoCache` class is intended to reduce the overhead of reflection operations. As you remember, the annotations used to control the serialization and deserialization process (`@JsonName` and `@CustomSerializer`) are applied to properties, rather than parameters. When we're deserializing an object, we're dealing with constructor parameters, not properties, and in order to retrieve the annotations, we need to find the corresponding property. Performing this search on reading every key-value pair would be exceedingly slow, so we do this once per class and cache the information.

Here's the entire implementation of `ClassInfoCache`:

```
class ClassInfoCache {
    private val cacheData = mutableMapOf<KClass<*>, ClassInfo<*>>()

    @Suppress("UNCHECKED_CAST")
    operator fun <T : Any> get(cls: KClass<T>): ClassInfo<T> =
        cacheData.getOrPut(cls) { ClassInfo(cls) } as ClassInfo<T>
}
```

We use the same pattern as we discussed in section 9.3.6: we remove the type information when we store the values in the map, but the implementation of the `get` method guarantees that the returned `ClassInfo<T>` has the right type argument. Note the

use of `getOrPut`: if the `cacheData` map already contains an entry for `cls`, you return that entry. Otherwise, you call the passed lambda, which calculates the value for the key, store the value in the map and return it.

The `ClassInfo` class is responsible for creating a new instance of the target class and caching the necessary information. To simplify the code, we omit some functions and trivial initializers. Also, you may notice that instead of `!!` the production code throws an exception with an informative message (which is a good pattern for your code as well).

```
class ClassInfo<T : Any>(cls: KClass<T>) {
    private val constructor = cls.primaryConstructor!!

    private val jsonNameToParamMap = hashMapOf<String, KParameter>()
    private val paramToSerializerMap =
        hashMapOf<KParameter, ValueSerializer<out Any?>>()
    private val jsonNameToDeserializeClassMap =
        hashMapOf<String, Class<out Any?>>()

    init {
        constructor.parameters.forEach { cacheDataForParameter(cls, it) }
    }

    fun getConstructorParameter(propertyName: String): KParameter =
        jsonNameToParam[propertyName]!!

    fun deserializeConstructorArgument(
        param: KParameter, value: Any?): Any? {
        { val serializer = paramToSerializer[param]
        if (serializer != null) return serializer.fromJsonValue(value)

        validateArgumentType(param, value)
        return value
        }

    fun createInstance(arguments: Map<KParameter, Any?>): T {
        { ensureAllParametersPresent(arguments)
        return constructor.callBy(arguments)
        }

    // ...
}
```

On initialization it locates the property corresponding to each constructor parameter and retrieves its annotations. It stores the data in three maps: `jsonNameToParam` specifies the parameter corresponding to each key in the JSON file, `paramToSerializer` map stores the serializer for each parameter, and `jsonNameToDeserializeClass` stores the class specified as the `@DeserializeInterface` argument, if any. `ClassInfo` can then provide a constructor parameter by the property name, and the calling code uses the parameter as a key for the parameter to argument map.

The mentioned functions `cacheDataForParameter` `validateArgumentType`, `ensureAllParametersPresent` are private functions inside this class. We provide the implementation of the last one below. You can browse the code of the other functions by yourself.

```
private fun ensureAllParametersPresent(arguments: Map<KParameter, Any?>)
{
    for (param in constructor.parameters) {
        if (arguments[param] == null &&
            !param.isOptional && !param.type.isMarkedNullable)
        {
            throw JKidException("Missing value for parameter
                                ${param.name}")
        }
    }
}
```

This method checks that you provide all required values for parameters. Note how the reflection API helps you here. If a parameter has a default value, then `param.isOptional` is `true` and you can omit an argument for it, the default one will be used instead. If the parameter type is nullable (`type.isMarkedNullable` tells you that), `null` will be used as the default argument value. For all other parameters you must provide the corresponding arguments, otherwise an exception is thrown.

The reflection cache ensures that the search for annotations that customize the deserialization process is performed only once, and not for every property we see in the JSON data.

This completes our discussion of the JKid library implementation. Over the course of this chapter, we've explored the implementation of a JSON serialization and deserialization library, implemented on top of the reflection APIs, and using annotations to customize its behavior. Of course, all the techniques and approaches demonstrated in this chapter can be used for your own frameworks as well.

10.3 Summary

In this chapter you learned that:

- The syntax for applying annotations in Kotlin is almost the same as in Java;
- Kotlin allows to apply annotations to a broader range of targets than Java, including files and expressions;
- Annotation argument can be a primitive value, string, enum, class reference, instance of other annotation class or array thereof;
- Specifying the use-site target for annotation like in `@get:Rule` allows to choose how the annotation is applied if a single Kotlin declaration produces multiple bytecode elements;
- You declare an annotation class as a class with a primary constructor where all parameters are marked as `val` properties and without a body;
- Meta-annotations can be used to specify the target, retention mode and other attributes of annotations;
- The reflection API allows to enumerate and access the methods and properties of an object dynamically at runtime. It has interfaces representing different kinds of declarations, such as classes (`KClass`), functions (`KFunction`) and so on;
- To obtain a `KClass` instance, you can use `ClassName::class` if the class is statically known and `obj.javaClass.kotlin` to get the class from an object instance;
- `KFunction` and `KProperty` interfaces both extend `KCallable` which provide the generic `call` method;

- `KFunction0`, `KFunction1` etc. represent functions with different number of parameters and can be called using the `invoke` method;
- `KProperty0` and `KProperty1` represent properties with different number of receivers and support the `get` method for retrieving the value;
- The `KCallable.callBy()` method can be used to invoke methods with default parameter values.

DSL construction

This chapter covers:

- The idea of domain-specific languages
- Lambdas with receiver
- The 'invoke' convention
- Examples of existing Kotlin DSLs

In this chapter, we'll discuss how you can design expressive and idiomatic APIs for your Kotlin classes through the use of *domain specific languages*, or DSLs. We'll explore the differences between traditional and DSL-style APIs, and see how DSL-style APIs can be applied to a wide variety of practical problems, in areas as diverse as database access, HTML generation, testing, writing build scripts, and many others.

Kotlin DSL design relies on many language features, two of which that we haven't yet fully explored. One of them we saw briefly in chapter 5: lambdas with receiver, which allow to create DSL structure by changing the name resolution rules in code blocks. The other is new: the `invoke` convention, enabling more flexibility in combining lambdas and property assignments in DSL code. We'll study those features in detail in this chapter.

11.1 From APIs to DSLs

Before we dive into the discussion of DSLs, let's get a better understanding of the problem that we're trying to solve. Ultimately, the goal here is to achieve the best possible code readability and maintainability. To reach that goal, it's not enough to focus on individual classes. Most of the code in a class interacts with other classes, so we need to look at the interfaces through which these interactions happen - or, in other words, the *APIs* of the classes.

It's important to remember that the challenge of building good APIs is not reserved to

library authors - rather, it's something that every developer has to do. Just as a library provides a programming interface for using it, every class in an application provides possibilities for other classes to interact with it. Ensuring that those interactions are easy to understand and can be expressed clearly is essential for keeping a project maintainable. Over the course of this book, you have seen many examples of the features of Kotlin that allow you to build *clean APIs* for classes. What do we mean when we say that an API is clean? Two things, essentially:

- It needs to be clear for the readers what's going on in the code. This can be achieved with a good choice of names and concepts, which is important in any language.
- The code needs to look clean, with minimum ceremony and no unnecessary syntax. Achieving this will be the main focus of this chapter. A clean API can even be indistinguishable from a built-in feature of a language.

Examples of Kotlin features that enable building clean APIs include extension functions, infix calls, lambda syntax shortcuts and operator overloading. The following table shows how these features help reduce the amount of syntactic noise in the code.

Table 11.1 Kotlin support for clean syntax

Regular syntax	Clean syntax	Feature in use
<code>StringUtil.capitalize(s)</code>	<code>s.capitalize()</code>	extension function
<code>1.to("one")</code>	<code>1 to "one"</code>	infix function
<code>set.add(2)</code>	<code>set += 2</code>	operator overloading
<code>map.get("key")</code>	<code>map["key"]</code>	convention for <code>get</code> method
<code>file.use({ it -> it.read() })</code>	<code>file.use { it.read() }</code>	lambda outside of parenthesis
<code>sb.append("yes")</code> <code>sb.append("no")</code>	<code>with (sb) { append("yes") append("no") }</code>	lambda with receiver

In this chapter, we'll take a step beyond clean APIs and look at Kotlin's support for constructing DSLs. Kotlin's DSLs build upon the clean syntax features and extend them with the possibility to create *structure* out of multiple method calls. As the result, DSLs can be even more expressive and pleasant to work with than APIs constructed out of individual method calls.

Just like all other features of the language, Kotlin DSLs are *fully statically typed*. This means that all of the advantages of static typing, such as compile-time error detection and

better IDE support, remain in effect when you start using DSL patterns for your APIs.

As a quick taste, here's a couple of examples showing what Kotlin DSLs can do. This expression goes back in time and returns the previous day (all right, just the previous date):

```
val yesterday = 1.days.ago
```

And this function generates an HTML table:

```
fun createSimpleTable() = createHTML().  
    table {  
        tr {  
            td { +"cell" }  
        }  
    }
```

Over the course of the chapter, you'll learn how these examples are constructed. But before we begin with a detailed discussion, let's look at what DSLs are as a general concept.

11.1.1 The concept of domain-specific languages

The general idea of a domain-specific language has existed for almost as long as the idea of a programming language as such. We make a distinction between a *general-purpose programming language*, with a set of capabilities complete enough to solve essentially any problem that can be solved with a computer, and a *domain-specific language*, which focuses on a specific task, or *domain*, and forgoes the functionality which is irrelevant for that domain.

The most common domain-specific languages that you're no doubt familiar with are SQL and regular expressions. They are great for solving the specific tasks of manipulating databases and text strings, respectively, but you can't use them to develop your entire application. (At least we hope so. The idea of an entire application built in the regular expression language makes us shudder.)

Note how these languages are able to effectively accomplish their goal by reducing the set of functionality they offer. When you need to execute an SQL statement, you don't start with declaring a class or a function. Instead, the very first keyword in every SQL statement indicates the type of operation you need to perform, and each type of operation has its own distinct syntax and set of keywords specific for the task at hand. With the regular expression language, there's even less syntax: the program directly describes the text to be matched, using very compact punctuation syntax to specify how the text can vary. Through such a compact syntax, a DSL can express a domain-specific operation much more concisely than an equivalent piece of code in a general-purpose language.

Another important point here is that DSLs tend to be *declarative*, as opposed to general-purpose languages, most of which are *imperative*. Whereas an imperative language describes the exact sequence of steps required to perform an operation, a declarative language describes the desired result and leaves the execution details to the engine which interprets it. This often makes the execution more efficient, because the necessary optimizations are implemented only once in the execution engine, whereas an imperative approach would require every implementation of the operation to be optimized independently.

As a counterweight to all of those benefits, DSLs of this type have one disadvantage: it can be hard to combine them with a host application in a general-purpose language. They have their own syntax which can't be directly embedded into programs in a different language. Therefore, in order to invoke a program written in a DSL, you need to either store it in a separate file, or embed it into a string literal. That makes it non-trivial to validate the correct interaction of the DSL with the host language at compile time, to debug the DSL program, and to provide IDE code assistance when writing it. Also, the separate syntax requires separate learning, and often makes code harder to read.

To solve that issue while preserving most of the other benefits of DSLs, the concept of *internal DSLs* recently gained popularity. Let's see what this is about.

11.1.2 Internal DSLs

As opposed to *external DSLs*, which have their own independent syntax, *internal DSLs* are part of programs written in a general-purpose language, using exactly the same syntax. In effect, an internal DSL is not a fully separate language, but rather a particular way of using the main language, while retaining the key advantages of DSLs with an independent syntax.

To compare the two approaches, let's see how the same task can be accomplished with an external and an internal DSL. Imagine that we have two database tables, `Customer` and `Country`, and each `Customer` entry has a reference to the country the customer lives in. The task is to query the database and find the country where the majority of customers live. The external DSL we're going to use is SQL, and the internal one is provided by the Exposed framework¹⁹, which is a Kotlin framework for database access.

Footnote 19 <https://github.com/JetBrains/Exposed>

Here's how you do this with SQL:

```
SELECT Country.name, COUNT(Customer.id)
FROM Country
JOIN Customer
ON Country.id = Customer.country_id
```

```
GROUP BY Country.name
ORDER BY COUNT(Customer.id) DESC
LIMIT 1
```

Writing the code in SQL directly might not be very convenient: you have to provide a means for interaction between your main application language (Kotlin in our case) and the query language. Usually, the best you can do is put SQL into a string literal, and hope that your IDE will help you write and verify it.

As a comparison, here's the same query built with Kotlin and Exposed:

```
(Country join Customer)
    .slice(Country.name, Count(Customer.id))
    .selectAll()
    .groupBy(Country.name)
    .orderBy(Count(Customer.id), isAsc = false)
    .limit(1)
```

You can see the similarity between two versions. In fact, executing the second version generates and runs exactly the same SQL query as the one we wrote manually. But the second version is regular Kotlin code, and `selectAll`, `groupBy`, `orderBy` and others are regular Kotlin methods. Moreover, you don't need to spend any effort on converting data from SQL query result sets to Kotlin objects - the query execution results are delivered directly as native Kotlin objects.

Thus it can be called internal DSL - the code intended to accomplish a specific task (building SQL queries) is implemented as a library in a general purpose language (Kotlin).

11.1.3 Structure of DSLs

Generally speaking, there is no well-defined boundary between a DSL and a regular API; often the criterion is as subjective as "I know it's a DSL when I see it". DSLs often rely on language features that are broadly used in other contexts too, such as infix calls and operator overloading. However, there is one trait that comes up often in DSLs and usually doesn't exist in other APIs: namely, *structure*, or *grammar*.

A typical library consists of many methods, and the client uses the library by calling the methods one by one. There is no inherent structure in the sequence of calls, and no context is maintained between one call and the next. Such an API is sometimes called a *command-query API*. As a contrast, the method calls in a DSL exist in a larger structure, defined by the *grammar* of the domain-specific language. In a Kotlin DSL, structure is most commonly created through the nesting of lambdas, or through chained method calls. You can clearly see this in the SQL example above: executing a query requires a combination of method calls, describing the different aspects of the required result set, and the combined query is much easier to read than a single method call taking all of the parameters that we're passing to the query.

This grammar is what allows us to call an internal DSL "a language". In a natural language such as English, sentences are constructed out of words, and the rules of grammar govern how those words can be combined with one another. Similarly, in a DSL, a single operation can be composed out of multiple method calls, and the type checker ensures that the calls are combined in a meaningful way. In effect, the method names usually act as verbs (`groupBy`, `orderBy`), and their arguments fulfill the role of nouns (`Country.name`).

One benefit of the DSL structure is that it allows you to reuse the same context between multiple method calls, rather than repeating it in every call. This is illustrated by the following example, showing the Kotlin DSL for describing dependencies in Gradle build scripts ²⁰:

Footnote 20 <https://github.com/gradle/gradle-script-kotlin>

```
dependencies
{
    compile("junit:junit:4.11")
    compile("com.google.inject:guice:4.1.0")
}
```

① Structure through lambda nesting

To contrast, here's the same operation performed through a regular command-query API. Note that there's much more repetition in the code:

```
project.dependencies.add("compile", "junit:junit")
project.dependencies.add("compile", "com.google.inject:guice:4.1.0")
```

Chained method calls are another way to create structure in DSLs. For example, they are commonly used in test frameworks, to split an assertion into multiple method calls. Such assertions can be much easier to read, especially if you can apply the infix call syntax. The following example comes from `kotlintest` ²¹, a third-party test framework for Kotlin:

Footnote 21 <https://github.com/kotlintest/kotlintest>

```
str should startWith("kot")
```

① Structure through chained method calls

Note how the same example expressed through regular JUnit APIs is more noisy and not as readable:

```
assertTrue(str.startsWith("kot"))
```

Now let's look at an example of an internal DSL in more detail.

11.1.4 Building HTML with an internal DSL

One of the teasers in the beginning of this chapter was a DSL for building HTML pages, and now we can discuss it in a bit more detail. The API we use here comes from the `kotlinx.html` library ²².

Footnote 22 <https://github.com/Kotlin/kotlinx.html>

Here's a small snippet that creates a table with a single cell:

```
fun createSimpleTable() = createHTML().
    table {
        tr {
            td { +"cell" }
        }
    }
```

It's rather clear what HTML corresponds to the structure above:

```
<table>
  <tr>
    <td>cell</td>
  </tr>
</table>
```

The `createSimpleTable` function returns a string containing this HTML fragment.

So why would you want to build this HTML with Kotlin code, rather than simply writing it as text? First, the Kotlin version is type-safe: you can use the `td` tag only inside `tr`, otherwise this code won't compile. What's more important is that it is regular code, and you can use any language construct in it. That means you can generate table cells dynamically (for instance, corresponding to elements in a map) right in the same place when you define a table:

```
fun createAnotherTable() = createHTML().table
{ val numbers = mapOf(1 to "one", 2 to
  "two") for ((num, string) in numbers) {
    tr {
        td { +"$num" }
        td { +string }
    }
  }
}
```

The generated HTML contains the desired data:

```
<table>
  <tr>
```

```
<td>1</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
</table>
```

HTML is a canonical example of a markup language, which makes it perfect for illustrating the concept, but you can use the same approach for any languages with a similar structure, such as XML. We're soon going to discuss how exactly such code works in Kotlin.

Now that we know what a DSL is and why we may want to build one, let's see how Kotlin helps us do that. First, we'll take a more in-depth look at *lambdas with receiver* - the key feature that helps establish the grammar of DSLs.

11.2 Building structured APIs: Lambdas with receiver in DSLs

Lambdas with receiver are a powerful Kotlin feature that allows to build API with a structure. As we already discussed, having structure is one of the key traits distinguishing DSLs from regular APIs. Let's examine this feature in detail and look at some DSLs that use it.

11.2.1 Lambdas with receiver and extension function types

We've had a brief encounter with the idea of lambdas with receiver in section 5.5, where we introduced the `buildString`, `with` and `apply` standard library functions. Now let's look at how they are implemented, using the `buildString` function as the example. The function allows us to construct a string from several pieces of content added to an intermediate `StringBuilder`.

To begin our discussion, let's define the `buildString` function so that it takes a regular lambda as a parameter. You already saw how to do this in chapter 8, so this should be familiar material:

```
fun buildString(
    builderAction: (StringBuilder) -> Unit
): String {
    val sb = StringBuilder()

    builderAction(sb)
    return sb.toString()
}

>>> val s = buildString {
...     it.append("Hello, ")
...     it.append("World!")
... }
>>> println(s)
Hello, World!
```

1

2

3

- 1 Declares a parameter of a function type
- 2 Passes a `StringBuilder` as an argument to the lambda
- 3 Uses 'it' to refer to the `StringBuilder` instance

This code is easy to understand, but it looks less easy to use than we'd prefer. Note that you have to use `it` inside the body of the lambda to refer to the `StringBuilder` instance (you could define your own parameter name instead of `it`, but it still has to be explicit). As the main purpose of the lambda is to fill the `StringBuilder` with text, you want to get rid of the repeated `it.` prefixes and invoke the `StringBuilder` methods directly, replacing `it.append` with simply `append`.

In order to achieve that, you need to convert the lambda into a *lambda with receiver*. In effect, you can give one of the parameters of the lambda a special status, allowing to refer to its members directly without any qualifier. Here's how you do that:

```
fun buildString(  
    builderAction: StringBuilder.() -> Unit  
) : String {  
    val sb = StringBuilder()  
    sb.builderAction()  
    return sb.toString()  
}  
  
>>> val s = buildString {  
...     this.append("Hello, ")  
...     append("World!")  
... }  
>>> println(s)  
Hello, World!
```

- 1 Declares a parameter of a function type with receiver
- 2 Passes a `StringBuilder` as a receiver to the lambda
- 3 The 'this' keyword refers to the `StringBuilder` instance
- 4 Alternatively, you can omit 'this' and refer to `StringBuilder` implicitly

Please pay attention to the differences between the two examples. First, consider how the way you use `buildString` improved. Now you pass a lambda with receiver as an argument, so you can get rid of `it` inside the body of the lambda. You replace the calls to `it.append()` with simply `append()`. The full form is `this.append()`, but as with regular methods inside a class, you typically omit `this` unless it's required for disambiguation.

Next, let's discuss how the declaration of the `buildString` function has changed. Now you use a so-called *extension function type* instead of a regular function type to

declare the lambda parameter. When you declare an extension function type, you effectively pull one of the function type parameters out of the parentheses and put it in front, separated from the rest of types with a dot. In the previous example, you replaced `(StringBuilder) -> Unit` with `StringBuilder.() -> Unit`. This special type is called the *receiver type*, and the value of that type passed to the lambda becomes the *receiver object*.

The following figure shows a more complex extension function type declaration:

receiver type parameter types return type

`String.(Int, Int) -> Unit`

Figure 11.1 An extension function type with receiver type 'String' and two parameters of type 'Int', returning 'Unit'

Why *extension* function type? The idea of accessing members of an external type without explicit qualifier might remind you of extension functions, which allow you to define your own methods for classes defined elsewhere in the code. Both extension functions and lambdas with receiver have a *receiver object*, which has to be provided when the function is called and is available inside its body. In effect, an extension function type describes a block of code that can be called as an extension function.

The way you invoke the variable also changes when you convert it from a regular function type to an extension function type. Instead of passing the object as a parameter, you invoke the lambda variable as if it was an extension function. When you had a regular lambda, you passed a `StringBuilder` instance as an argument to it using the following syntax: `builderAction(sb)`. When you change it to a lambda with receiver, the code becomes `sb.builderAction()`. To reiterate, `builderAction` here is not a method declared on the `StringBuilder` class; it's a parameter of a function type which you call using the same syntax as you use for calling extension functions.

The following picture shows the correspondence between an argument and a parameter of the `buildString` function. Also it illustrates the actual receiver the lambda body will be called on.

```
buildString { this.append("!") }
```

```
fun buildString(builderAction: StringBuilder.() -> Unit): String {  
    val sb = StringBuilder()  
    sb.builderAction()  
    ...  
}
```

Figure 11.2 The argument of the `buildString` function (lambda with receiver) corresponds to the parameter of extension function type (`builderAction`). The actual receiver (`sb`) becomes implicit receiver (`this`) when the lambda body is invoked.

You can also declare a variable of an extension function type, as shown in the following example. Once you do that, you can either invoke it as an extension function or pass it as an argument to a function that expects a lambda with receiver:

```
val appendExcl : StringBuilder.() -> Unit =  
    { this.append("!") }  
  
>>> val stringBuilder = StringBuilder("Hi")  
>>> stringBuilder.appendExcl()  
>>> println(stringBuilder)  
Hi!  
  
>>> println(buildString(appendExcl))  
!
```

- ❶ `appendExcl` is a value of extension function type
- ❷ You can call `appendExcl` as extension function
- ❸ Also, you can pass `appendExcl` as an argument

Note that a lambda with receiver looks exactly the same as a regular lambda in the source code. To see whether a lambda has a receiver, you need to look at the function to which the lambda is passed, and its signature will tell you whether the lambda has a receiver, and if it does, what its type is. For example, you can look at the declaration of `buildString`, see that it takes a lambda of type `StringBuilder.() -> Unit`, and conclude from this that in the body of the lambda you can invoke `StringBuilder` methods without a qualifier.

The actual implementation of `buildString` in the standard library is shorter than the example we showed earlier. Instead of calling `builderAction` explicitly, we pass it as a parameter to the `apply` function (which we already saw in section 5.5). This allows us to collapse the function into a single line:

```
fun buildString(builderAction: StringBuilder.() -> Unit): String =  
    StringBuilder().apply(builderAction).toString()
```

The `apply` function effectively takes the object on which it was called (in this case, it's a new `StringBuilder` instance) and passes it as an implicit receiver to the lambda parameter (`builderAction` in the example). We've also come across another useful library function, `with`, before. Let's now study their implementations:

```

inline fun <T> T.apply(block: T.() -> Unit): T
    { block()
      return this
    }

inline fun <T, R> with(receiver: T, block: T.() -> R): R =
    receiver.block()

```

- ❶ An equivalent to 'this.block()'; invokes the lambda with the receiver of 'apply' as the receiver object
- ❷ Returns the receiver
- ❸ Returns the result of calling the lambda

Basically, all they do is invoke the argument of an extension function type on the provided receiver. The `apply` function is declared as an extension to that receiver, while the `with` function takes it as a first argument. Also, the `apply` function returns the receiver itself, while the `with` function returns the result of calling the lambda.

If you don't care about the result, these functions are clearly interchangeable:

```

>>> val map = mutableMapOf(1 to "one")
>>> map.apply { this[2] = "two" }
>>> with (map) { this[3] = "three" }
>>> println(map)
{1=one, 2=two, 3=three}

```

The `with` and `apply` functions are often used in Kotlin, and we hope that you've already appreciated their conciseness in your own code.

We recalled the concept of lambdas with receiver, and talked about the extension function types. Now it's time to see how these concepts are used in the DSL context.

11.2.2 Using lambdas with receiver in HTML builders

A Kotlin DSL for HTML is usually called a HTML builder, and it represents a more general concept of *type-safe builders*. Initially the concept of builders gained popularity in the Groovy community²³. Builders provide a way to create an object hierarchy in a declarative way, which is very convenient for generating XML, or laying out UI components.

Footnote 23 http://www.groovy-lang.org/dsls.html#_builders

Kotlin uses the same idea, but in Kotlin builders are type-safe. That makes them more convenient to use, safe, and in a sense more attractive than Groovy's dynamic builders.

Let's discuss in detail how HTML builders work in Kotlin.

```

fun createSimpleTable() = createHTML().
    table {

```

```
tr {  
    td { +"cell" }  
}
```

This is regular Kotlin code, not a special template language or anything like that: `table`, `tr` and `td` are just functions. Each of them is a higher-order function, taking a lambda with receiver as a parameter.

The remarkable thing here is that those lambdas *change the name resolution rules*. Inside the lambda passed to the `table` function, you can use the `tr` function to create the `<tr>` HTML tag. Outside of that lambda, the `tr` function would be unresolved. In the same way, the `td` function is only accessible inside `tr`. (Note how the design of the API forces us to follow the grammar of the HTML language.)

The name resolution context in each block is defined by the receiver type of each lambda. The lambda passed to `table` has a receiver of a special type `TABLE`, which defines the `tr` method. Similarly, the `tr` function expects an extension lambda to `TR`.

The following code is a greatly simplified view of the declarations of these classes and methods:

```
open class Tag  
  
class TABLE : Tag {  
    fun tr(init : TR.() -> Unit)  
}  
class TR : Tag {  
    fun td(init : TD.() -> Unit)  
}  
class TD : Tag
```

- ❶ `tr` function expects a lambda with receiver of type `TR`
- ❷ `td` function expects a lambda with receiver of type `TD`

The classes `TABLE`, `TR` and `TD` are utility classes that shouldn't appear explicitly in the code, and that's why they are named in capital letters. They all extend the `Tag` superclass. Each class defines methods for creating tags allowed inside it: the `TABLE` class defines the `tr` method among others, while the `TR` class defines the `td` method.

Note the types of the `init` parameters of the `tr` and `td` functions. Those are extension function types `TR.() -> Unit` and `TD.() -> Unit`. They determine the types of receivers in the argument lambdas: `TR` and `TD` accordingly.

To make it clearer what happens here, we can rewrite the example making all receivers explicit. As a reminder, you can access the receiver of the lambda that is the argument of the `foo` function as `this@foo`.

```

fun createSimpleTable() = createHTML().
    table {
        (this@table).tr
            { (this@tr).td
                {
                    +"cell"
                }
            }
    }

```

①
①
②

- ① `this@table` has type `TABLE`
- ② `this@tr` has type `TR`
- ③ implicit receiver `this@td` of type `TD` is available here

If you tried to use regular lambdas instead of lambdas with receivers for builders, the syntax would become as unreadable as in the example above: you'd have to use the `it` reference to invoke the tag creation methods or assign a new parameter name for every lambda. Being able to make the receiver implicit and hide `this` reference makes the syntax of builders really nice and similar to the original HTML.

Note that if one lambda with receiver is placed inside the other one, as in this example, the receiver defined in the outer lambda remains available in the nested lambda. For instance, in the lambda that is the argument of the `td` function all three receivers (`this@table`, `this@tr`, `this@td`) are available ²⁴.

Footnote 24 Kotlin 1.1 will provide tools to constrain the availability of outer receivers in lambdas.

We've explained how the nice syntax of HTML builders is based on the concept of lambdas with receivers. Now let's discuss how the desired HTML is generated.

The previous example uses methods defined in the `kotlinx.html` library. For the discussion here, we'll use a much simpler version: we'll extend the declarations of `TABLE`, `TR` and `TD` tags shown above and add support for generating the resulting HTML. As the entry point for our simplified version we'll have a top-level function `table` that creates a fragment of HTML with `<table>` as a top tag:

```

fun createTable() =
    table {
        tr {
            td {
            }
        }
    }

>>> println(createTable())
<table><tr><td></td></tr></table>

```

The `table` function just creates a new instance of the `TABLE` tag, initializes it (calls

init on it) and returns it:

```
fun table(init: TABLE.() -> Unit) = TABLE().apply(init)
```

In `createTable` above the lambda passed as an argument to the `table` function contains the invocation of the `tr` function. The call can be rewritten to make everything as explicit as possible: `table(init = { this.tr { ... } })`. The `tr` function will be called on the created `TABLE` instance, as if you had written `TABLE().tr { ... }`.

In our toy example `<table>` is a top-level tag, and other tags are nested into it. Each tag stores a list references to its children. Therefore, the `tr` function should not only initialize the new instance of the `TR` tag but also add it to the list of children of the outer tag:

```
fun tr(init: TR.() -> Unit)
{
    val tr = TR()
    tr.init()
    children.add(tr)
}
```

This logic of initializing a given tag and adding it to the children of the outer tag is common for all tags, so we can extract it as a `doInit` member of the `Tag` superclass. The `doInit` function is responsible for two things: storing the reference to the child tag and calling the lambda passed as an argument. The different tags then just call it: for instance, the `tr` function creates a new instance of the `TR` class, then passes it to the `doInit` function along with the `init` lambda argument: `doInit(TR(), init)`.

The following code is our full example that shows how the desired HTML is generated:

```
open class Tag(val name: String) {
    private val children = mutableListOf<Tag>()
    protected fun <T : Tag> doInit(child: T, init: T.() -> Unit)
    {
        child.init()
        children.add(child)
    }
    override fun toString() =
        "<$name>${children.joinToString("")}</$name>"
}

fun table(init: TABLE.() -> Unit) = TABLE().apply(init)

class TABLE : Tag("table") {
    fun tr(init: TR.() -> Unit) = doInit(TR(), init)
}

class TR : Tag("tr") {
```

```

    fun td(init: TD.() -> Unit) = doInit(TD(), init)
}
class TD : Tag("td")

fun createTable() =
    table {
        tr {
            td {
            }
        }
    }
}
>>> println(createTable())
<table><tr><td></td></tr></table>

```

6

- 1 Stores all nested tags
- 2 Initializes child tag
- 3 Stores a reference to it
- 4 Returns the resulting HTML as String
- 5 Creates, initializes and adds to children of TABLE a new instance of TR tag
- 6 Adds a new instance of TD tag to the children of TR

Every tag stores a list of nested tags and renders itself accordingly: it renders its name and all the nested tags recursively. Text inside tags and tag attributes are not supported here; for the full implementation, you can browse the aforementioned `kotlinx.html` library.

Note that tag creation functions add the corresponding tag to the parent's list of children on their own. That lets you generate tags dynamically:

```

fun createAnotherTable() = table
{ for (i in 1..2) {
    tr {
        td {
        }
    }
}
}
>>> println(createAnotherTable())
<table><tr><td></td></tr><tr><td></td></tr></table>

```

1

- 1 tr function every time creates a new TR tag and adds it to the children of TABLE

As you've seen, lambdas with receiver are a great tool for building DSLs. By allowing to change the name resolution context inside a code block, they let you create *structure* in your API, which is one of the key traits that distinguish DSLs from flat sequences of method calls. Now let's discuss the benefits you get from integrating this DSL into a statically-typed programming language.

11.2.3 Kotlin builders: Enabling abstraction and reuse

When you write regular code in your program, you have a lot of tools to avoid duplication and to make the code look nicer. Mainly, you can extract repetitive code into new functions and give them self-explanatory names. That might not be so easy or even possible with SQL or HTML. However, using internal DSLs in Kotlin to accomplish the same tasks gives you a way to abstract repeated chunks of code into new methods and reuse them.

Let's look at an example from the Bootstrap²⁵ library, the popular HTML, CSS, and JS framework for developing responsive, mobile first projects on the web. We'll consider one specific example: adding dropdown lists to your application. To add such a list directly into an HTML page, you can just copy the necessary snippet and paste it in the required place, under the button or another element that shows this list. You only need to add the necessary references and their titles for the dropdown menu. The initial HTML code (a bit simplified to avoid too many style attributes) looks like this:

Footnote 25 <http://getbootstrap.com>

```
<div class="dropdown">
  <button class="btn dropdown-toggle">
    Dropdown
    <span class="caret"></span>
  </button>
  <ul class="dropdown-menu">
    <li><a href="#">Action</a></li>
    <li><a href="#">Another action</a></li>
    <li role="separator" class="divider"></li>
    <li class="dropdown-header">Header</li>
    <li><a href="#">Separated link</a></li>
  </ul>
</div>
```

In Kotlin with `kotlinx.html` you can use the functions `div`, `button`, `ul`, `li` etc. to replicate the same structure:

```
fun buildDropdown() = createHTML().div(classes = "dropdown")
{ button(classes = "btn dropdown-toggle") {
    +"Dropdown"
    span(classes = "caret")
  }
  ul(classes = "dropdown-menu")
  { li { a("#")
    { +"Action" } }
    li { a("#") { +"Another action" } }
    li { role = "separator"; classes = setOf("divider") }
    li { classes = setOf("dropdown-header"); +"Header" }
    li { a("#") { +"Separated link" } }
  }
}
```

However, you can do better. Because `div`, `button` etc. are regular functions, you can extract the repetitive logic into separate functions improving the readability of the code.

The result may look like this:

```
fun dropdownExample() = createHTML().dropdown
    { dropdownButton { +"Dropdown" }
      dropdownMenu
        { item("#",
            "Action")
          item("#", "Another action")
          divider()
          dropdownHeader("Header")
          item("#", "Separated link")
        }
    }
```

Now the unnecessary details are hidden and the code looks much nicer.

Let's discuss how this trick is implemented, starting with the function `item`. This function has two parameters: the reference and the name of the corresponding menu item. The code of this function should add a new list item: `li { a(href) { +name } }`. The only question that remains is: how can we call `li` in the body of this function? Should it be an extension? We can indeed make it an extension to the `UL` class, because the `li` function is itself an extension to `UL`. In the example above `item` is called on an implicit `this` of type `UL`.

```
fun UL.item(href: String, name: String) = li { a(href) { +name } }
```

After you define the `item` function, you can call it inside any `UL` tag, and it will add an instance of a `LI` tag. Having extracted `item`, you can change the original version of the example to the version below, without changing the generated HTML code:

```
ul {
    classes = setOf("dropdown-menu")
    item("#", "Action")
    item("#", "Another action")
    li { role = "separator"; classes = setOf("divider") }
    li { classes = setOf("dropdown-header"); +"Header" }
    item("#", "Separated link")
}
```

❶ you can use 'item' function instead of 'li' here

The other extension functions defined on `UL` are added in a similar way, allowing you to replace the remaining `li` tags:

```
fun UL.divider() = li { role = "separator"; classes = setOf("divider") }

fun UL.dropdownHeader(text: String) =
    li { classes = setOf("dropdown-header"); +text }
```

Now let's discuss how the `dropdownMenu` function is implemented. It creates a `ul` tag with the specified class `dropdown-menu` and takes a lambda with receiver as a parameter used to fill the tag with contents:

```
dropdownMenu
{ item("#",
  "Action")
  ...
}
```

As you replace the `ul { ... }` block with the invocation of `dropdownMenu { ... }`, the receiver inside the lambda can stay the same. The `dropdownMenu` function can take an extension lambda to `UL` as a parameter, which allows you to call functions such as `UL.item` as you did before. Here's how the function is declared:

```
fun DIV.dropdownMenu(block: UL.() -> Unit) = ul("dropdown-menu", block)
```

The function `dropdownButton` is implemented in a similar way and we omit it (the full implementation can be found in the samples for the `kotlinx.html` library).

At last, let's look at the `dropdown` function. This one is less trivial, because it can be called on any tag: the dropdown menu can be put in any place in the code.

```
fun
    StringBuilder.dropdown
    n( block: DIV.() ->
      Unit
```

We provide a simplified version, one you can use if you want to print your HTML to a string. The full implementation in `kotlinx.html` uses an abstract class `TagConsumer` as the receiver, and thus supports different destinations for the resulting HTML.

The discussed example illustrates how the means of abstraction and reuse can help improve the code and make it easier to understand. Now let's look at one more tool that can help us support more flexible structures in our DSLs - the `invoke` convention.

11.3 More flexible block nesting with the 'invoke' convention

The `invoke` convention allows you to call objects of custom types as functions. We've already seen that objects of function types can be called as functions, and with the `invoke` convention you can define your own objects that support the same syntax.

Note that this isn't a feature for everyday use, because it allows to define hard-to-understand functions, such as the ability to write `1()`. However, it is sometimes very useful in DSLs. We're going to see why, but first let's discuss the convention itself.

11.3.1 The 'invoke' convention: Objects callable as functions

In chapter 7, we discussed in detail Kotlin's concept of *conventions* - specially named functions which can be called not through the regular method call syntax but through different, more concise notations. As a reminder, one of the conventions that we discussed was the `get` convention, which allows you to access an object using the index operator. For a variable `foo` of type `Foo`, a call to `foo[bar]` will be translated into `foo.get(bar)`, provided that the corresponding `get` function is defined as a method in the `Foo` class or as an extension function to `Foo`.

In effect, the `invoke` convention does the same thing, except that brackets are replaced with parentheses. A class for which the `invoke` method with `operator` modifier is defined can be called as a function. Below you can see an example of how this works.

```
class Greeter(val greeting: String)
{ operator fun invoke(name: String)
{
    println("$greeting, $name!")
}
}

>>> val bavarianGreeter = Greeter("Servus")
>>> bavarianGreeter("Dmitry")
Servus, Dmitry!
```

- 1 Define the 'invoke' method on Greeter
- 2 Call 'Greeter' instance as a function

In the code, we've defined the `invoke` method in `Greeter`, which allows us to call instances of `Greeter` as if they were functions. Under the hood, the expression `bavarianGreeter("Dmitry")` is compiled to a method call `bavarianGreeter.invoke("Dmitry")`. There's no mystery here, it works like a regular convention: it provides a way to replace a verbose expression with a more concise and clear one.

The `invoke` method is not restricted to any specific signature. You can define it with any number of parameters and with any return type, or even define multiple overloads of `invoke` with different parameter types. When you call the instance of the class as a function, you'll be able to use all of those signatures for the call.

Now let's look at the practical situations where this convention is used, first in a regular programming context, and then in a DSL.

11.3.2 The 'invoke' convention and functional types

You may remember seeing the `invoke` name earlier in the book. In the section 8.1.2, we discussed that you can call a variable of a nullable function type as `lambda?.invoke()`, using the safe call syntax with the `invoke` method name.

Now that you know about the `invoke` convention, it should become clear to you that the way you normally invoke lambdas (by just putting parenthesis after it: `lambda()`) is nothing other than an application of this convention. Lambdas, unless inlined, are compiled into classes that implement functional interfaces (`Function1` and so on), and those interfaces define the `invoke` method with the corresponding number of parameters.

```
interface Function2<in P1, in P2, out R>
{ operator fun invoke(p1: P1, p2: P2):
  R
}
```

1

1 This interface denotes a function that takes exactly two arguments

When you invoke a lambda as a function, the operation gets translated into a call of the `invoke` method, thanks to the convention. Why might that be useful to know? It gives you a way to split the code of a complex lambda into multiple methods, while still allowing to use it together with functions that take parameters of a function type. In order to do so, you can define a class that extends a function type. You can specify the base interface either as an explicit `FunctionN` type or, as shown in the following example, using the shorthand syntax: `(P1, P2) -> R`. The example uses such a class to filter a list of issues by a complex condition:

```
data class Issue(
    val id: String, val project: String, val type: String,
    val priority: String, val description: String
)

class ImportantIssuesPredicate(val project: String)
    : (Issue) -> Boolean {
    1

    override fun invoke(issue: Issue): Boolean {
    2
        return issue.project == project && issue.isImportant()
    }

    private fun Issue.isImportant(): Boolean
    { return type == "Bug" &&
      (priority == "Major" || priority == "Critical")
    }
}

>>> val i1 = Issue("IDEA-154446", "IDEA", "Bug", "Major",
...               "Save settings failed")
>>> val i2 = Issue("KT-12183", "Kotlin", "Feature", "Normal",
...               "Intention: convert several calls on the same receiver to with/apply")
>>> val predicate = ImportantIssuesPredicate("IDEA")
```

```
>>> for (issue in listOf(i1, i2).filter(predicate)) {  
...     println(issue.id)  
... }  
IDEA-154446
```

3

- 1 Use the function type as a base class
- 2 Implement the `invoke` method
- 3 Pass the predicate to `filter()`

In this example, we decided that the logic of the predicate was too complicated to put it into a single lambda, and decided to split it into several methods to make the meaning of each check clear. Converting a lambda into an interface that implements a function type and overriding the `invoke` method is one possible way to perform such a refactoring. The advantage of this approach is that the scope of methods that we've extracted from the lambda body is as narrow as possible; they're only visible from the predicate class. This is valuable when there's a lot of logic both in the predicate class and in the surrounding code, and it's worthwhile to separate the different concerns cleanly.

Now let's go back to the topic of DSLs and see how the `invoke` convention helps us create a more flexible structure for our DSLs.

11.3.3 The 'invoke' convention in DSLs: Declaring dependencies in Gradle

Let's go back to our example of the Gradle DSL for configuring the dependencies of a module. Here's the code that we showed earlier:

```
dependencies  
{  
    compile("junit:junit:4.11")  
}
```

We often want to be able to support both the nested block structure, as shown above, and a flat call structure in the same API. In other words, we want to allow both of the following:

```
dependencies.compile("junit:junit:4.11")  
  
dependencies {  
    compile("junit:junit:4.11")  
}
```

With such a design, the users of the DSL can use the nested block structure when there are multiple items to configure, and the flat call structure to keep the code more concise when there is only one thing to configure.

The first case is just calling the `compile` method on the `dependencies` variable. We can express the second notation by defining the `invoke` method on `dependencies`, so

that it takes a lambda as a parameter. The full syntax of this call would be `dependencies.invoke({...})`.

The `dependencies` object is an instance of the `DependencyHandler` class, which defines both `compile` and `invoke` methods. The `invoke` method takes a lambda with receiver as a parameter, and the type of receiver of this method is again `DependencyHandler`. What happens inside the body of the lambda is already familiar to us: we have a `DependencyHandler` as a receiver and can call methods such as `compile()` directly on it. Here's a minimal example showing how that part of `DependencyHandler` is implemented:

```
class DependencyHandler {  
    fun compile(coordinate: String) ❶  
    { println("Added dependency on  
      $coordinate")  
    }  
  
    operator fun invoke(  
        body: DependencyHandler.() -> Unit) ❷  
    { body() ❸  
    }  
}  
  
>>> val dependencies = DependencyHandler()  
  
>>> dependencies.compile("org.jetbrains.kotlin:kotlin-stdlib:1.0.0")  
Added dependency on org.jetbrains.kotlin:kotlin-stdlib:1.0.0  
  
>>> dependencies {  
...     compile("org.jetbrains.kotlin:kotlin-reflect:1.0.0")  
>>> }  
Added dependency on org.jetbrains.kotlin:kotlin-reflect:1.0.0
```

- ❶ Defines a regular command API
- ❷ Defines 'invoke' to support the DSL API
- ❸ 'this' becomes a receiver of the body function: 'this.body()'

When you add the first dependency, you call the `compile` method directly. The second call is effectively translated to the following:

```
dependencies.invoke({ this.compile("org.jetbrains.kotlin:kotl  
    in-reflect:1.0.0")  
})
```

In other words, you're invoking `dependencies` as a function, and passing a lambda as a parameter. The type of the lambda parameter is a function type with receiver, and the receiver type is the same `DependencyHandler` type. The `invoke` method simply calls the lambda. Since it's a method of the `DependencyHandler` class, an instance of that class is

available as an implicit receiver, so you don't need to specify it explicitly when you call `body()`.

You see that one fairly small piece of code, the redefined `invoke` method, has significantly increased the flexibility of our DSL API. This pattern is very generic, and you can reuse it in your own DSLs with minimal modifications.

Now that we're familiar with two new features of Kotlin helping us build DSLs, lambdas with receiver and the `invoke` convention, let's look at how various previously discussed Kotlin features come in play in the DSL context.

11.4 Kotlin DSLs in practice

By now, you're familiar with all the Kotlin features that find their use in building DSLs. Some of them, such as extensions and infix functions, should be your old friends by now. Others, such as lambdas with receiver, have been first discussed in detail in this chapter. Let's now put all of this knowledge to use and investigate a series of practical DSL construction examples. We'll cover fairly diverse topics: starting with testing, to rich date literals, to database queries and Android UI construction.

11.4.1 Chaining infix calls: 'should' in test frameworks

As we mentioned previously, clean syntax is one of the key traits of an internal DSL, and it can be achieved by reducing the amount of punctuation in the code. Most internal DSLs boil down to sequences of method calls, so any features that allow to reduce syntactic noise in method calls find a lot of use there. In Kotlin, these features include the shorthand syntax for invoking lambdas, which we've already discussed in detail, as well as *infix function calls*. We've talked about infix calls already in section 3.4.3, so now we'll focus on their use in DSLs.

As an example, let's look at the DSL of `kotlintest`²⁶ (the testing library inspired by `Scalatest`), which we saw earlier in this chapter:

Footnote 26 <https://github.com/kotlintest/kotlintest>

```
s should startWith("kot")
```

This call will fail with an assertion if the value of the `s` variable does not start with "kot". The code reads almost like English: "the `s` string should start with this constant". To accomplish this, we declare the `should` function as infix:

```
infix fun <T> T.should(matcher: Matcher<T>) = matcher.test(this)
```

The `should` function expects an instance of `Matcher`, a generic interface for performing assertions on values. `startsWith` implements `Matcher` and checks whether a

string starts with the given substring:

```
interface Matcher<T>
    { fun test(value:
      T)
    }

class startWith(val prefix: String) : Matcher<String>
    { override fun test(value: String) {
      if (!value.startsWith(prefix))
        throw AssertionError("String $value does not start with $prefix")
      }
    }
}
```

Note that in regular code you would capitalize the name of the `startWith` class, but DSLs often require deviating from standard naming conventions. The example shows that applying infix calls in the DSL context is very simple and can nicely reduce the amount of noise in the code. With a bit more cunning, you can reduce the noise even further, and the `kotlintest` DSL does in fact support that:

```
"kotlin" should start with "kot"
```

At first glance it doesn't look like Kotlin. To understand how it works, let's convert the infix calls to regular ones:

```
"kotlin".should(start).with("kot")
```

This shows that the second DSL example was simply a sequence of two infix calls, and `start` was the argument of the first one. In fact, `start` refers to an object declaration, whereas `should` and `with` are functions called using the infix call notation.

The `should` function has a special overload that takes the `start` object as a parameter and returns the intermediate wrapper on which you can then call the `with` method:

```
object start

infix fun String.should(x: start): StartWrapper = StartWrapper(this)

class StartWrapper(val value: String) {
    infix fun with(prefix: String) =
        if (!value.startsWith(prefix))
            throw AssertionError(
                "String does not start with $prefix: $value")
}
```

Note that, outside of the DSL context, using an `object` as a parameter type rarely makes sense, because an `object` has only a single instance, and you can simply access that instance rather than pass it as a parameter. Here, it does make sense: the `object` is

used not to pass any data to the function, but as part of the grammar of the DSL. By passing `start` as a parameter, you can choose the right overload of `should`, and obtain a `StartWrapper` instance as the result. The `StartWrapper` class has the `with` member, taking as a parameter the actual value that we need to perform the assertion.

The library supports other matchers as well, and they all read as English:

```
"kotlin" should end with "in"
"kotlin" should have substring "otl"
```

To support this, more overloads of the `should` function are declared that take `object` instances like `end` and `have` and return `EndWrapper` and `HaveWrapper` instances accordingly.

This was a relatively tricky example of DSL construction, but the result is so nice that it's worth figuring out how this pattern works. The combination of infix calls and `object` instances lets you construct fairly complex grammars for your DSLs, and to use those DSLs with a very clean syntax. And of course, the DSL remains fully statically typed. An incorrect combination of functions and objects simply won't compile.

11.4.2 Defining extensions on primitive types: Date handling

Now let's take a look at the remaining teaser from the beginning of this chapter:

```
val yesterday = 1.days.ago
val tomorrow = 1.days.fromNow
```

To implement this DSL using the Java 8 `java.time` API and Kotlin, you need just a few lines of code. Here's the relevant part of the implementation:

```
val Int.days: Period
    get() = Period.ofDays(this) ❶

val Period.ago: LocalDate
    get() = LocalDate.now() - this ❷

val Period.fromNow: LocalDate
    get() = LocalDate.now() + this ❸

>>> println(1.days.ago)
2016-08-16
>>> println(1.days.fromNow)
2016-08-18
```

- ❶ 'this' refers to the value of the numeric constant
- ❷ Invoke 'LocalDate.minus' using operator syntax
- ❸ Invoke 'LocalDate.plus' using operator syntax

Here `days` is an extension property on the `Int` type. Kotlin has no restrictions on the types that can be used as receivers for extension functions: you can easily define extensions on primitive types and invoke them on constants. The `days` property returns a value of type `Period`, which is the JDK 8 type representing an interval between two dates.

To complete our sentence and support the `ago` word, we need to define another extension property, this time on the `Period` class. The type of that property will be a `LocalDate`, representing simply a date. Note that the use of the `-` (minus) operator in the `ago` property implementation does not rely on any Kotlin-defined extensions. The `LocalDate` JDK class defines a method named `minus` with a single parameter, which matches the Kotlin convention for the `-` operator, so Kotlin maps the operator to that method automatically.

You can find the full implementation of the library, supporting all time units and not just days, in the `kxdate` library on GitHub ²⁷.

Footnote 27 <https://github.com/yole/kxdate>

Now that we understand how this very simple DSL works, let's move on to something more challenging and dive into the implementation of the database query DSL.

11.4.3 Member extension functions: Internal DSL for SQL

We've already seen the significant role played by extension functions in DSL design. Now it's time to study a further trick that we only briefly mentioned before: declaring extension functions and properties inside a class. Such a function or property is both a member of its containing class and an extension to some other type at the same time. We call such functions and properties *member extensions*.

Let's look at a couple of examples making use of member extensions. They come from the internal DSL for SQL, the Exposed framework, mentioned above. Before we get to that, though, we need to discuss how Exposed allows you to define the database structure.

In order to work with SQL tables, the Exposed framework requires you to declare them as objects extending the `Table` class. Here is a declaration of a simple table `Country` with just two columns:

```
object Country : Table() {
    val id = integer("id").autoIncrement().primaryKey()
    val name = varchar("name", 50)
}
```

This declaration corresponds to a table in the database. In order to create this table,

you call the method `SchemaUtils.create(Country)`, and it generates the necessary SQL statement based on the declared table structure.

```
CREATE TABLE IF NOT EXISTS Country
( id INT AUTO_INCREMENT NOT
  NULL, name VARCHAR(50) NOT NULL,
  CONSTRAINT pk_Country PRIMARY KEY (id)
)
```

As with generating HTML, you can see how declarations in the original Kotlin code become parts of the generated SQL statement.

If you examine the types of the properties in the `Country` object, you'll see that they have `Column` type with the necessary type argument: `id` has the type `Column<Int>` while `name` has the type `Column<String>`.

The `Table` class in the Exposed framework defines all types of columns that you can declare for your table, including the ones we've used above:

```
class Table {
    fun integer(name: String): Column<Int>
    fun varchar(name: String, length: Int): Column<String>
    // ...
}
```

The `integer` and `varchar` methods create new columns for storing integers and strings accordingly.

Now let's discuss how we specify properties for the columns. This is when member extensions actually come into play:

```
val id = integer("id").autoIncrement().primaryKey()
```

The methods like `autoIncrement` or `primaryKey` are used to specify the properties of each column. Each method can be called on `Column` and returns the instance it was called on, allowing you to chain them. Here are the simplified declarations of these functions:

```
class Table {
    fun <T> Column<T>.primaryKey(): Column<T>
    fun Column<Int>.autoIncrement(): Column<Int>
    // ...
}
```

- ❶ sets this column as a primary key in the table
- ❷ only integer values can be auto incremented

These functions are members of the `Table` class, which means you can't use them outside of the scope of this class. Now you know why it makes sense to declare methods as member extensions: you constrain their applicability scope. You can't specify the properties of a column outside the context of a table: the necessary methods simply won't resolve.

Another great feature of extension functions that we're using here is the possibility to restrict the receiver type. While any column in a table can be its primary key, only numeric columns can be auto-incremented. You can express this in the API by declaring the `autoIncrement` method as an extension on `Column<Int>`. An attempt to mark a column of a different type as auto-increment will fail to compile.

What's more, when you mark a column as `primaryKey`, this information is stored in the table containing the column. Having this function declared as a member of `Table` allows you to store the information in the table instance directly.

NOTE

Member extensions are still members

Note that member extensions have a downside as well: specifically, the lack of extensibility. They belong to the class, so you can't define new member extensions on the side.

For example, imagine that you wanted to add support for a new database to `Exposed`, and that database supported some new column attributes. To achieve this goal, you would have to modify the definition of the `Table` class and add the member extension functions for new attributes there. You wouldn't be able to add the necessary declarations without touching the original class, as you can do with regular (non-member) extensions, because the extensions wouldn't have access to the `Table` instance where they could store the definitions.

Now let's look at another member extension function that can be found in a simple `SELECT` query. Imagine that you have declared two tables `Customer` and `Country`, and each `Customer` entry stores a reference to the country the customer is from. The following code prints the names of all customers living in the USA:

```
val result = (Country join Customer)
    .select { Country.name eq "USA" }
result.forEach { println(it[Customer.name]) }
```

1

1 corresponds to the SQL code: `WHERE Country.name = 'USA'`

The `select` method can be called on `Table` or on a join of two tables. Its argument is a lambda that specifies the condition for selecting the necessary data.

Where does the `eq` method come from? You can say now that it's an infix method

taking "USA" as an argument, and you can correctly guess that it's another member extension.

Here we again come across an extension method on `Column` that is also a member and thus can be used only in the appropriate context, for instance when specifying the condition of the `select` method. The simplified declarations of the `select` and `eq` methods are below:

```
fun Table.select(where: SqlExpressionBuilder.() -> Op<Boolean>) : Query

object SqlExpressionBuilder {
    infix fun<T> Column<T>.eq(t: T) : Op<Boolean>
    // ...
}
```

The `SqlExpressionBuilder` object defines many ways to express conditions: compare values, check for being not null, perform arithmetic operations etc. You never refer to it explicitly in the code, but you regularly call its methods when it's an implicit receiver. The `select` function takes a lambda with receiver as a parameter, and the `SqlExpressionBuilder` object is an implicit receiver in this lambda. That allows you to use in the body of the lambda all the possible extension methods defined in this object, such as `eq`.

We've seen two types of extensions on columns: the ones that should be used for declaring a `Table`, and the ones used to compare the values in a condition. Without member extensions, we would have to make all these methods extensions or members of `Column`, which would allow to use them in any context. The approach with member extensions gives us a way to control that.

NOTE

Our first encounter with Exposed framework: Delegated properties

In section 7.5.6 we also looked at some code working with Exposed while talking about using delegated properties in frameworks. Delegated properties often come up in DSLs, and the Exposed framework illustrates that well. We won't repeat the discussion of delegated properties here, since we've covered them in detail before. However, if you're eager to create a DSL for your own needs or just improve your API and make it cleaner, keep this feature in mind.

11.4.4 Anko: Creating Android UIs dynamically

While talking about lambdas with receiver, we mentioned that they are great for laying out UI components. Let's have a look at how the Anko²⁸ library can help build the UI of Android applications.

Footnote 28 <https://github.com/Kotlin/anko>

First, let's see how Anko wraps familiar Android APIs into a DSL-like structure. The following code snippet defines an alert dialog showing a somewhat bothersome message and two options: to proceed further or to stop the operation.

```
fun Activity.showAreYouSureAlert(process: () -> Unit)
{ alert(title = "Are you sure?",
    message = "Are you really sure?",
    { positiveButton("Yes") { process() }
    negativeButton("No") { cancel() }
    }
}
```

Can you spot three lambdas in this code? The first one is the third argument of the `alert` function. The other two lambdas are passed as arguments to `positiveButton` and `negativeButton`. The receiver of the first (outer) lambda has the type `AlertDialogBuilder`. The same pattern comes up again: the name of the `AlertDialogBuilder` class won't appear in the code directly, but you can access its members to add elements to the alert dialog.

The declarations of the members used in the example are shown below:

```
fun Context.alert(
    message: String,
    title: String,
    init: AlertDialogBuilder.() -> Unit
)

class AlertDialogBuilder {
    fun positiveButton(text: String, callback: DialogInterface.() -> Unit)
    fun negativeButton(text: String, callback: DialogInterface.() -> Unit)
    // ...
}
```

We add two buttons to the alert dialog. If the user clicks the "Yes" button the `process` action will be called. If the user isn't sure, the operation will be canceled. The `cancel` method is a member of the `DialogInterface` interface, so it's called on an implicit receiver of this lambda.

Now let's look at a more complex example where the Anko DSL acts as a complete replacement for a layout definition in XML. The example demonstrates how to declare a simple form with two editable fields: one for entering an email address, another for putting in a password. At the end a button with a click handler is added.

```
verticalLayout {
    val email = editText
    { hint = "Email"
    }
    val password = editText
    { hint = "Password"
    }
```

1

1

3

```

        transformationMethod = 4
            PasswordTransformationMethod.getInstance()
    }

    button("Log In") 5
        { onClick { 6
            login(email.text, password.text) 7
        }
    }
}

```

- 1** Declares an EditText view element and stores a reference to it
- 2** An implicit receiver in this lambda is a regular class from Android API: `android.widget.EditText`
- 3** It's a short way to call `EditText.setHint("Password")`
- 4** Calls `EditText.setTransformationMethod(...)`
- 5** Declares a new button...
- 6** ...and defines what should be done on click
- 7** references declared UI elements to access their data

Lambdas with receiver are a great tool providing a concise way to declare structured UI elements. Declaring them in code (compared to XML files) allows to extract repetitive logic and reuse it, as we've seen already in section 11.2.3. You can separate UI and business logic into different components, but everything will still be Kotlin code.

11.5 Summary

In this chapter you learned that:

- Internal DSLs are an API design pattern allowing to build more expressive APIs with structures composed of multiple method calls;
- Lambdas with receiver employ nesting structure to redefine how methods are resolved inside the lambda body;
- The type of a parameter taking a lambda with receiver is an extension function type, and the calling function provides a receiver instance when invoking the lambda;
- The benefit of using Kotlin internal DSLs rather than external template or markup languages is the ability to reuse code and create abstractions;
- Using specially named objects as parameters of infix calls allows to create DSLs which read exactly like English with no extra punctuation;
- Defining extensions on primitive types allows to create a readable syntax for various kinds of literals, such as dates;
- The `invoke` convention allows to call arbitrary objects as if they were functions;
- The `kotlinx.html` library provides an internal DSL for building HTML pages, which can be easily extended to support various front-end development frameworks;
- The `kotlintest` library provides an internal DSL supporting readable assertions in unit tests.

- The Exposed library provides an internal DSL for working with databases;
- The Anko library provides various tools for Android development, including an internal DSL for defining UI layouts;

Building Kotlin projects

This appendix covers:

- Building Kotlin code with Gradle, Maven and Ant
- Building Kotlin Android applications

A.1 Building Kotlin code with Gradle

The recommended build system for building Kotlin projects is Gradle. Gradle is the standard build system for Android projects, and it also supports all other kinds of projects where Kotlin can be used. Gradle has a very flexible project model and delivers great build performance thanks to its support for incremental builds, long-lived build processes (the Gradle daemon) and other advanced techniques.

The Gradle team is working on the support for writing Gradle build scripts in Kotlin, which will allow you to use the same language for writing your application and its build scripts. However, as of this writing, this work is still in progress, and you can find more information about it online ²⁹. In the book, we'll use the Groovy syntax for the Gradle build scripts.

Footnote 29 <https://github.com/gradle/gradle-script-kotlin>

The standard Gradle build script for building a Kotlin project looks like the following:

```
buildscript {  
    ext.kotlin_version = '1.0.4' 1  
  
    repositories  
    { mavenCentral  
      ()  
    }  
    dependencies {  
        classpath "org.jetbrains.kotlin:kotlin-gradle-plugin:$kotlin_version" 2  
    }  
}
```

```

    }
}

apply plugin: 'java'
apply plugin: 'kotlin' ❸

repositories
{
    mavenCentral
    ()
}

dependencies {
    compile "org.jetbrains.kotlin:kotlin-stdlib:$kotlin_version" ❹
}

```

- ❶ Specifies the version of Kotlin to use
- ❷ Adds a build script dependency on the Kotlin Gradle plugin
- ❸ Applies the Kotlin Gradle plugin
- ❹ Adds the dependency on the Kotlin standard library

The script will look for Kotlin source files in the following locations:

- 'src/main/java' and 'src/main/kotlin' for the production source files;
- 'src/test/java' and 'src/test/kotlin' for the test source files.

In other words, you have the choice between storing a mixture of Java and Kotlin source files in the same directory and storing the code in each language in separate directories. The former approach works well when you're introducing Kotlin into an existing Java project, because it involves less friction when converting Java files to Kotlin. The latter may be preferable for a new project, because it's somewhat cleaner.

If you're using Kotlin reflection, you need to add one more dependency: the Kotlin reflection library. In order to do so, add the following under the `dependencies` section of your Gradle build script:

```
compile "org.jetbrains.kotlin:kotlin-reflect:$kotlin_version"
```

A.1.1 Building Kotlin Android applications with Gradle

Android applications use a different build process compared to regular Java applications, so you need to use a different Gradle plugin to build them. Instead of `apply plugin: 'kotlin'`, add the following line to your build script:

```
apply plugin: 'kotlin-android'
```

The rest of the setup is the same as for non-Android applications.

If you prefer to store your Kotlin source code under Kotlin-specific directories such

as 'src/main/kotlin', you need to register them so that Android Studio recognizes them as source roots. You can do this using the following snippet:

```
android {  
    ...  
  
    sourceSets {  
        main.java.srcDirs += 'src/main/kotlin'  
    }  
}
```

A.1.2 Building projects that use annotation processing

Many Java frameworks, especially those used in Android development, rely on annotation processing to generate code at compile time. To use those frameworks with Kotlin, you need to enable Kotlin annotation processing in your build script. You can do this by adding the following line:

```
apply plugin: 'kotlin-kapt'
```

If you have an existing Java project that uses annotation processing and you're introducing Kotlin to it, you need to remove the existing configuration of the `apt` tool. The Kotlin annotation processing tool handles both Java and Kotlin classes, and having two separate annotation processing tools would be redundant.

To configure dependencies required for annotation processing, use the `kapt` scope:

```
dependencies {  
    compile 'com.google.dagger:dagger:2.4'  
    kapt 'com.google.dagger:dagger-compiler:2.4'  
}
```

If you use annotation processors for your `androidTest` or `test` sources, the respective `kapt` configurations are named `kaptAndroidTest` and `kaptTest`.

A.2 Building Kotlin projects with Maven

If you prefer to build your projects with Maven, Kotlin supports that as well. The easiest way to create a Kotlin Maven project is to use the `org.jetbrains.kotlin:kotlin-archetype-jvm` archetype. For existing Maven projects, you can easily add Kotlin support using the "Tools | Kotlin | Configure Kotlin in Project" action in the Kotlin IntelliJ IDEA plugin.

To add Maven support to a Kotlin project manually, you need to perform the following steps:

- Add dependency on the Kotlin standard library (group ID `org.jetbrains.kotlin`, artifact ID `kotlin-stdlib`);

- Add the Kotlin Maven plugin (group ID `org.jetbrains.kotlin`, artifact ID `kotlin-maven-plugin`) and configure its execution in the `compile` and `test-compile` phases;
- Configure source directories, if you prefer to keep Kotlin code in a separate source root from Java source code.

For reasons of space, we're not showing full `pom.xml` examples here, but you can find them in the online documentation ³⁰.

Footnote 30 <https://kotlinlang.org/docs/reference/using-maven.html>

In a mixed Java/Kotlin project, you need to configure the Kotlin plugin so that it runs before the Java plugin. This is necessary because the Kotlin plugin can parse Java sources, while the Java plugin can only read `.class` files, so the Kotlin files need to be compiled to `.class` before the Java plugin runs. You can find an example showing how this can be configured in the documentation ³¹

Footnote 31 <https://kotlinlang.org/docs/reference/using-maven.html#compiling-kotlin-and-java-sources>

A.3 Building Kotlin code with Ant

For building projects with Ant, Kotlin provides two different tasks: the `<kotlinc>` task compiles pure Kotlin modules, whereas `<withKotlin>` is an extension to the `<javac>` task for building mixed Kotlin/Java modules. Here's a minimal example of using `<kotlinc>`:

```
<project name="Ant Task Test" default="build">
  <typedef resource="org/jetbrains/kotlin/ant/antlib.xml"
    classpath="${kotlin.lib}/kotlin-ant.jar"/>
  <target name="build">
    <kotlinc output="hello.jar">
      <src path="src"/>
    </kotlinc>
  </target>
</project>
```

❶ Defines the `<kotlinc>` task

❷ Builds a single source directory with `<kotlinc>` and packs the result to a jar file

The `<kotlinc>` Ant task adds the standard library dependency automatically, so you don't need to add any extra arguments to configure it. It also supports packaging the compiled `.class` files into a `.jar` file.

Here's an example of using a `<withKotlin>` task to build a mixed Java/Kotlin module:

```
<project name="Ant Task Test" default="build">
```

```
<typedef resource="org/jetbrains/kotlin/ant/antlib.xml"
    classpath="${kotlin.lib}/kotlin-ant.jar"/>
<target name="build">
    <javac destdir="classes" srcdir="src">
        <withKotlin/>
    </javac>
    <jar destfile="hello.jar">
        <fileset dir="classes"/>
    </jar>
</target>
</project>
```

- ❶ Defines the `<withKotlin>` task
- ❷ Uses the `<withKotlin>` task to enable mixed Kotlin/Java compilation
- ❸ Packages the compiled classes into a `.jar` file

Unlike the `<kotlinc>` task, `<withKotlin>` does not support automatic packaging of compiled classes, so this example uses a separate `<jar>` task to package them.

Documenting Kotlin code

This appendix covers:

- Writing documentation comments for Kotlin code;
- Generating API documentation for Kotlin modules.

B.1 Writing Kotlin documentation comments

The format used to write documentation comments for Kotlin declarations is similar to Java's Javadoc, and is called KDoc. Just like Javadoc, KDoc comments begin with `/**` and use tags starting with `@` to document specific parts of a declaration. The key difference between Javadoc and KDoc is that the format used to write the comments themselves is Markdown ³², rather than HTML. To make writing documentation comments easier, KDoc supports a number of additional conventions to refer to documentation elements such as method parameters.

Footnote 32 <https://daringfireball.net/projects/markdown/>

Here's a simple example of a KDoc comment for a method:

```
/**
 * Calculates the sum of two numbers, [a] and [b]
 */
fun sum(a: Int, b: Int) = a + b
```

To refer to declarations from a KDoc comment, you simply enclose their names in brackets. The example uses that syntax to refer to the parameters of the method being documented, but you can also use it to refer to other declarations. If the declaration that you need to refer to is imported in the code containing the KDoc comment, you can use its name directly. Otherwise, you can use a fully qualified name. If you need to specify a custom label for a link, you use two pairs of brackets and put the label in the first pair and

the declaration name in the second one: [an example] [com.mycompany.SomethingTest.simple].

Here's a somewhat more complicated example, showing the use of tags in a comment:

```
/**
 * Performs a complicated operation.
 *
 * @param remote If true, executes operation remotely
 * @return The result of executing the operation
 * @throws IOException if remote connection fails
 * @sample com.mycompany.SomethingTest.simple
 */
fun somethingComplicated(remote: Boolean): ComplicatedResult { ... }
```

- ❶ Documents a parameter
- ❷ Documents the return value
- ❸ Documents a possible exception
- ❹ Includes the text of the specified method as a sample in documentation text

The general syntax of using the tags is exactly the same as JavaDoc. In addition to the standard JavaDoc tags, KDoc supports a number of additional tags for concepts that do not exist in Java, such as the `@receiver` tag for documenting the receiver of an extension function or property. You can find the full list of supported tags in the online documentation ³³.

Footnote 33 <http://kotlinlang.org/docs/reference/kotlin-doc.html>

The `@sample` tag can be used to include the text of the specified method into the documentation text, as an example of using the API being documented. The value of the tag is the fully-qualified name of the method to be included.

Some JavaDoc tags are not supported in KDoc:

- `@deprecated` is replaced with the `@Deprecated` annotation;
- `@inheritdoc` is not supported because in Kotlin documentation comments are always automatically inherited by overriding declarations;
- `@code`, `@literal`, and `@link` are replaced with the corresponding Markdown formatting.

Note that the documentation style preferred by the Kotlin team is to document the parameters and the return value of a method directly in the text of a documentation comment, as shown in the first example. Using tags, as in the second example, is only recommended when the semantics of a parameter or return value is complex and needs to be clearly separated from the main documentation text.

B.2 Generating API documentation

The documentation generation tool for Kotlin is called Dokka ³⁴. Just like Kotlin itself, Dokka fully supports cross-language Java/Kotlin projects. It can read JavaDoc comments in Java code and KDoc comments in Kotlin code and generate documentation covering the entire API of a module, regardless of the language used to write each class in it. Dokka supports multiple output formats, including plain HTML, JavaDoc-style HTML (using the Java syntax for all declarations and showing how the APIs can be accessed from Java), and Markdown.

Footnote 34 <https://github.com/kotlin/dokka>

You can run Dokka from the command line or as part of your Ant, Maven or Gradle build script. The recommended way to run Dokka is to add it to the Gradle build script for your module. Here's the minimum required configuration of Dokka in a Gradle build script:

```
buildscript {  
    ext.dokka_version = '0.9.9' 1  
  
    repositories  
    { jcenter(  
        )  
    }  
    dependencies {  
        classpath "org.jetbrains.dokka:dokka-gradle-plugin:${dokka_version}"  
    }  
}  
  
apply plugin: 'org.jetbrains.dokka'
```

1 Specifies the version of Dokka to use

With this configuration, you can run `./gradlew dokka` to generate documentation for your module in HTML format.

You can find information on specifying additional generation options in the Dokka documentation ³⁵. The documentation also shows how Dokka can be run as a standalone tool or integrated into Maven and Ant build scripts.

Footnote 35 <https://github.com/Kotlin/dokka/blob/master/README.md>

The Kotlin ecosystem

This appendix covers:

- Community-developed projects that work with Kotlin

Despite Kotlin's relatively young age, it already has quite a broad ecosystem of libraries, frameworks and tools, most of which have been created by the external development community. In this appendix, we'll give you some pointers to help you explore this ecosystem. Of course, a book is not the perfect medium to describe a fast-growing collection of tools, so the first thing we'll do is point you to an online resource where you can find more up-to-date information: <https://kotlin.link/>

Now let's look at some libraries that are worth exploring.

C.1 Testing

Beyond the standard JUnit and TestNG, which work great with Kotlin, there are frameworks that offer a more expressive DSL for writing tests in Kotlin:

- kotlintest (<https://github.com/kotlintest/kotlintest>), mentioned in chapter 11, is a flexible ScalaTest-inspired test framework that supports a number of different layouts for writing tests.
- Spek (<https://github.com/jetbrains/spek>) is a BDD-style test framework for Kotlin, originally started by JetBrains and now maintained by the community.

If you're using mocking in your tests, you should definitely look at Mockito-Kotlin (<https://github.com/nhaarman/mockito-kotlin>), which solves some of the issues of mocking Kotlin classes and provides a nicer DSL for mocking.

C.2 Dependency injection

Common Java dependency injection frameworks, such as Spring, Guice and Dagger, work great with Kotlin. If you're interested in a Kotlin-native solution, check out Kodein (<https://github.com/SalomonBrys/Kodein>), which provides a nice Kotlin DSL for configuring the dependencies and has a very efficient implementation.

C.3 JSON serialization

If you need a more heavy-duty solution for JSON serialization than the JKid library we described in chapter 10, you have a lot to choose from. If you prefer to use Jackson, `jackson-module-kotlin` (<https://github.com/FasterXML/jackson-module-kotlin>) provides deep Kotlin integration, including support for data classes. For GSON, `Kotson` (<https://github.com/SalomonBrys/Kotson>) provides a nice set of wrappers. And if you're after a lightweight pure Kotlin solution, check out `Klaxon` (<https://github.com/cbeust/klaxon>).

C.4 HTTP clients

If you need to build a client for a REST API in Kotlin, look no further than Retrofit (<http://square.github.io/retrofit/>). It's a Java library, also compatible with Android, and it works great with Kotlin. For a lower-level pure Kotlin solution, check out `Fuel` (<https://github.com/kittinunf/Fuel>).

C.5 Web applications

If you're developing a server-side Web application, the most mature options available today are Java frameworks such as Spring and Spark Java. For Spring, you can find additional information and helper functions in the `spring-kotlin` project (<https://github.com/sdeleuze/spring-kotlin>).

For pure Kotlin solutions, you can consider the following options:

- `Ktor` (<https://github.com/Kotlin/ktor>), a JetBrains research project exploring how to build a modern and full-featured Web application framework with an idiomatic API;
- `Kara` (<https://github.com/TinyMission/kara>), the original Kotlin Web framework, used in production by JetBrains and other companies;
- `Wasabi` (<https://github.com/wasabifx/wasabi>), an HTTP framework built on top of Netty with an expressive Kotlin API;
- `Kovert` (<https://github.com/kohesive/kovert>), a REST framework built on top of `vert.x`.

For your HTML generation needs, check out `kotlinx.html` (<https://github.com/kotlin/kotlinx.html>), which we already discussed in chapter 11, or, if you prefer a more traditional approach, use a Java template engine such as `Thymeleaf` (<http://www.thymeleaf.org/>).

C.6 Database access

In addition to traditional Java options such as Hibernate, you have a number of Kotlin-specific choices for your database access needs. We have the most experience with Exposed (<https://github.com/jetbrains/Exposed>), the SQL generation framework discussed a few times in the book. A number of alternatives are listed on the <https://kotlin.link/> site.

C.7 Utilities and data structures

The following libraries provide utilities and data structures that you may find useful in your projects:

- funKTionale (<https://github.com/MarioAriasC/funKTionale>) implements a broad range of functional programming primitives (such as partial function application);
- Kovenant (<https://github.com/mplatvoet/kovenant>) is an implementation of promises for Kotlin and Android.